Science and Practice of Strength Training

second edition

Vladimir M. Zatsiorsky
William J. Kraemer

Science and Practice of Strength Training

SECOND EDITION

Vladimir M. Zatsiorsky, PhD
Pennsylvania State University

William J. Kraemer, PhD
University of Connecticut

Human Kinetics

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Zatsiorsky, Vladimir M., 1932-
Science and practice of strength training / Vladimir M. Zatsiorsky, William J. Kraemer.-- 2nd ed.
p. cm.
Includes bibliographical references and index.
ISBN-13: 978-0-7360-5628-1 (hard cover)
ISBN-10: 0-7360-5628-9 (hard cover)
1. Physical education and training. 2. Muscle strength. 3. Biomechanics. I. Kraemer, William J., 1953- II. Title.
GV711.5Z38 2006
613.7'11--dc22

2005034461

ISBN-10: 0-7360-5628-9
ISBN-13: 978-0-7360-5628-1

The Web addresses cited in this text were current as of January 2006, unless otherwise noted.

Acquisitions Editor: Michael S. Bahrke, PhD; **Developmental Editor:** Maggie Schwarzentraub; **Assistant Editor:** Maureen Eckstein; **Copyeditor:** Alisha Jeddeloh; **Proofreader:** Erin Cler; **Permission Manager:** Dalene Reeder; **Graphic Designer:** Fred Starbird; **Graphic Artist:** Yvonne Griffith; **Photo Manager:** Sarah Ritz; **Cover Designer:** Bob Reuther; **Photographer (cover):** Dimitar Dilkoff/AFP/Getty Images; **Photos (interior):** Photos on pages 3 and 47 © Icon Sports Media. Photos on pages 17 and 174 © University of Connecticut Office of Athletic Communications. Micrograph on page 61 courtesy of Dr. Robert S. Staron's laboratory, Ohio University, Athens, Ohio. Photo on page 89 courtesy of Vladimir Zatsiorsky. Photos on pages 69, 155, 173, 201 © Associated Press, AP. Photos on pages 109, 137, 191, 213, 215 and 216 © Human Kinetics. Photos on pages 192 and 210 © Gerard Martin. Photos on pages 195, 196 and 197 © Carlos Ortiz. Photo on page 221 courtesy of R.U. Newton. **Art Manager:** Kelly Hendren; **Illustrator:** Keri Evans; **Printer:** Sheridan Books

Printed in the United States of America 10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Human Kinetics
Web site: www.HumanKinetics.com

United States: Human Kinetics
P.O. Box 5076
Champaign, IL 61825-5076
800-747-4457
e-mail: humank@hkusa.com

Canada: Human Kinetics
475 Devonshire Road Unit 100
Windsor, ON N8Y 2L5
800-465-7301 (in Canada only)
e-mail: orders@hkcanada.com

Europe: Human Kinetics
107 Bradford Road
Stanningley
Leeds LS28 6AT, United Kingdom
+44 (0) 113 255 5665
e-mail: hk@hkeurope.com

Australia: Human Kinetics
57A Price Avenue
Lower Mitcham, South Australia 5062
08 8277 1555
e-mail: liaw@hkaustralia.com

New Zealand: Human Kinetics
Division of Sports Distributors NZ Ltd.
P.O. Box 300 226 Albany
North Shore City
Auckland
0064 9 448 1207
e-mail: info@humankinetics.co.nz

To my grandchildren—Anastasiya, James, Yana, Ellen, Irene, and Jaclyn—with love.

V.M.Z.

To my wife, Joan, and my children—Daniel, Anna, and Maria—for their love and support.

W.J.K.

Contents

Foreword

The second edition of *Science and Practice of Strength Training* brings together as authors two individuals I consider colleagues in the research and practice of strength training. Throughout their professional careers, both have distinguished themselves as strength training scientists and practitioners. Dr. Zatsiorsky has extensive experience in strength training from the former Soviet Union and Eastern Bloc countries while Dr. Kraemer has extensive experience from the American perspective on strength training. This text represents a unique melding of these two experts' knowledge of strength and conditioning. This work is in part a result of their collaborative teaching of an advanced class on the practice and theory of strength training at Pennsylvania State University. The serendipitous opportunity to teach a class together on strength training allowed the exchange of ideas and information in the area of strength training from two very successful perspectives. Both authors not only have extensive research experience in strength training, they also have extensive experience as coaches and practitioners. Thus the text is a unique blend of the science as well as the art of designing all aspects of successful strength training programs.

This work is for the serious strength coach, athlete, or fitness enthusiast who desires to think about and develop an individualized strength training program that will result in successful long-term strength, fitness, and performance gains. It is not for the individual who desires a cookie-cutter approach to training and to be told exactly what exercises, number of sets, and number of repetitions per set to perform in their training program. All aspects of the strength training field including program design; periodization; specific exercises; and training specific populations such as women, youth, and older athletes are covered in detail. No matter how experienced you are in strength training, you will find provocative concepts that will affect your ideas and planning of strength training programs. I highly recommend this text to all people who are serious about strength conditioning.

Steven J. Fleck, PhD
Colorado College

Preface

We are excited to present the second edition of *Science and Practice of Strength Training*. We were former colleagues for almost 10 years at Pennsylvania State University where we taught the theory class in strength training, and our collaboration on this second edition has renewed our mutual interest in the topic. The result is a second edition that builds on the previous text and expands on the principles and concepts for training athletes. This new text includes updated information, as well as additional chapters on training special populations.

As with the previous edition, this textbook is for readers who are interested in muscular strength and ways to enhance its development. Thus it is for coaches, students who plan to become coaches, and athletes who want to be self-coaches. The textbook has been developed from the vast experience that we both bring to the text, with documented experiences of more than 1,000 elite athletes ranging from Olympic, world, continental, and national champions and record holders. Dr. Kraemer also brings experience in coaching from the junior high school to the college levels. His work on training studies with collegiate and professional athletes brings an additional dimension to the textbook that expands its conceptual relevance.

Science and Practice of Strength Training is designed for serious readers who are willing not only to remember and repeat but also to understand and put information to use. On more than one occasion a coach or athlete has asked both of us what is the best exercise, method, or training program to develop strength. Answers to such questions are difficult as no one program works for all athletes at all times or under all conditions. The individual needs of each athlete will vary and what works at one point in time may not work at another time. Thus there is no single best program, and the best programs are those that are based on solid principles and concepts with the understanding that change is inevitable.

This textbook is written for the practitioner and thus we provide a straightforward examination of the concepts and principles needed in order to make decisions on what might be an appropriate program design for an athlete. While many try to oversimplify the topic of strength training, it is by nature complex yet understandable. Many aspects of the book address this complexity while providing straightforward approaches to take under specific circumstances. While we offer some program examples, this book is not meant to be a "cookbook," as such an approach is fraught with pitfalls. Thus, we use program examples to demonstrate some of the principles and concepts that have been discussed in the book.

Strength training research has been growing dramatically each year and gives further credibility to concepts that were for many years only anecdotal in nature. Yet the design and practice of strength training programs will never be led step by step with scientific studies. It is the combination of solid principles, practical insights, coaching experiences, and directions based on scientific findings that results in the optimal knowledge for creating a program for a specific athlete.

This book is no doubt filled with biases, as it is heavily influenced by Dr. Zatsiorsky's Eastern European experience, predominantly in the former Soviet Union, former East Germany (German Democratic Republic), and Bulgaria. Dr. Kraemer brings to the book concepts and ideas from an American perspective as a high school and collegiate strength coach. This integration of perspectives over the past 20 years has yielded much success and has allowed many hybrids of training theory to be put forth.

This book is intended to be comprehensive, including additional chapters on training special populations (women, young athletes, and older athletes) and expanded sections in each of the previous chapters. Concepts that have been shown to be outdated or ineffective through research have been modified or eliminated to provide an up-to-date overview of training concepts and theories that are on the cutting edge of both practice and science.

The book consists of three parts. Part I describes the basis of strength training and includes three chapters. Chapter 1 addresses the basic concepts of training theory, such as the role of adaptation in training and generalized theories of training. Task-specific strength is discussed in chapter 2 and athlete-specific strength is discussed in chapter 3. Part II deals with the methods of strength conditioning. Training intensity and the methods of strength training are discussed in chapter 4. The topic of chapter 5 is timing in strength training. Strength exercises, including the selection of strength training drills for beginning and qualified athletes, are considered in chapter 6. Chapter 7 deals with injury prevention during strength training. Goal-specific strength training is addressed in chapter 8. Part III deals with training for specific populations. Chapter 9 outlines gender differences and important considerations when training women. Chapter 10 allows the reader to make the proper decisions when training young athletes in order to optimize physical development. Chapter 11 discusses the aging process and necessary considerations in developing optimal strength training programs for the older athlete.

We do not address drug use in sports, which, as of the writing of this textbook, has continued to receive worldwide attention. We both maintain that the practice is harmful to health, unethical in sport, and illegal. We believe that the much wider array of anabolic drugs now being used by athletes has diminished the desire to optimize training methods using the body's own natural anabolic mechanisms (e.g., the endocrine system). This book is written to allow the reader to train without drugs and to optimize the body's ability to make natural gains by optimizing the strength training programs used.

This book uses limited references to underscore the practical approach taken by us in the writing of this second edition. With the knowledge base of the field of strength training expanding each year, we provide references to books, reviews, and position stands to allow you to gain more background reading to enhance your understanding of various concepts and principles. If we were to provide all such references, the sheer magnitude of the book would overwhelm its practical nature. The integration of coaching theory and scientific underpinnings in this text continues to promote a more sophisticated practice of strength training.

Acknowledgments

Numerous people helped us in preparing the manuscript for this book. With the completion of the first edition of this book, V.Z. is most grateful to Dr. Richard C. Nelson. The first editon of the book would not have been written without his invaluable support and help. Special thanks go to Dr. Robert J. Gregor (currently at Georgia Tech, Atlanta) and Dr. Benno M. Nigg (University of Calgary), for inviting V.Z. as a visiting researcher at their laboratories. The first edition of the book was written in part during this time.

For the genesis of the second edition of the book we both are thankful and indebted to the many professionals at Human Kinetics who have put in a great deal of effort to bring this book to completion. Most notably, Dr. Mike Bahrke was pivotal in bringing two former colleagues together again in a new collaboration on this topic of mutual interest and synergistic perspectives. The authors would like to thank Ms. Maggie Schwarzentraub, our developmental editor, for all her exceptional professionalism and hard work in bringing this book to completion. We also thank our past and present colleagues and students at Pennsylvania State University and the University of Connecticut who have fostered our interest and excitement about this area of study to the present day. W.J.K. is very indebted to Dr. Steven J. Fleck (Colorado College) for his support of this project and continuous collaboration in this scientific study and research in resistance training. Finally, we acknowledge the many strength and conditioning professionals and fitness enthusiasts in the field who have encouraged our work and motivated us to continue to develop our scientific theories and concepts in resistance training, of which many are found in the pages of this book. Thank you.

Symbols and Abbreviations

BW	Body weight
CF_{mm}	Maximum competition weight
EMG	Electromyography
EMS	Electrical stimulation of muscles
ESD	Explosive strength deficit
F	Force
F_m	Maximal force attained when the magnitude of a motor task parameter is fixed
F_{mm}	Maximum maximorum force attained when the magnitude of a motor task parameter is altered
FT	Fast-twitch muscle fibers
g	Acceleration due to gravity
GH	Growth hormone
IAP	Intra-abdominal pressure
IES	Index of explosive strength
IGF	Insulin-like growth factor
LBPS	Low back pain syndrome
MSD	Muscle strength deficit
MU	Motor unit
N	Newton; the unit of force
P_m	Maximal performance attained when the magnitude of a motor task parameter is fixed
P_{mm}	Maximum maximorum performance attained when the magnitude of a motor task parameter is altered
RC	Reactivity coefficient
RFD	Rate of force development
RM	Repetition maximum
ST	Slow-twitch muscle fibers
T_m	Time to peak performance
TF_{mm}	Maximum training weight
V_m	Maximal velocity attained when the magnitude of a motor task parameter is fixed
V_{mm}	Maximum maximorum velocity attained when the magnitude of a motor task parameter is altered

part I

Basis of Strength Conditioning

The primary goal of this book is to provide readers with practical recommendations, or a prescription, for training athletes. Practical advice, however, cannot be given without first providing descriptions of what should be trained and why some methods are better than others. Part I of the book describes theory, while part II covers methods of strength training. Part III deals with training for specific populations.

The first part, which is entirely descriptive, develops several concepts in a natural, sequential order. Chapter 1 is introductory and provides an overview of the principles of training theory: It describes the peculiarities of adaptation to a physical load; discusses two prevailing theories of training—the supercompensation theory and the fitness-fatigue theory—both of which are widely and enthusiastically embraced as effective methods; and spells out the nomenclature of training effects. Although the concepts and terminology introduced in this chapter are used throughout the book, the chapter is self-contained and presumes that the reader has no prior scientific knowledge.

Chapters 2 and 3 address the factors that determine muscular strength. It is assumed that readers have some knowledge of exercise physiology and sport biomechanics, or at least are acquainted with the basic physiology of the muscles. Readers who are not familiar with this material, however, should not be discouraged from reading the book; the main concepts are explained in a format intelligible for a reader with a minimal background in exercise and sport science. Readers who do have trouble understanding chapters 2 and 3 need not read them in one sitting but can return to them later while reading the balance of the book.

Chapter 2 lays the foundation for the notion of muscular strength, classifying and explaining the evidence collected by measuring muscular force. It introduces the concept of maximal muscular performance, as well as two main relationships (parametric and nonparametric), and defines the notion of muscular strength. It then follows with a detailed discussion of various factors involved in motor tasks, such as resistance, time available for force development, movement velocity, movement direction, and body posture. The integrating idea for these diverse topics is rather simple and straightforward: exercise specificity. For training to be effective, exercises should be similar to the main sport activity, and the exercise similarity should be established according to the criteria discussed in this chapter.

Chapter 3 addresses muscular strength from another standpoint: that of the performer rather than the motor task. Some people have greater strength than others. Why? What properties do elite athletes have that allow them to be exceptional? The internal factors determining muscular strength are latent. Hence, they can be identified only by using a physiological approach. If we are able to identify them, we open the road to goal-directed training of these primary factors, so the exercises and methods addressed here will center on specific targets rather than on strength in general. This chapter is based on facts and theories originated by exercise physiologists. Two main groups of internal factors are discussed: muscular and neural. Among the muscular factors, primary attention is given to the muscle dimension and its counterpart, body weight. Other factors, including nutrition and hormonal status, are briefly highlighted as well. The neural mechanisms, such as intra- and intermuscular coordination, are reviewed in the later sections. Chapter 3 is essential for understanding training methods.

chapter 1

Basic Concepts of Training Theory

Strength conditioning theory is part of a broader field of knowledge, the science of training athletes, also termed *training science* or *theory of sport training.* Training science courses cover the components of athlete preparation, including conditioning (not only for strength but also for speed, endurance, flexibility, and other motor abilities); learning of sport technique; and periodization, that is, variation of training programs in a season. Throughout this book, the concepts and approaches developed within the framework of training science are used extensively. This chapter introduces you to the issues of training in general. The ideas and terminology you encounter here will be used in the remainder of the book.

ADAPTATION AS A MAIN LAW OF TRAINING

If a training routine is planned and executed correctly, the result of systematic exercise is improvement of the athlete's physical fitness, particularly strength, as the body adapts to physical load. In a broad sense, **adaptation** means the adjustment of an organism to its environment. If the environment changes, the organism changes to better survive in the new conditions. In biology, adaptation is considered one of the main features of living species.

Immediate and Delayed Effects of Training

Immediately after a training session, performance usually worsens due to fatigue. Nobody expects to become stronger after 1 set of drills or a single training session. So, why do multiple training sessions end in performance improvement? Improvement happens because the body adapts to the training load.

Exercise or regular physical **activity** is a very powerful stimulus for adaptation. The major objective in training is to induce specific adaptations in order to improve sport performance. This requires adherence to a carefully planned and executed training program. From a practical point of view, the following four features of the adaptation process assume primary importance for sport training:

1. Stimulus magnitude (overload)
2. Accommodation
3. Specificity
4. Individualization

Overload

To bring about positive changes in an athlete's state, an exercise **overload** must be applied. A training adaptation takes place only if the magnitude of the **training load** is above the habitual level. During the training process, there are two ways to induce an adaptation. One is to increase the training load (intensity, volume) while continuing to employ the same drill, for example, endurance running. The other is to change the drill, provided that the exercise is new and the athlete is not accustomed to it.

If an athlete uses a standard exercise with the same training load over a very long time, there will be no additional adaptations and the level of physical fitness will not substantially change (figure 1.1). If the training load is too low, detraining occurs. In elite athletes,

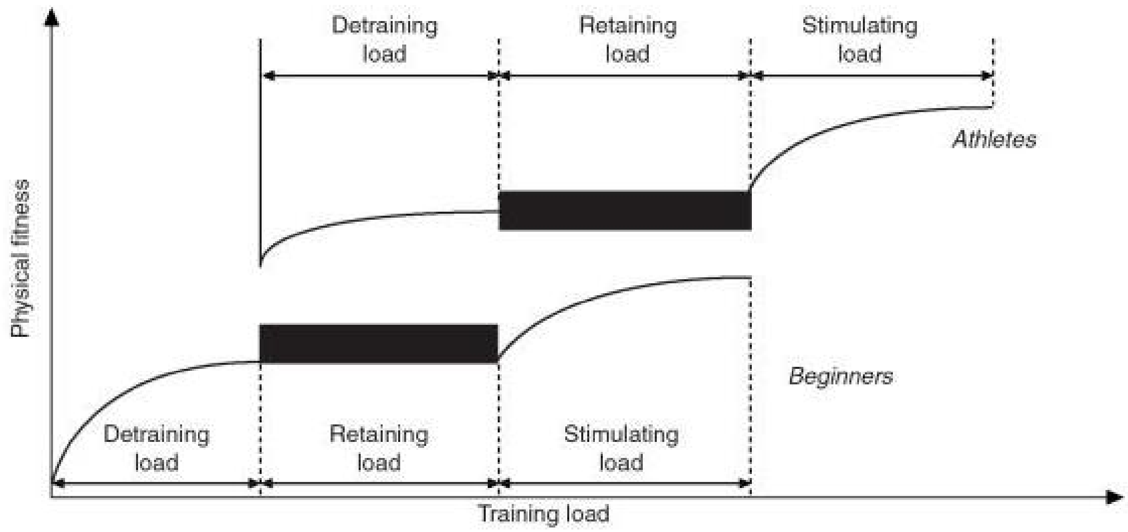


Figure 1.1 Dependence between training load (detraining, retaining, stimulating) and level of physical fitness. Rectangles indicate the neutral zones (retaining loads) corresponding to small fluctuations in the training load at which the level of fitness is basically not changed. Note the stepladder effect showing a change in the adaptation curve with a change in the training stimulus. A training load that leads to the detraining of high-level athletes may be extremely high for beginners.

many training improvements are lost within several weeks, even days, if an athlete stops exercising. During the competition period, elite athletes cannot afford complete passive rest for more than 3 days in a row (typically only 1 or 2 days).

Training loads can be roughly classified according to their magnitude as

- **stimulating,** where the magnitude of the training load is above the neutral level and positive adaptation may take place;
- **retaining,** where the magnitude is in the neutral zone at which the level of fitness is maintained; and
- **detraining,** where the magnitude of the load leads to a decrease in performance results, in the functional capabilities of the athlete, or both.

Overload Example

Identical triplets possessed equal levels of strength; each was able to lift a 57.5-kg barbell one time. They began to exercise with a 50-kg barbell, lifting the barbell in 1 set until failure five times. After a period of time, the athletes adapted to the training routine, their preparedness improved, and they were able to lift a 60-kg barbell one time. However, despite continued training, they did not make further gains in performance because they accommodated to the training program.

At this stage, the three athletes made different decisions. Athlete A decided to increase the training load (weight lifted, number of **repetitions** in a set, number of sets) or change the exercise. The new load was a stimulating one for this athlete and performance improved. Athlete B continued to employ the previous routine and performance results were unchanged (retaining load). Athlete C decreased the training load and strength performance declined (detraining load).

The need for a constant increase in training loads, considered necessary for positive adaptation, leads to **progressive resistance training:** When strength levels improve, larger training loads are used. Because the preparation of elite athletes usually lasts 8 to 12 years, their progressive resistance training leads to extremely demanding training programs. The training load of elite athletes is roughly 10 times greater than that of beginners having 6 months of training experience. Elite weightlifters lift around 5,000 tons/year, while the load for novices is only 1/10th or 1/12th of this level. The same is true for other sports. For instance, the year-round training mileage of elite cross-country skiers is between 8,000 and 12,000 km. For beginners, it is about 1,000 km.

Accommodation

If athletes employ the same exercise with the same training load over a long period of time, performance improvement (gain) decreases (see figure 1.2). This is a manifestation of **accommodation,** often considered a general law of biology. According to this law, the response of a biological object to a constant stimulus decreases over time. By definition, accommodation is the decrease in response of a biological object to a continued stimulus.

In training, the stimulus is physical exercise and the response is performance improvement as a result of adaptation. With an increase in training volume or duration, the magnitude of adaptations diminishes—the **principle of diminishing returns.** In beginning athletes, relatively small training loads

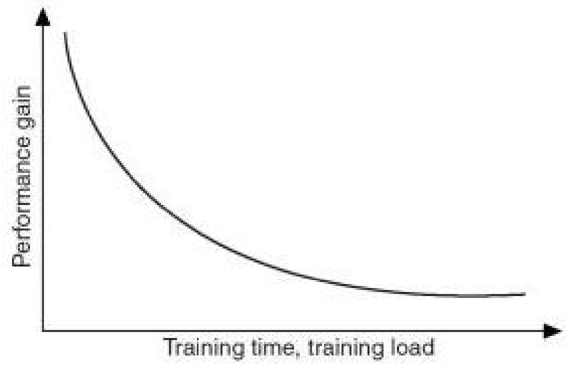


Figure 1.2 Dependence of performance improvement (gain) on time of training or training load. As a result of accommodation, the gain decreases.

may lead to large performance improvements, while in athletes with multiyear experience even heavy training routines may result in no performance changes.

A Bizarre Bank Metaphor

Banks usually pay higher interest rates to the customers who deposit money for longer periods of time or make large contributions. Imagine a bank—the bizarre bank—that adopts the opposite policy: The longer you keep the money in the bank and the larger the deposit, the smaller the interest. Most likely a bank with this policy would soon be out of business. However, this is exactly how our body works. Over long periods of training or when athletes increase the training load, they will see a decrease in the performance improvement per unit of training load, or the interest on their capital.

Because of accommodation, it is inefficient to use standard exercises or a standard training load over a long period of time. Training programs must vary. At the same time, because of the specificity of training adaptations, the training exercises should be as close as possible to the main sport exercise in muscular coordination and physiological demand. The highest transfer of training result occurs with the use of **sport-specific exercises.** These two requirements lead to one of the main conflicts in training elite athletes: Training programs should be both variable, to avoid accommodation, and stable, to satisfy the demand for specificity.

To avoid or decrease the negative influence of accommodation, training programs are periodically modified. In principle, there are two ways to modify training programs:

- Quantitative—changing training loads (for instance, the total amount of weight lifted)
- Qualitative—replacing the exercises

Qualitative changes are broadly used in the training of elite athletes, at least by those who are creative.

Avoiding Accommodation in Olympic Cycles

Several elite track and field athletes, who were successful at three Olympic Games in a row, avoided accommodation. How? None of them used the same training program every year; instead, they varied the training routines. Some of the athletes used the drills that they believed were most efficient (for instance, overhead throwing of a 3-kg shot by a javelin thrower) only during an Olympic season, or one time in a 4-year period. This was done to avoid accommodation.

Specificity

Training adaptations are highly specific. It is well known that strength training increases both muscle mass and strength, while endurance training induces other changes such as increases in aerobic capacity. Because of adaptation **specificity,** the exercises and training in various sports are different.

Specificity may be described in another way, as an issue of **transfer of training results.** Imagine, for example, a group of young athletes who have trained over a certain period of time with one exercise, exercise A, squatting with a barbell. Finally, their performances improve. Let's suppose that the gain is the same for all the athletes, say 20 kg. What will happen with the performances of these athletes in other exercises, such as the standing vertical jump, sprint dash, or freestyle swimming (exercises B, C, and D)? We may predict that the results in these exercises will improve to different degrees. The gain may be substantial in the standing jump, relatively small in sprint running, and next to nothing in swimming. In other words, the transfer of training results from exercise A to exercises B, C, and D is variable.

Transfer of Training Results: Why Is It Important?

The first books about athlete preparation, published in the 19th century, make interesting reading. The preparation for competition consisted of the main sport exercise and nothing else. If one competed in the 1-mi run, workouts consisted of only 1-mi runs.

However, coaches and athletes soon understood that such preparation was not sufficient. To run a mile successfully, an athlete must not only have stamina but must also possess appropriate sprinting abilities, good running technique, and strong and flexible muscles and joints. It is impossible to develop these abilities by running the same fixed distance repeatedly. As a consequence of this realization, training strategies were changed. Instead of multiple repetitions of a single exercise, many auxiliary exercises were adopted into training programs to improve the abilities specific to a given sport. The general concept of training changed.

The question then arises: How do you choose more efficient exercises that result in a greater transfer of training effect from the auxiliary to the main sport movement? Consider the following problems:

1. Is long-distance running a useful exercise for endurance swimmers? For cross-country skiers? For race walkers? For bicyclists? For wrestlers?
2. To improve the velocity of fast pitches, a coach recommends that pitchers drill with baseballs of varying weight, including heavy ones. What is the optimal weight of the ball for training?
3. A conditioning coach planning a preseason training routine for wide receivers must recommend a set of exercises for leg strength development. The coach may choose one of several groups of exercises or combine exercises from different groups. The exercise groups are
    - one-joint isokinetic movements, such as knee extension and flexion, on exercise apparatuses,
    - similar one-joint drills with free weights,
    - barbell squats,
    - isometric leg extensions,
    - vertical jumps with additional weights (heavy waist belts),
    - uphill running, and
    - running with parachutes.

Which exercise is most effective? In other words, when is the transfer of training results greater?

The transfer of training gains can differ greatly even in very similar exercises. In an experiment, two groups of athletes performed an isometric knee extension at different joint angles, 70° and 130° (a complete leg extension corresponds to 180°). The maximal force values, F_m, as well as the force gains, ΔF_m, observed at different joint angles were varied (figure 1.3).

The strength gains at various joint positions were different for the two groups. For the subjects in the first group, who exercised at the 70° knee-joint angle (see figure 1.3*a*), the strength gains in all joint positions were almost equal. The transfer of training results from the trained body posture (70°) to untrained positions (other joint angles) was high. In the athletes of the second group, who trained at the 130° knee-joint angle (see figure 1.3*b*), transfer of training gains was limited to the neighboring joint angles: The strength gain was low for small joint angles (compare strength gains in angles 130° and 90°). The same held true for barbell squats. In the first group, the strength gain in the trained body posture was 410 ± 170 N and in squatting it was 11.5 ± 5.4 kg. In the second group, the strength in the trained posture increased by 560 ± 230 N; however, in spite of such a high gain, the barbell squat performance improved by only

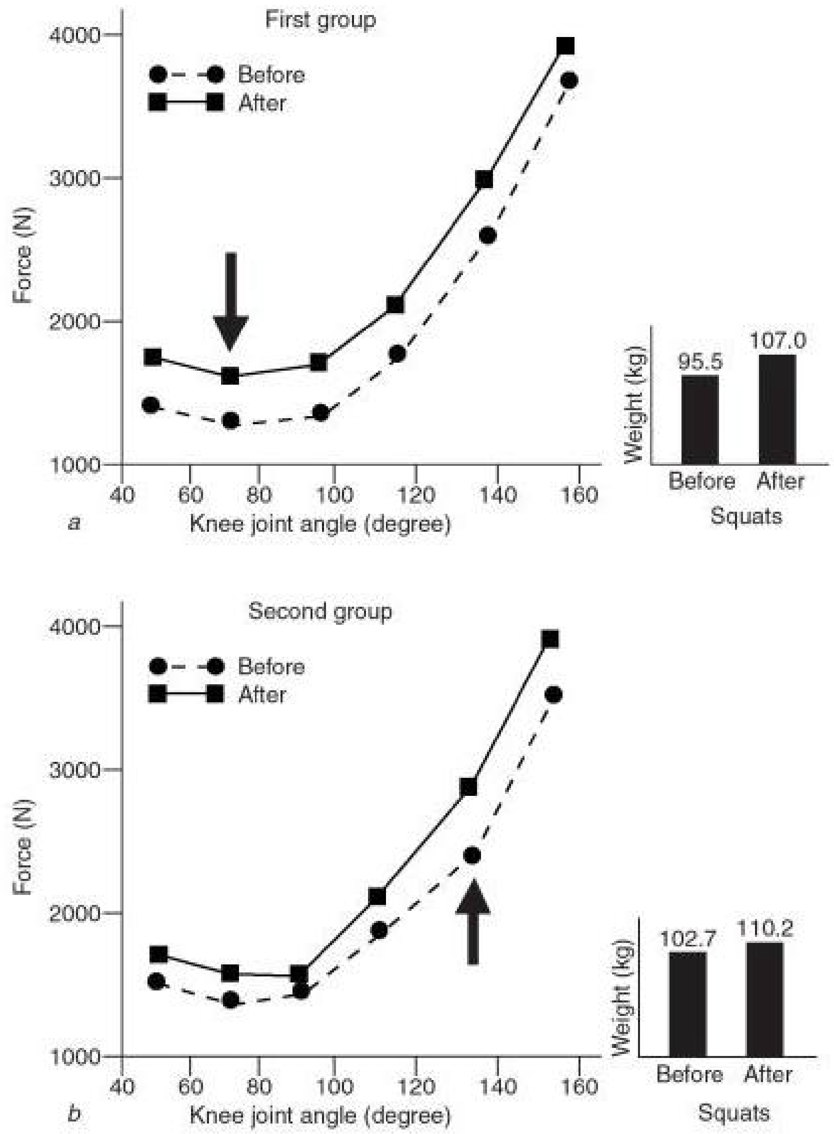


Figure 1.3 Performance improvements (strength gains) in two experimental groups. The vertical arrows show the angles at which isometric training took place. Strength was measured in leg extensions as well as in barbell squats.

Data from W.M. Zatsiorsky and L.M. Raitsin, 1974, "Transfer of cumulative training effects in strength exercises," *Theory and Practice of Physical Culture* 6: 7-14.

7.5 ± 4.7 kg. The strength gain in the trained posture in the second group was higher (560 ± 230 N versus 410 ± 170 N), but the improvement in the barbell squats was lower (7.5 ± 4.7 kg versus 11.5 ± 5.4 kg) due to minimal transfer of training results.

As performances in different exercises have different modalities (force, time, distance) and are not directly comparable, a dimensionless unit should be employed to estimate the transfer of training result. Such a unit is a result gain expressed in standard deviations:

$$\text{Result gain} = \frac{\text{Gain of performance}}{\text{Standard deviation of performance}}.$$

For instance, if the average performance of a group is 60 ± 10 kg (average ± standard deviation) and the performance of an athlete improves by 15 kg as a result of training, the athlete's personal gain equals 15/10 or 1.5 standard deviation. In scientific literature, the result gain for a group computed as [(Post-training mean – Pretraining mean) / Pretraining standard deviation] is known as the **effect size.** For the estimation of transfer, a ratio of the gains in nontrained exercises (exercises B, C, and D) and the trained exercise (exercise A) is employed. The coefficient of the transfer of training is, by definition, the following ratio:

$$\text{Transfer} = \frac{\text{Result gain in nontrained exercise}}{\text{Result gain in trained exercise}}.$$

Both gains are measured in standard deviations. The higher the ratio, the greater the transfer of training results. If the transfer is low, the effect of training is specific. In the example from figure 1.3, the training effects were more specific for the group that performed exercise at the 130° knee-joint angle.

Specificity of adaptation increases with the level of sport mastership. The higher an athlete's level of fitness, the more specific the adaptation. The transfer of training gain is lower in good athletes; for beginners, almost all exercises are useful. It is possible to improve the strength, speed, **endurance,** and flexibility of people with extremely low physical fitness through simple calisthenics. The performance of beginning bicyclists can be improved by squatting with a barbell. Elite athletes should use more specific exercises and training methods to increase competitive preparedness.

Calculating the Transfer of Training Results

In the experiment discussed in the text, the following data were recorded (figure 1.3):

Test	Before	After	Gain of performance	Result gain	Transfer
		Group 1 (isometric training at an angle of 70°)			
Force at an angle 70°, N	1310 ± 340	1720 ± 270	410 ± 170	410 / 340 = 1.2	
Squatting, kg	95.5 ± 23	107 ± 21	11.5 ± 5.4	11.5 / 23 = 0.5	0.5 / 1.2 = 0.42
		Group 2 (isometric training at an angle of 130°)			
Force at an angle 130°, N	2710 ± 618	3270 ± 642	560 ± 230	560 / 618 = 0.91	
Squatting, kg	102 ± 28	110 ± 23	7.5 ± 4.7	7.5 / 28 = 0.27	0.27 / 0.91 = 0.30

Note the results:

Characteristics	Superior group	Comparison
Gain of performance in trained exercise	Second	560 vs. 410 N
Result gain in trained exercise	First	1.2 vs. 0.91 SD
Transfer of training results	First	0.42 vs. 0.30
Gain of performance in nontrained exercise	First	11.5 ± 5.4 vs. 7.5 ± 4.7 kg

Because of the higher transfer of training results, the method used to train the first group better improved the squatting performance.

Individualization

All people are different. The same exercises or training methods elicit a greater or smaller effect in various athletes. Innumerable attempts to mimic the training routines of famous athletes have proven unsuccessful. The general ideas underlying noteworthy training programs, not the entire training protocol, should be understood and creatively employed. The same holds true for average values derived from training practices and scientific research. Coaches and athletes need to use an average training routine cautiously. Only average athletes, those who are far from excellent, prepare with average methods. Champions are not average; they are exceptional. **Individualization** of training will optimize results and enhance the desired adaptation to the training protocol.

GENERALIZED THEORIES OF TRAINING

Generalized training theories are very simple models that coaches and experts use broadly to solve practical problems. These models include only the most essential features of sport training and omit numerous others. Generalized theories (models) serve as the most general concepts for coaching. Coaches and athletes use them especially for conditioning and also for planning training programs.

One-Factor Theory (Theory of Supercompensation)

In the **one-factor theory,** the immediate training effect of a workout is considered as a depletion of certain biochemical substances. The athlete's disposition toward a competition or training, called **preparedness,** is assumed to vary in strict accordance with the amount of a substance available for immediate use. There is evidence in exercise and sport science literature that certain substances are exhausted as a result of strenuous training workouts. The best known example is muscle glycogen depletion after hard **anaerobic exercise.**

After the restoration period, the level of the given biochemical substance is believed to increase above the initial level. This is called supercompensation, and the time period when there is an enhanced level of the substance is the **supercompensation phase** (figure 1.4).

If the **rest intervals** between workouts are too short, the level of an athlete's preparedness decreases (see figure 1.5*a*). If the rest intervals between consecutive workouts are the right length, and if the next training session coincides in time with the supercompensation phase, the athlete's preparedness advances (figure 1.5*b*). Finally, in the case of very long intervals between sessions, an athlete's physical abilities do not change

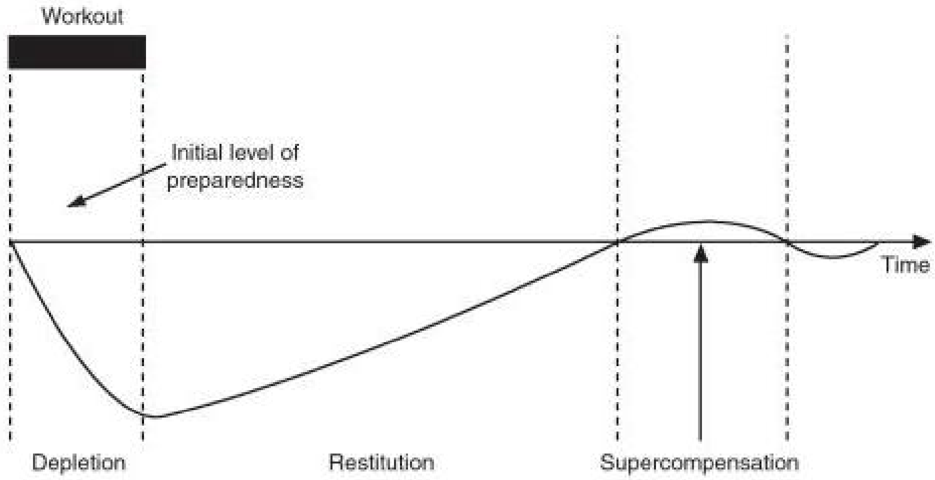


Figure 1.4 Time course of the restoration process and athlete's preparedness after a workout according to the supercompensation theory. The vertical axis is both for the amount of substance and for the level of preparedness. According to the model, the two curves coincide.

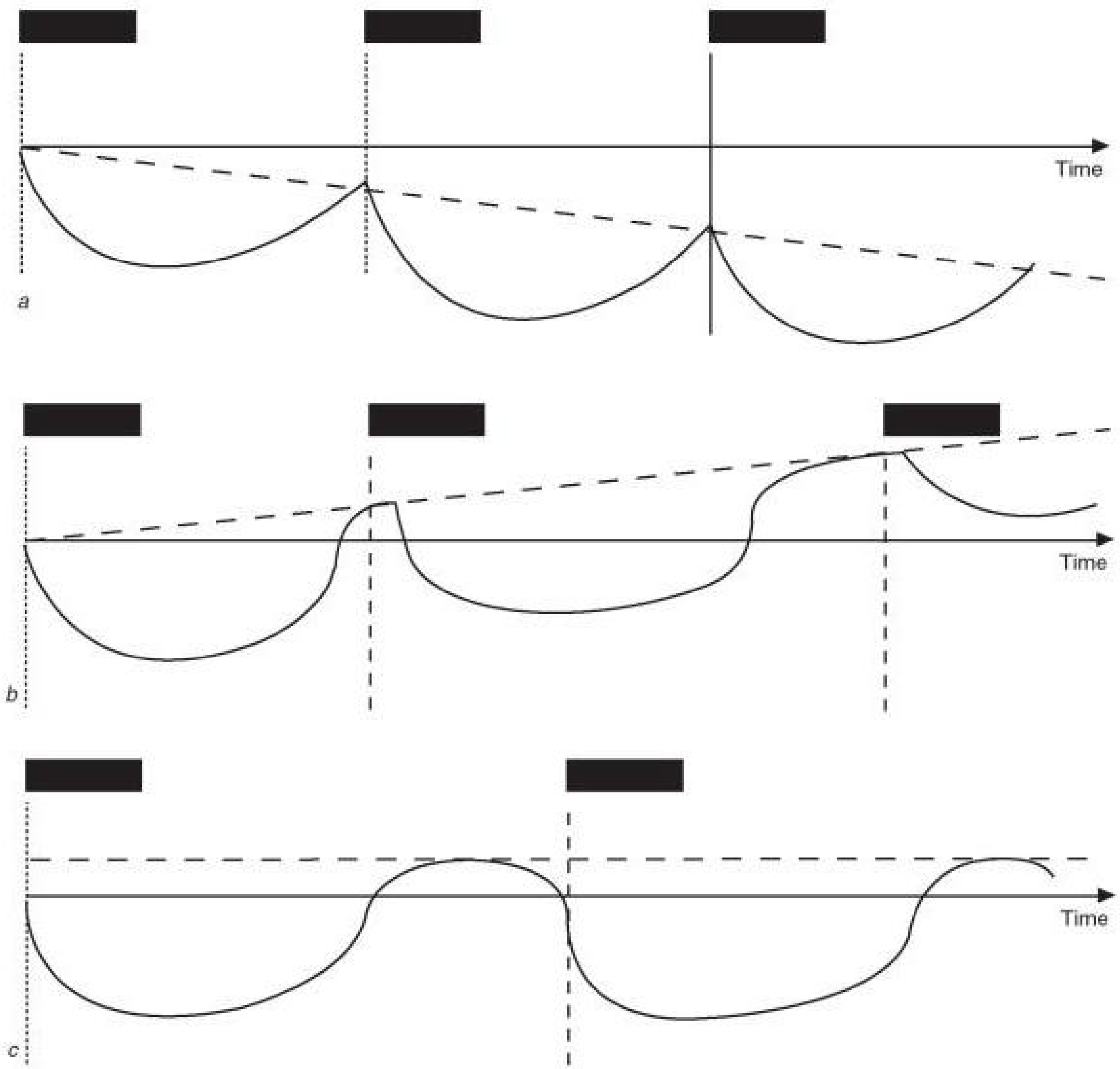


Figure 1.5 Supercompensation theory. The vertical axis is both for the amount of substance and for the level of preparedness. There are three situations with rest intervals between sequential training workouts: *(a)* The intervals are too short and the level of athlete preparedness decreases due to accumulated fatigue; *(b)* the intervals are optimal and the ensuing workouts match with the supercompensation phase; and *(c)* the intervals are too long and there is no stable training effect.

(figure 1.5*c*). Coaches and athletes should avoid time intervals between serial training sessions that are either too short or too long. Instead, they should seek the following:

- Optimal rest intervals between successive training sessions
- An optimal training load in each workout

The aim in selecting these intervals and loads is to ensure that a subsequent training session coincides with the supercompensation phase.

Within the framework of this theory, more sophisticated variations of the training schedule are also acceptable. One variation that is popular among coaches, the overloading microcycle (or impact microcycle), is shown

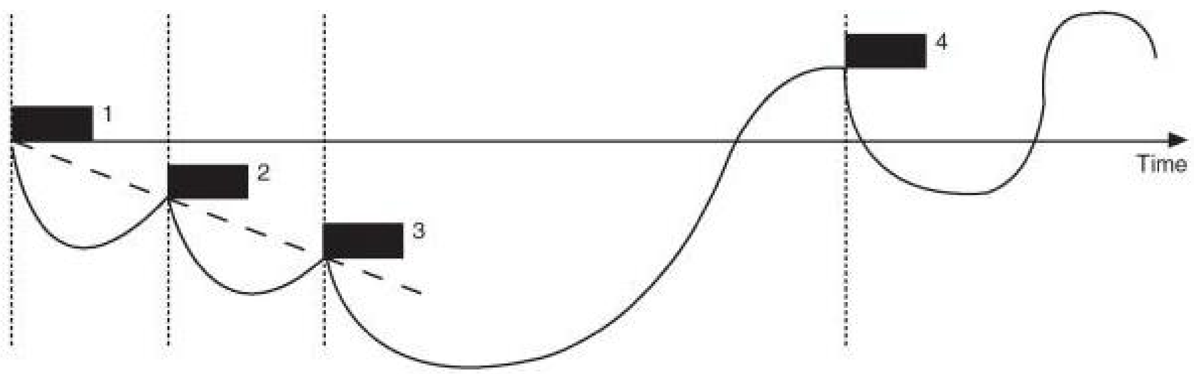


Figure 1.6 The overloading microcycle of the supercompensation theory. Rest intervals between the first three training sessions are too short to allow full restoration, so fatigue is accumulated. The interval between the third and fourth training workouts is longer than usual but optimal for the situation. The next workout coincides with the supercompensation phase after the first three training sessions.

in figure 1.6. In this case, after several training sessions with high training loads and short time intervals between sessions, a relatively long period of rest is included. The common belief is that such a training routine produces a final supercompensation that is greater than normal (compare figures 1.5*b* and 1.6).

For several decades, the supercompensation model has been the most popular training theory. It has been described in many textbooks and is widely accepted by coaches. In spite of its popularity, however, it deserves critical scrutiny.

The very existence of the supercompensation phase for a majority of metabolic substances has never been experimentally proven. For some metabolites, like muscle glycogen, after-exercise depletion has been definitely demonstrated. It is possible to induce glycogen supercompensation by combining a proper training routine with carbohydrate loading. This procedure, however, cannot be reproduced regularly and is used only before important competitions, not for training. The concentrations of other biochemical substrata whose role in muscular activity has been proven to be very important, for example, **adenosine triphosphate (ATP),** do not change substantially even after very hard exercise. The restoration of initial levels of different metabolic substances requires unequal amounts of time. It is absolutely unclear which criteria (substances) one should use for selecting proper time intervals between consecutive workouts. In general, the theory of supercompensation is too simple to be correct. Over the last few years it has lost much of its popularity.

Two-Factor Theory (Fitness-Fatigue Theory)

The **two-factor theory** of training is more sophisticated than the supercompensation theory. It is based on the idea that preparedness, characterized by the athlete's potential sport performance, is not stable but rather varies with time. There are two components of the athlete's preparedness: those that are slow changing and those that are fast changing. The term **physical fitness** is used for slow-changing motor components of the athlete's preparedness. Physical fitness does not vary substantially over several minutes, hours, or even days. However, as a result of fatigue, psychological overstress, or a sudden illness such as flu, an athlete's disposition toward competition may change quickly. An athlete's preparedness is sometimes thought of as a set of latent characteristics that exist at any time but can be measured only from time to time. According to the two-factor model, the immediate training effect after a workout is a combination of two processes:

1. Gain in fitness prompted by the workout
2. Fatigue

After one workout, an athlete's preparedness

- ameliorates due to fitness gain, but
- deteriorates because of fatigue.

The final outcome is determined by the summation of the positive and negative changes (figure 1.7).

The fitness gain resulting from one training session is supposed to be moderate in magnitude but long lasting. The fatigue effect is greater in magnitude, but relatively short in duration. For most crude estimations, it is assumed that for one workout with an average training load, the durations of the fitness gain and the fatigue effect differ by a factor of three: The fatigue effect is three times shorter in duration. This implies that if the negative impact of fatigue lasts, for instance, 24 h, the positive traces from this workout will remain through 72 h.

The time course of the immediate training effect after a single workout can be described by the equation

$$\text{Preparedness} = P_0 + P_1 e^{-k_1 t} - P_2 e^{-k_2 t},$$

where

P_0 is the initial level of preparedness before the training workout;

P_1 is the fitness gain;

P_2 is the fatigue effect estimated immediately after the workout;

t is time;

k_1 and k_2 are time constraints; and

e is the base of the system of natural logarithms, approximately 2.718.

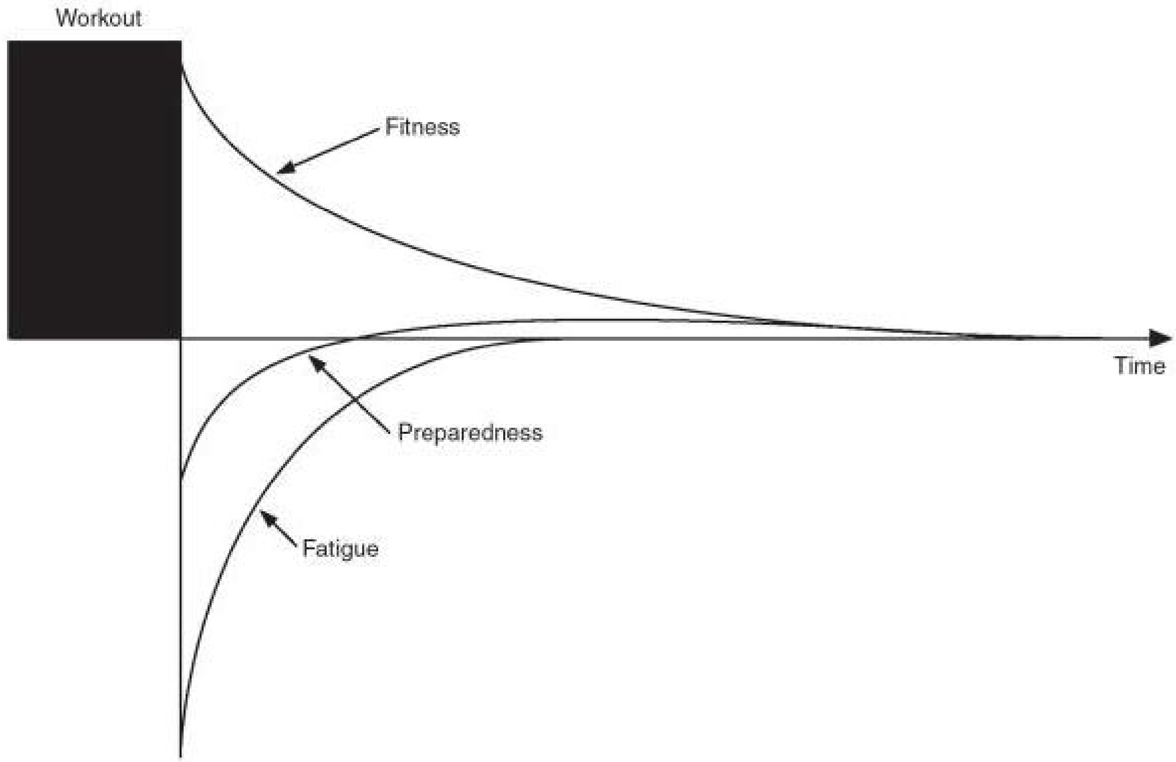


Figure 1.7 Two-factor theory (model) of training. The immediate effect of a training session is characterized by the joint action of two processes: fitness gain and fatigue. Athlete preparedness improves because of fitness gain and worsens because of fatigue.

One- and Two-Factor Models of Training

These models help coaches to grasp and visualize the timing of workout–rest intervals during preparation of athletes and to view training as an organized process rather than a chaotic sequence of drill sessions and rest periods.

Imagine two coaches with different coaching philosophies. Coach A strictly adheres to the one-factor theory of training and is trying to schedule a training session for when (in his estimation) the supercompensation phase takes place. Coach B prefers the two-factor theory of training and is looking for rest intervals that are long enough for proper restoration and, at the same time, short enough to maintain the acquired physical fitness level. At times the training plans of the two coaches may look similar, but the underlying philosophies are not the same. You would see the greatest differences in plans for **tapering,** or **peaking,** periods that take place immediately before important competitions. Coach A would probably recommend that his athletes decrease the number of training sessions (but not the load during the sessions) in order to compete at the climax of the supercompensation phase. For instance, in accordance with the one-factor theory, he has the athletes train only two or three times during the final week before the main competition, with each workout containing a relatively large load. Coach B, on the other hand, prefers that her athletes maintain acquired preparedness, avoid fatigue, and participate in several warm-up-type training sessions. The idea here is to decrease the training load during each session rather than the number of workouts.

According to the two-factor theory of training, the time intervals between consecutive training sessions should be selected so that all the negative traces of the preceding workout pass out of existence but the positive fitness gain persists. This model has become rather popular among coaches and is used predominantly to plan training, especially during the final training days before a competition.

TRAINING EFFECTS

Training effects, that is, changes that occur within the body as a result of training, can be further classified as follows:

- **Acute effects** are the changes that occur during exercise.
- **Immediate effects** are those that occur as a result of a single training session and that are manifested soon after the workout.
- **Cumulative effects** occur as a result of continued training sessions or even seasons of training.
- **Delayed effects** (also called chronic effects) are those manifested over a given time interval after a performed training routine.
- **Partial effects** are changes produced by single training means (e.g., bench press exercise).
- **Residual effects** are defined as the retention of changes after the cessation of training beyond time periods during which adaptation can take place.

SUMMARY

The major objective in training is to induce specific adaptations toward the improvement of athletic performance. In strength training, adaptation means the adjustment of an organism to exercise (physical load). If a training program is properly planned and executed, an athlete's strength improves as a result of adaptation.

Training adaptation takes place when the training load is above usual or the athlete is not accustomed to an exercise. Training loads are roughly classified as stimulating, retaining, and detraining loads. In order to induce the adaptation, the following are required:

1. An exercise overload must be applied.
2. The exercises and training protocol must be specific (corresponding to the main sport exercise).
3. Both exercises and training load (intensity, volume) should vary over time periods. When the same exercise with the same training load is employed over a long period of time, performance gains decrease (accommodation).
4. Training programs must be adjusted individually to each athlete. Remember that all people are different.

To plan training programs, coaches use simple models that are based on only the most essential features. These models are known as generalized theories of training.

The theory of supercompensation, or one-factor theory, is based on the idea that certain biochemical substances are depleted as a result of training workouts. After the restoration period, the level of the substance increases above the initial level (supercompensation). If the next workout takes place during the supercompensation phase, the athlete's preparedness increases. In the fitness-fatigue theory (two-factor theory), the immediate effect after a workout is considered a combination of (a) fitness gain prompted by the workout and (b) fatigue. The summation of positive and negative changes determines the final outcome.

The effects of training can be classified as acute, immediate, cumulative, delayed, partial, or residual.

chapter 2

Task-Specific Strength

If the goal is knowing *how* an athlete must train to achieve the best results, the steps along the way are to first know *what* it is that should be trained and to understand *why* the training must be performed in a prescribed way. To understand strength training, one must first clearly understand the notion of muscular strength per se.

In this chapter you will examine the definition of muscular strength and then learn the main factors that determine its manifestation. When an athlete sincerely attempts a maximal effort, the resulting force depends on both the motor task and the athlete's abilities. Therefore, we will look at the determining factors as they compare across tasks and then, in chapter 3, examine the determining factors as they compare across athletes. The carryover from the exercises used in the weight room to the sport skills is relevant to the concept of task-specific strength.

ELEMENTS OF STRENGTH

If an athlete were asked to produce a high force against a penny, the effort would fail. In spite of the best effort, the magnitude of force would be rather small. We may conclude that the magnitude of muscular force depends on the external resistance provided. Resistance is one of the factors that act to determine the force generated by an athlete, but only one. Other factors are also important, and here we explore them in detail.

Maximal Muscular Performance

Imagine an athlete who is asked to put a shot several times, making different efforts in various attempts. According to the laws of mechanics, the throwing distance is determined by the position of the projectile at release and its velocity (both magnitude and direction) at that moment. Let's suppose that the release position and release angle of the shot are not changed in different attempts. In this case, the throwing distance (performance) is determined only by the initial velocity of the projectile. As the subject throws the shot with different efforts in different attempts, the throwing distance is maximal in only one case. This is the individual's **maximal muscular performance** (maximal distance, maximal velocity). The symbol P_m (or V_m for maximal velocity, F_m for maximal force) will be used throughout this book to specify maximal muscular performance.

Parametric Relations

At the next stage of the experiment, the athlete puts the shots with maximal effort, trying to achieve the best possible result. However, instead of putting the men's shot (7,257 g), the athlete puts the women's shot (4,000 g). The shot velocity is obviously greater using the lower weight. Two different values of V_m, one for the men's shot and one for the women's shot, are registered as a result of this experiment.

In science, a variable that determines the outcome of the experiment (such as mass or distance) or the specific form of a mathematical expression is a **parameter.** In other words, the parameter is an independent variable that is manipulated during the experiment. We may say that in the last example, the experimental parameter (shot mass) was changed. If the shot mass (parameter) is changed in a systematic way, for instance in the range from 0.5 kg to 20 kg, the maximal muscular performance (P_m, V_m, F_m) for each used shot will be different.

The dependent variables, in particular F_m and V_m, are interrelated. The relation between V_m and F_m is called the maximal parametric relation, or simply the **parametric relation.** The term *parametric* is used here to stress that V_m and F_m were changed because the values of the motor task parameter were altered. The parametric relation between V_m and F_m is typically negative. In the throw of a heavy shot, the force applied to the object is greater and the velocity is less than in the throw of a light shot. The greater the force F_m, the lower the velocity V_m. The same holds true for other motor tasks (figure 2.1; see also figure 2.10 on page 29).

Nonparametric Relations

Each point on a parametric curve (V_m–F_m) corresponds to the maximal performance at the given value of the motor task parameter (i.e., object weight, external resistance, gear ratio, distance). Among these performances are peak values such as the highest F_m or V_m. These achievements, the highest among the maximal, are termed **maximum maximorum performance.** The symbols P_{mm}, V_{mm}, and F_{mm} are used to represent them. These levels can be achieved only under the most favorable conditions. For instance, V_{mm} can be attained only if the external mechanical resistance is minimal and the movement time is short (e.g., in the throwing of light objects or in the sprint dash), and F_{mm} can be attained only if the external resistance is sufficiently high.

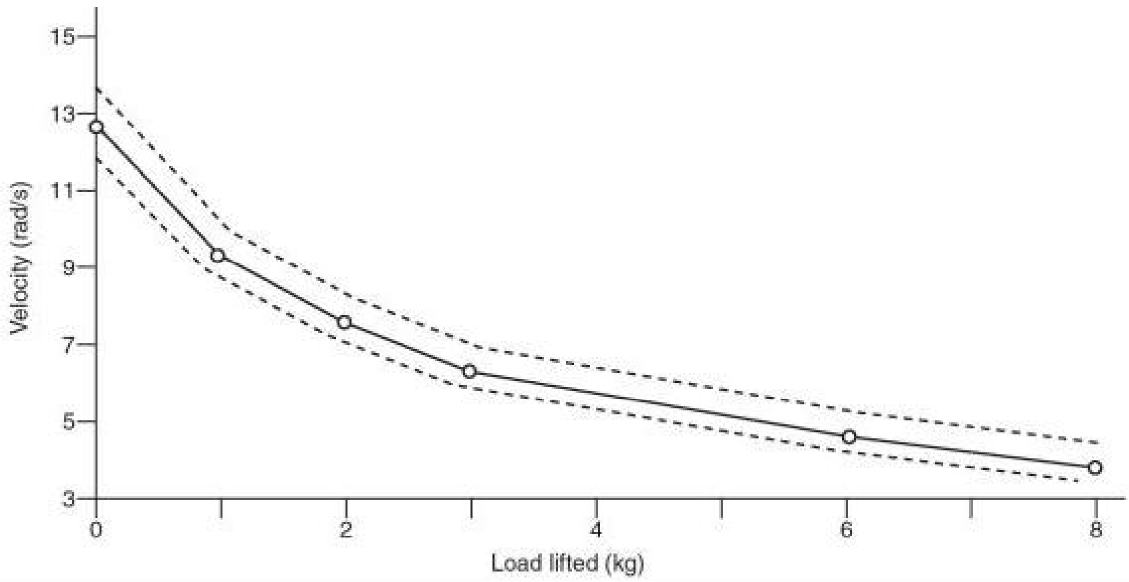


Figure 2.1 Parametric relations between force and velocity. In the experiment, 100 young males performed fast shoulder flexions with the arm extended while holding a barbell. The load lifted in different trials varied from 0 (unloaded arm) to 8.0 kg. The maximal lifting velocity V_m was recorded in each trial. The data are group average and standard deviations.

Reprinted, by permission, from V.M. Zatsiorsky, Yu. I. Smirnov and N.G. Kulik, 1969, "Relations between the motor abilities, part 1," *Theory and Practice of Physical Culture* 31(12): 35-48.

Examples of Parametric Relations

A coach suggested that athlete–cyclists change the gear ratios of their bikes during training. The higher the ratio, the greater the force applied to the pedals and the lower the pedaling frequency. The (inverse) relation between the force and the frequency (the velocity of foot motion) is an example of a parametric relation.

Here are examples of parametric force–velocity relations from different activities:

Activity	Variable parameter	Force	Velocity	Relation
Cycling	Gear ratio	Force applied to the pedal	Pedaling (frequency rate)	Inverse (negative)
Rowing, kayaking, canoeing	Blade area of an oar or a paddle	Applied to the oar or the paddle	The blade with respect to the water	Same
Uphill/downhill ambulation	Slope	At takeoff	Ambulation	Same
Throwing	Weight/mass of the implement	Exerted upon the implement	Implement at the release	Same
Standing vertical jump	Modified body weight; weight added (waist belt) or deduced (suspension system)	At takeoff	Body at the end of takeoff	Same

Note that all relations are negative (inverse)—the higher the force, the lower the velocity.

The relation between P_{mm} (V_{mm}, F_{mm}) on the one hand and P_m (V_m, F_m, T_m) on the other is called the maximal nonparametric relationship, or simply the **nonparametric relationship.** The following performance pairs are examples of nonparametric relationships:

- The maximal result in a bench press (F_{mm}) and the throwing distance of putting 7- or 4-kg shots (P_m or V_m)
- The maximum maximorum force in a leg extension and the height of a standing jump

Nonparametric relations, unlike parametric ones, are typically positive. For instance, the greater the value of F_{mm}, the greater the value of the V_m, meaning the stronger the athlete, the faster the athlete can perform a given movement. This conclusion is only valid if the resistance overcome by the athlete, such as the weight of the implement, is sufficiently large (figure 2.2). For instance, in activities where athletes propel their own body, such as in standing vertical jumps, a positive correlation between the F_{mm} and V_m is commonly observed: Stronger athletes jump higher. This is especially true for beginning athletes. If the resistance (the parameter value of the task) is low, the correlation between F_{mm} and V_m is small. In such tasks, for example in table tennis strokes, stronger athletes do not have an advantage. The correlation between maximum maximorum values of F_{mm} and V_{mm} is 0: Stronger athletes are not necessarily the fastest ones.

When considering the training of maximal muscular strength, one should distinguish between F_{mm} and F_m.

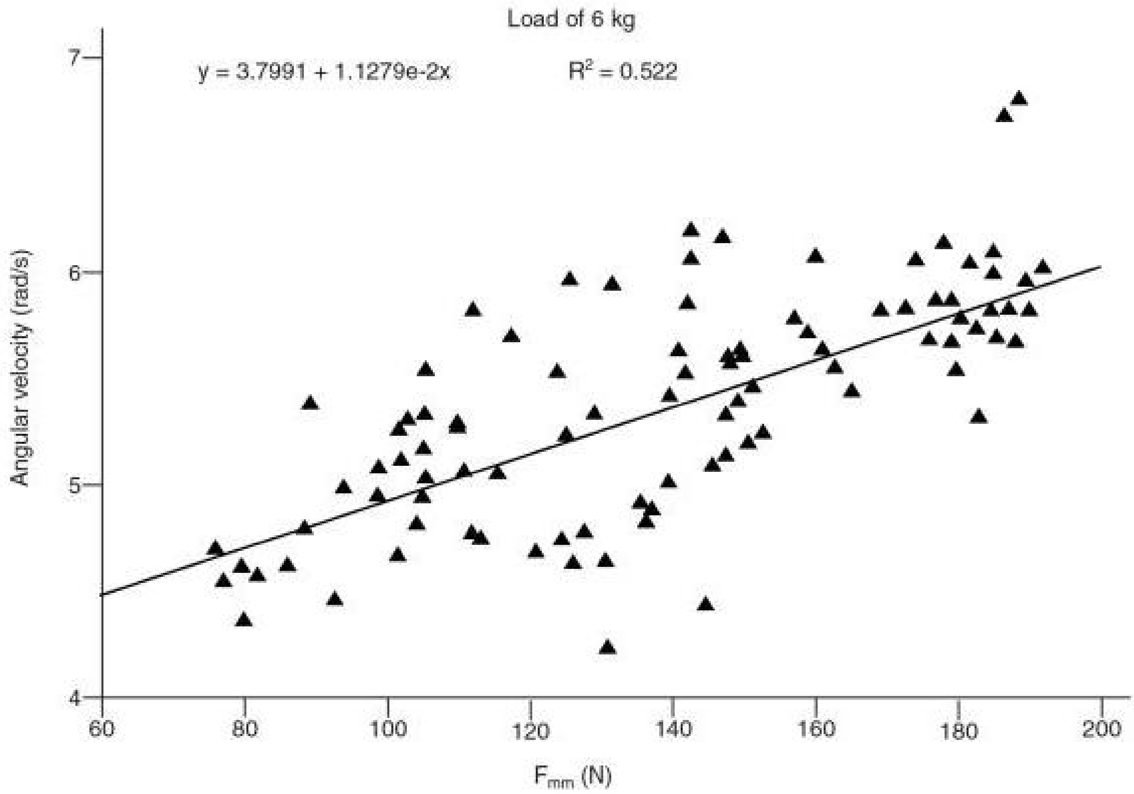


Figure 2.2 Nonparametric relation between the maximum maximorum force (F_{mm}) and the velocity of shoulder flexion (V_m) with arm extended. Load (a dumbbell) of 6 kg in the hand; 100 subjects. Compare with figure 2.12 on page 32.

The data from *Motor Abilities of Athletes* (p. 46) by V.M. Zatsiorsky, 1969, unpublished doctoral dissertation, Central Institute of Physical Culture, Moscow.

Example of Nonparametric Relations

A swim coach wants to determine the importance of dryland strength training for her athletes. In order to solve this problem, she measures (a) the maximal force *(F_{mm})* produced by the athletes in a specific stroke movement against high resistance and (b) swimming velocity.

She assumes that if the correlation between the two variables is high, then the F_{mm} values are important and it is worthwhile spending the effort and time to enhance maximal force production. If the correlation is low (i.e., the strongest athletes are not the fastest ones), there is no reason to train for maximal strength. Other abilities such as **muscular endurance** and flexibility are more important.

The coach finds that the correlation between F_{mm} and swimming velocity is significant. The better swimmers generate larger forces in specific movements. This is an example of a nonparametric relation.

Why Is Strength Training Vital for Sprinters and Jumpers?

Body weight (during the upward takeoff motion) and body mass (during both the horizontal and vertical push-offs) provide high resistance. If you practice a leg extension without any external resistance, the strength training will be of small value, since there is no positive relation between the maximum maximorum force *(F_{mm})* and the maximum maximorum velocity *(V_{mm})* in this case.

Defining Muscular Strength

Strength, or muscular strength, is the ability to generate maximum maximorum external force, F_{mm}. Recall that in mechanics and physics, **force** is defined as an instantaneous measure of the interaction between two bodies. Force manifests itself in two ways: Either the movement of a body is changed or the body is deformed (or both). Force is a vector quantity. It is characterized by (a) magnitude, (b) direction, and (c) point of application. Since force is an instantaneous measure and all human movements are performed over a certain span of time, the entire force–time continuum, not just the force at a given instant of time, is typically what interests coaches and athletes.

Many different forces exist in athletic movements. In biomechanics, they are divided into two groups: internal forces and external forces. A force exerted by one constituent part of the human body on another part is an **internal force.** Internal forces include bone-on-bone forces and tendon-to-bone forces, among others. The forces acting between an athlete's body and the environment are called **external forces.** Thus, according to this definition of strength, only external forces are regarded as a measure of an athlete's strength.

It is well known that an active muscle exerts force on the bone while

- shortening (concentric or miometric action),
- lengthening (eccentric or plyometric action), or
- remaining the same length (static or isometric action).

Note that *metric* means "length," *mio* means "less," *pleio* (*plio-*) means "more," and *iso* means "same" or "constant." In the United States, *plyometrics* has become a common spelling, with *pliometrics* an alternative. Disregarding the differences between muscular force (force developed by a muscle) and muscular strength (maximal force exerted on an external body), this simple classification can be used to discern variations of muscular strength.

In another sense, strength can be defined as the ability to overcome or counteract external resistance by muscular effort. In the case of concentric muscular action, resistance forces act in the direction opposite to the **motion,** whereas in eccentric action, the external forces act in the same direction as the motion.

What Is Muscular Strength?

A subject was asked to flex an elbow joint with maximal effort to generate the highest possible force and velocity against different objects. The objects included a dime, a baseball, a 7-kg shot, and dumbbells of different weights, including one that was too heavy to lift. The maximal forces (F_m) applied to the objects were measured and found to be unequal.

The question: Which of the F_m values represents muscular strength?

The answer: According to the definition given, the highest one. The F_{mm}, not F_m, is the measure of muscular strength.

DETERMINING FACTORS: COMPARISON ACROSS TASKS

If, in different attempts, all body parts move along the same trajectory or very similar trajectories, we say that the motion itself is the same regardless of differences in such elements as time and velocity. So, by definition, a motion is determined only by the geometry of movement, not by its kinematics or kinetics. For instance, a **snatch** (one of the lifts in Olympic-style weightlifting, in which the barbell is lifted from the floor to over the head in one continuous motion) with a barbell of different weights is one motion, while the takeoff in a vertical jump with or without an additional load is a second motion.

Maximal forces exerted by an athlete in the same motion, for instance in the leg extension of the previous examples, are dissimilar if conditions are changed. The two types of factors that determine these differences are extrinsic (external) and intrinsic (internal).

Extrinsic Factors and the Role of Resistance

Force is the measure of the action of one body against another, and its magnitude depends on the features and movements of both bodies in action. The force exerted by an athlete on an external body (e.g., a free weight, a throwing implement, the handle of an exercise machine, water in swimming and rowing) depends not only on the athlete but also on external factors.

To judge the role of external resistance, imagine an athlete who exerts maximal force (F_m) in a leg extension such as squatting. Two experimental paradigms are employed to measure the external resistance. In the first case, the maximal isometric force (F_m) corresponding to different degrees of leg extension is measured. Many researchers have found that the correlation between the force F_m and leg length (the distance from the pelvis to the foot) is positive: If the leg extends, the force increases (figure 2.3, curve A; see also figure 1.3). Maximum maximorum force (F_{mm}) is achieved when the position of the leg is close to full extension. This is in agreement with everyday observations—the heaviest weight can be lifted in semisquatting, not deep squatting, movements.

However, if the leg extension force is registered in a dynamic movement such as a takeoff in jumping, the dependence is exactly the opposite (figure 2.3, curve B). In this case, maximal force is generated in the deepest squatting position. The correlation of F_m to leg length, then, is negative. Here the mechanical behavior of a support leg resembles the behavior of a spring; the greater the deformation (i.e., knee bending), the greater the force. Remember that in both experimental

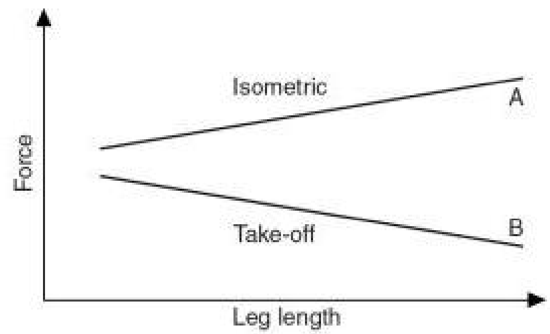


Figure 2.3 Relations between maximal force in leg extension and body position (leg length). Curve A is isometric testing. Curve B is force generated as the leg extends during a takeoff.

conditions (isometric and jumping takeoff), the athlete is making maximal effort. Thus, both the magnitude of F_m and the correlation of F_m to leg length (positive or negative) are changed because the type of resistance changes. In the first case the resistance is the immovable obstacle and in the second it is the weight and inertia of the athlete's body.

Mechanical Feedback

All strength exercises, depending on the type of resistance, can be separated into those with and those without **mechanical feedback.** Consider, for instance, a paddling movement in water. In hydrodynamics, the force applied to water is proportional to the velocity squared ($F = kV^2$). However, the oar's velocity is the result of an athlete's efforts, an external muscular force. The chain of events is represented in figure 2.4. Here, active muscular force leads to higher oar velocity, which in turn increases water resistance. Then, to overcome the increased water resistance, the muscular force is elevated. Thus, increased water resistance can be regarded as an effect of the high muscular force (mechanical feedback).

Imagine a different example, that of an individual pushing a heavy truck that is already moving. Regardless of all the force applied by the person, the truck moves with the same velocity. The human's muscular efforts result in no change in the truck's movement (no mechanical feedback).

Sport movements usually involve mechanical feedback: The movement, as well as resistance, is changed as a result of an athlete's force application. Mechanical feedback is absent only in the performance of isometric exercises and in work with isokinetic devices.

With isokinetic devices, the velocity of limb movements around a joint is kept constant. The resistance of the device is equal to the muscular force applied throughout the range of movement. The maximal force F_m is measured in dynamic conditions, provided that the preset velocity has been attained by the moving limb.

Types of Resistance

Because of the specific requirements of strength exercises, selecting the proper class of mechanical resistance equipment is important in training. The equipment typically used in resistance training programs can be categorized according to the type of resistance involved.

In resistance based on **elasticity,** the magnitude of force is determined by the range of displacement. The length of an object with ideal elasticity increases in proportion to the force applied. The formula is $F = k_l D$, where F is force, k_l is a coefficient (stiffness), and D is displacement (deformation). In other words, the greater the range of motion (e.g., the deformation of a spring, stretch cord, or rubber band), the higher the exerted muscular force. In such exercises, the resistance and the force exerted by an athlete increase during the motion and attain the maximal value at the end of the movement (the tension in the bands is greatest when the band is maximally extended).

Another type of resistance is based on **inertia.** A movement follows Newton's second law of motion: $F = ma$, where m is mass and a is acceleration. The force is proportional to the mass (inertia) of the accelerated body and its acceleration. As the body mass is typically selected as a parameter of a motor task, the force determines the acceleration. Because of gravity and friction, however, it is difficult to observe movement in which the resistance is formed only by inertia. The motion of a billiard ball on a horizontal surface is one example.

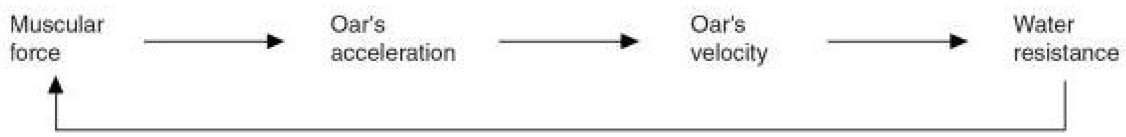


Figure 2.4 Mechanical feedback loop.

In science, movement against inertial resistance is studied by using an **inertia wheel,** or pulley, that rotates freely around an axis perpendicular to its surface plane. A rope is wound repeatedly around the pulley and a subject then pulls the rope; the force exerted by the subject in turn rotates the pulley and does mechanical work. With this device, the potential **energy** of the system is constant and all mechanical work, except small frictional losses, is converted into kinetic energy. By varying the mass (or moment of inertia) of the wheel, we can study the dependence of exerted muscular force, particularly F_m, on the mass of the object. The results are shown in figure 2.5.

If the mass of an accelerated object is relatively small, the maximal force exerted by an athlete depends on the size of the mass (see zone A in figure 2.5*b*). It is impossible to exert a large F_m against a body of small mass. For instance, it is unrealistic to apply a great force to a coin. If the mass of an object is large, however, the F_m depends not on the body mass but only on the athlete's strength (figure 2.5*b*, zone B).

An example from sport training shows the relation between mass and force. When objects of different masses are thrown (e.g., shots 1.0-20.0 kg are used in training), the force applied to the light shots is relatively small and heavily influenced by the shot mass (zone A). The force exerted on the heavy shots, however, is determined only by the athlete's strength (zone B).

Resistance can also be based on **weight.** The formula is $F = W + ma$, where W is the weight of the object and a is the vertical accel-

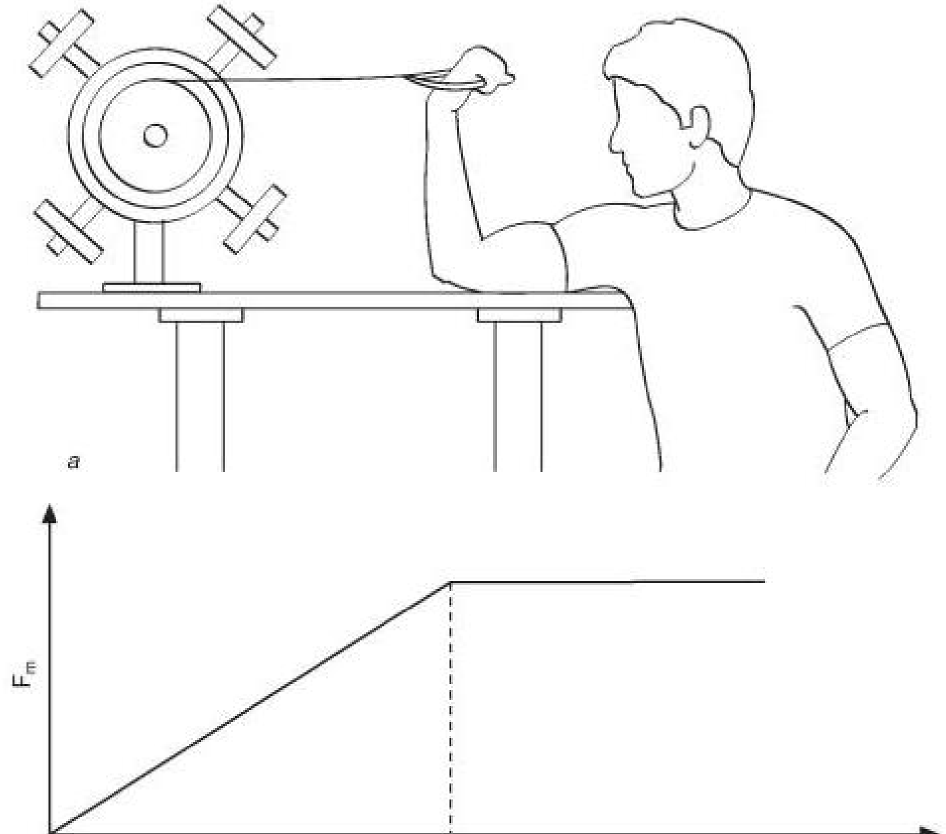


Figure 2.5 The inertia wheel *(a)* and the dependence of maximal exerted force F_m on the mass of the moving object *(b)*. Scale on the abscissas is logarithmic.

Reprinted, by permission, from V.M. Zatsiorsky, 1966, *Motor abilities of athletes* (Moscow, Russia: Fizkultura i Sport).

eration. If a is 0 (the object is at rest or in uniform motion), the force equals the object weight. When exercising with free weights, an athlete needs to fix the barbell in a static position. Typically, it is not feasible to relax before and immediately after the effort as is possible for a motion against other types of resistance (for instance, in a swimmer's stroke). All exercises in which athletes move their own bodies (gymnastics strength exercises) are classified as having this type of resistance.

If a body is accelerated by muscular force, the direction of the acceleration does not coincide with the direction of this force except when the movement is vertical. Rather, it coincides with the direction of the resultant force, which is a vector sum of the muscular force and the force of gravity. Since gravity is always acting downward, the athlete should compensate for this action by directing the effort higher than the desired movement direction. For instance, in shot putting the direction of the shot acceleration does not coincide with the direction of the athlete's force applied to the shot (figure 2.6). The same is true for jump takeoffs.

Hydrodynamic resistance predominates in water sports such as swimming, rowing, and kayaking. Force in this case depends on the velocity squared: $F = k_2V^2$, where V is the velocity relative to water and k_2 is a coefficient of hydrodynamic resistance. It is difficult to model this type of resistance on land. Thus the selection of proper strength or dryland training in water sports is a special problem. The use of weights or elastic resistance is not a satisfactory solution. While performing a stroke in the water, the athlete relaxes immediately before and after the stroke and also exerts maximal force against the water resistance at a time when the maximal velocity is achieved. These two features are both unattainable with springs and free weights.

With some training devices the resistance is provided by **viscosity.** Here the exerted muscular force is proportional to the movement velocity, $F = k_3V$. These exercise machines are mainly used as a substitute for natural water conditions and for dryland training in water sports.

Compound resistance is also used in training. For instance, one end of a rubber band can be fixed to the floor and the second

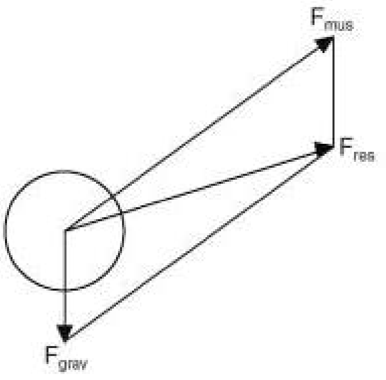


Figure 2.6 Muscular (F_{mus}) and gravity (F_{grav}) forces applied to a shot. Shot acceleration coincides in direction with the resultant force (F_{res}) but not with F_{mus}.

Selection of Dryland Exercises for Swimmers

A swim coach explored several types of training devices for dryland training. Lying in a prone position on a couch, the athletes initiated a stroke pattern against provided resistance. First they used extensible rubber-like bands. However, during this exercise the pulling force inevitably increased from the beginning to the end of the pull. This movement pattern is not similar to the customary stroke. Then the swimmers used a weightlifting exercise machine with a pulley to pull a rope attached to a load. The resistance was almost constant over the range of the pull, but they couldn't relax their muscles at the end of the motion. Their arms were forcibly jerked in the reverse direction. Finally the athletes used training devices with friction resistance (or hydrodynamic resistance). These provided either constant resistance (friction devices) or resistance proportional to the pull velocity (hydrodynamic exercise machines), which mimicked water resistance. The resemblance, however, was far from ideal; during the natural stroke, the resistive force is proportional to the squared values of the hand velocity with respect to the water.

attached to a barbell. In this case, when the barbell is being lifted, the athlete overcomes the resistance of the barbell weight (which is constant), the barbell inertia (which is proportional to the acceleration of the barbell), and the elastic force (which grows larger the higher the barbell is lifted).

Intrinsic Factors

The strength that an athlete can exert in the same motion depends on several variables: time available for force development, velocity, direction of movement, and body position. The cause of muscular strength is, obviously, the activity of individual muscles. The variables just mentioned also determine the force output of single muscles. However, the relation between the activity of specific muscles and muscular strength (e.g., in lifting a barbell) is not straightforward. Muscular strength is determined by the concerted activity of many muscles. Active muscles produce a pulling effect on the bones in a straight line. But the translatory action of muscular forces also induces a rotatory movement in the joints. As various muscles are inserted at different distances from the joint axes of rotations, their rotatory actions (moments of force) are not in direct proportion to the force developed by muscles. The rotatory movements in several joints are coordinated so as to produce the maximal external force in a desired direction, such as the vertical direction required to lift a barbell. Thus, complicated relations exist between muscular force (force exerted by a given muscle) and muscular strength (maximal external force). Regardless of these differences, many facets of muscular biomechanics and the physiology of isolated muscles are manifested in the complex movements involving numerous muscles.

Time Available for Force Development

It takes time to develop maximal force for a given motion (figure 2.7). The time to peak force (T_m) varies with each person and with different motions; on average, if measured isometrically, it is approximately 0.3 to 0.4 s. Typically, the time to peak force is even longer than 0.4 s. However, the final increase in force is very small, < 2 to 3% of F_m, and force output begins to fluctuate, preventing a precise determination of the time to peak force. In practice, the final portion of the force–time curve is usually disregarded.

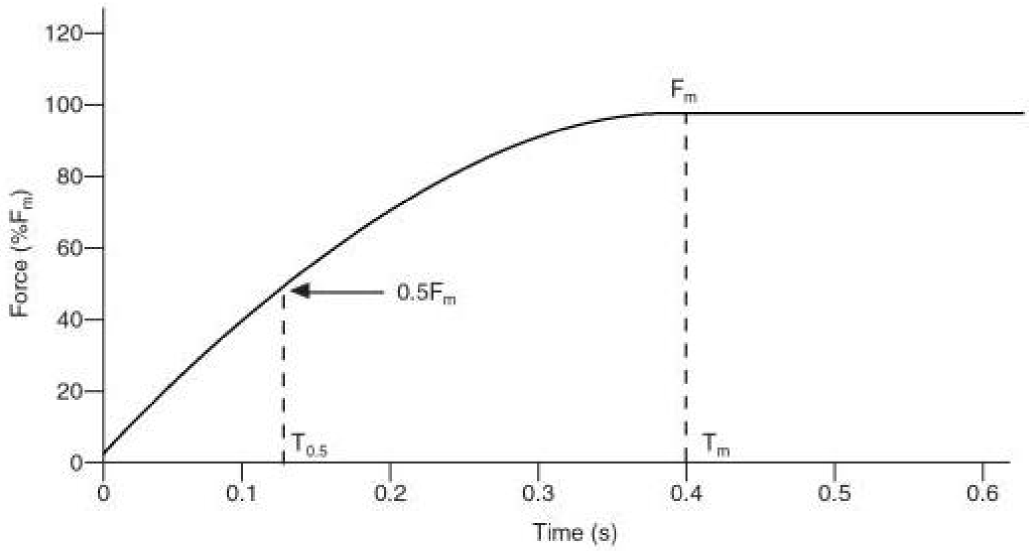


Figure 2.7 Development of maximal muscular force over time. T_m is the time to peak force F_m; $T_{0.5}$ is the time to 1/2 of F_m.

The time for maximal force development can be compared with the time typically required by elite athletes to perform several motions:

Motion	Time (s)
Takeoff	
Sprint running	0.08-0.10
Long jump	0.11-0.12
High jump	0.17-0.18
Delivery	
Javelin	0.16-0.18
Shot put	0.15-0.18
Hand takeoff (horse vaulting)	0.18-0.21

It is easy to see that the time of motion is less than T_m in all examples given. Because of their short durations, the maximal possible force F_{mm} cannot be attained during the performance of these motions.

As the resistance decreases and the motion time becomes shorter, the difference between F_m (the maximal force reached in a given condition) and F_{mm} (the highest among the maximal forces attained in the most beneficial condition) increases. The difference between F_{mm} and F_m is termed the **explosive-strength deficit (ESD)** (figure 2.8). By definition:

$$\text{ESD (\%)} = 100(F_{mm} - F_m) / F_{mm}.$$

ESD shows the percentage of an athlete's strength potential that was not used in a given attempt. In movements such as takeoffs and delivery phases in throwing, ESD is about 50%. For instance, among the best shot-putters during throws of 21.0 m, the peak force F_m applied to the shot is in the range of 50 to 60 kg. The best results for these athletes in an arm extension exercise (F_{mm}, bench press) are typically about 220 to 240 kg, or 110 to 120 kg for each arm. Thus, in throwing, the athletes can only use about 50% of F_{mm}.

In principle, there are two ways to increase the force output in explosive motions—to increase F_{mm} or decrease ESD. The first method brings good results at the beginning of sport preparation. If a young shot-putter

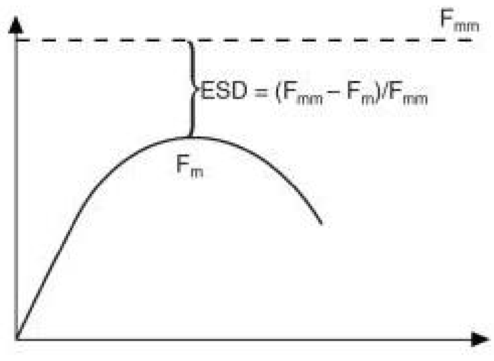


Figure 2.8 Determining explosive-strength deficit.

Why Is a Finger Snap Faster and Stronger Than Unobstructed Finger Extension?

Recall your elementary school years: Place the tip of your index finger against the tip of your thumb as shown and exert a maximal extension force. Keep the finger under tension for some time and then let it go. Snap the palm of your other hand. In the second trial, simply extend the index finger. You will find that the snapping is much faster and stronger. Why?

Here is the explanation: The time of finger extension is approximately 0.1 s. This time is too short to exert the maximal force. In contrast, during the first part of the snapping maneuver the time available for force development is not limited and the maximal tension is accummulated. Then the trigger is released and the accummulated tension is manifested during the movement. While this experiment looks like a kid's joke, a similar technique is used by scientists to get rid of the effects of the rate of force development on force manifestation. It is called the quick-release technique (see page 31).

improves achievement in, say, the bench press from 50 to 150 kg and also pays proper attention to the development of other muscle groups, this athlete has a very strong basis for better sport performance in shot putting. This is not necessarily valid, however, for a bench press gain from 200 to 300 kg. In spite of efforts devoted to making such a tremendous increase, the shot-putting result may not improve. The reason for this is the very short duration of the delivery phase. The athlete simply has no time to develop maximal force (F_{mm}). In such a situation, the second factor, explosive strength, not the athlete's maximal strength (F_{mm}), is the critical factor. By definition, **explosive strength** is the ability to exert maximal forces in minimal time.

Let's compare two athletes, A and B, with different force–time histories (figure 2.9). If the time of motion is short (i.e., in the time-deficit zone), then A is stronger than B. The situation is exactly opposite if the time of the movement is long enough to develop maximal muscular force. Training of maximal strength cannot help athlete B improve performance if the motion is in the time-deficit zone.

When sport performance improves, the time of motion turns out to be shorter. The better an athlete's qualifications, the greater the role of the **rate of force development** in the achievement of high-level performance.

Several indices are used to estimate explosive strength and the rate of force development (see figure 2.7 for the key to the symbols).

(a) **Index of explosive strength (IES):**

$$\text{IES} = F_m / T_m$$

where F_m is the peak force and T_m is the time to peak force.

(b) **Reactivity coefficient (RC):**

$$\text{RC} = F_m / (T_m W),$$

where W is an athlete's weight. RC is typically highly correlated with jumping performances, especially with body velocity after a takeoff.

(c) **Force gradient,** also called the S-gradient (*S* for start):

$$\text{S-gradient} = F_{0.5} / T_{0.5},$$

where $F_{0.5}$ is one half of the maximal force F_m and $T_{0.5}$ is the time to attain it. S-gradient characterizes the rate of force development at the beginning phase of a muscular effort.

(d) **A-gradient** (A for acceleration):

$$\text{A-gradient} = F_{0.5} / (T_{max} - T_{0.5}).$$

A-gradient is used to quantify the rate of force development in the late stages of explosive muscular efforts.

F_m and the rate of force development, particularly the S-gradient, are not correlated. Strong people do not necessarily possess a high rate of force development.

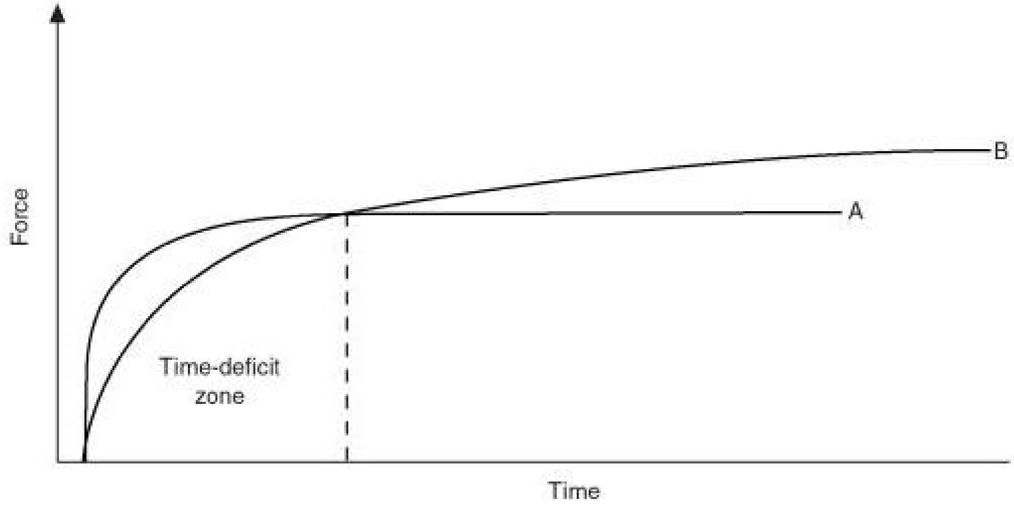


Figure 2.9 Force–time histories of two athletes, A and B. If the time available for force development is short (in the time-deficit zone), A is stronger than B. If the time is not limited, B is stronger.

Defining a Training Target: Strength or Rate of Force Development?

A young athlete began to exercise with free weights, performing squats with a heavy barbell. At first he was able to squat a barbell equal to his body weight (BW). His performance in a standing vertical jump was 40 cm. After 2 years, his achievement in the barbell squats was 2 BW, and the vertical jump increased to 60 cm. He continued to train in the same manner and after 2 more years was able to squat with a 3-BW barbell. However, his jump performance was not improved because the short takeoff time (the rate of force development) rather than maximal absolute force became the limiting factor.

Many coaches and athletes make a similar mistake. They continue to train maximal muscular strength when the real need is to develop rate of force.

Velocity

The force–velocity relation is a typical example of the parametric relations described earlier in the discussion of maximal muscular performance. Motion velocity decreases as external resistance (load) increases. For instance, if an athlete throws shots of different weights, the throwing distance (and initial velocity of the implement) increases as shot weight decreases. Maximum force (F_{mm}) is attained when velocity is small; inversely, maximum velocity (V_{mm}) is attained when external resistance is close to 0 (figure 2.10; see also figure 2.1 on page 19).

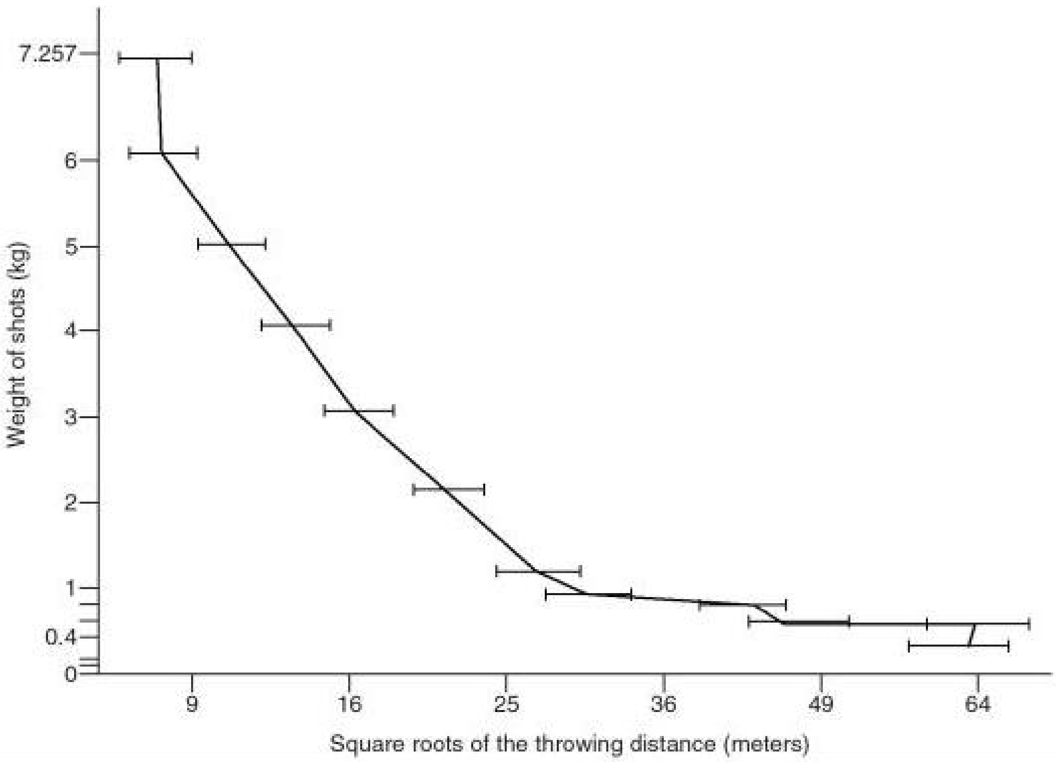


Figure 2.10 Relation between the weight of an implement and throwing distance. Athletes (n = 24) performed overhead throwing of shots of different weights from a standing position. The throwing distance, provided that the point of release and the release angle do not vary, is the function of the release velocity. Thus the relation between the shot weight and the throwing distance represents (approximately) the parametric force–velocity relation.

Reprinted, by permission, from V.M. Zatsiorsky and E.N. Matveev, 1964, "Force-velocity relationships in throwing (as related to the selection of the training exercises," *Theory and Practice of Physical Culture* 27(8): 24-28.

Experiments carried out on single muscles in laboratory conditions yield the force–velocity curve (figure 2.11), which can be described by the hyperbolic equation known as Hill's equation (after A.V. Hill, 1938).

$$(F + a)(V + b) = (F_{mm} + a)b = C,$$

where

- F is the force;
- V, velocity of muscle shortening;
- F_{mm}, maximal isometric tension of that muscle;
- a, a constant with dimensions of force;
- b, a constant with dimensions of velocity; and
- C, a constant with dimensions of power.

The force–velocity curve can be considered part of a hyperbolic curve with the axis (external) shown in figure 2.11. The curvature of the force–velocity graph is determined by the ratio $a{:}F_{mm}$. The lower the ratio, the greater the curvature. Line curvature decreases if $a{:}F_{mm}$ increases. The ratio $a{:}F_{mm}$ varies from 0.10 to 0.60. Athletes in power sports usually have a ratio higher than 0.30, while endurance athletes and beginners have a ratio that is lower.

Force–velocity (as well as torque–angular velocity) relations in human movements are not identical to analogous curves of single muscles because they are a result of the superposition of the force outcome of several muscles possessing different features. Nevertheless, force–velocity curves registered in natural human movements can be considered hyperbolic. This approximation is not absolutely accurate, but the accuracy is acceptable for the practical problems of sport training. Various main sport movements encompass different parts of the force–velocity curves.

In some athletic motions the force–velocity curve can look different from that shown in

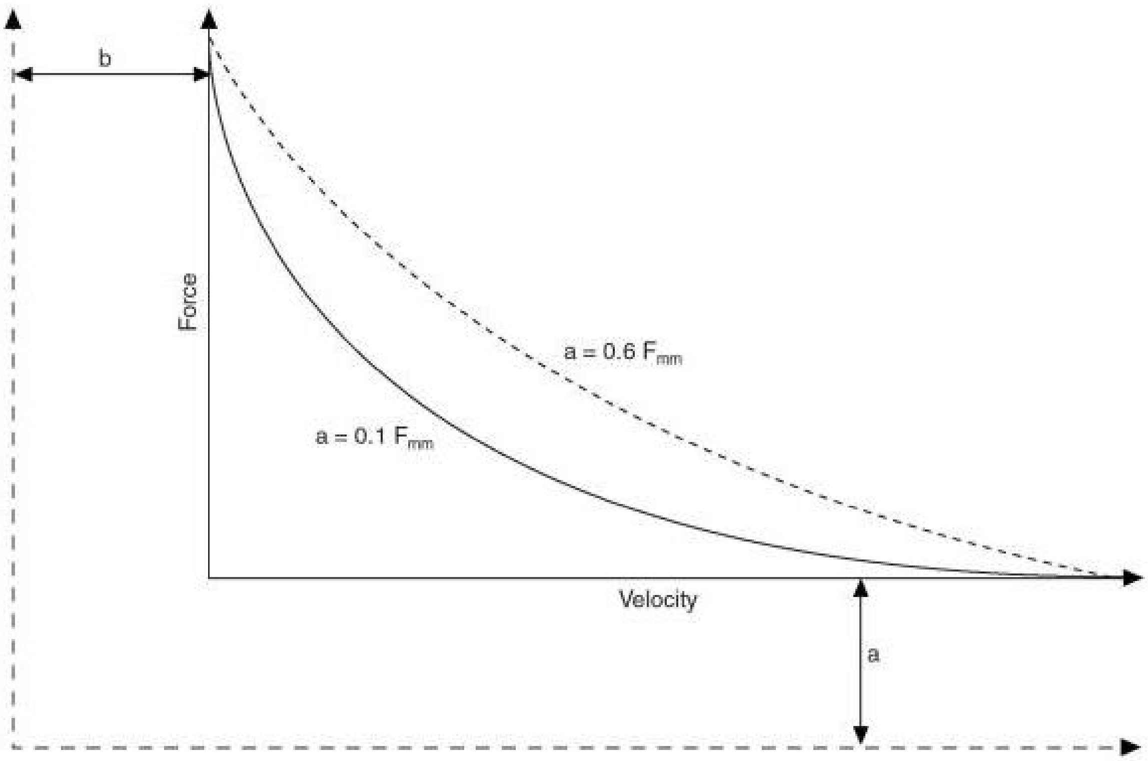


Figure 2.11 Force–velocity relation. Note the constants *a* and *b*.

Data from V.M. Zatsiorsky, 1969, *Motor abilities of athletes* (Moscow, Russia: Central Institute of Physical Culture). Doctoral dissertation.

figure 2.11. This occurs in fast movements when the time available for force development is too short to develop maximal force, thus distorting the "real" force–velocity curve. To exclude the influence of the time available for force development, experimenters use the **quick-release technique.** In this method a subject develops force under isometric conditions with a body segment mechanically locked into position. The lock is then trigger released, permitting the subject to perform a movement against the given resistance. In this case, the initial conditions for muscle shortening are determined by the magnitude of force, not the rate or time of force development.

Force–velocity relations can also be studied with isokinetic devices that keep velocity constant during a movement. However, the velocity range of modern isokinetic equipment is relatively small, preventing the study of very fast movements.

Several consequences of the force–velocity equation are important for sport practice:

1. It is impossible to exert a high force in very fast movements. If an athlete performs the first phase of a movement too fast, the ability to apply great force in the second phase may be somewhat diminished. For instance, too fast a start in lifting a barbell from the floor may prevent an athlete from exerting maximal force in the most advantageous position—when the barbell is near the knees.

2. The magnitudes of force and velocity developed in the intermediate range of the force–velocity curve depend on the maximal isometric force F_{mm}. In other words, an athlete's maximal strength F_{mm} determines the force values that can be exerted in dynamic conditions. The dependence of force and velocity developed in dynamic conditions on the maximal force F_{mm} is greater in movements with relatively high resistance and slow speed (figure 2.12). At the same time, there is no correlation between maximal force (F_{mm}) and maximal velocity (V_{mm}). The ability to produce maximal force (i.e., muscular strength) and the ability to achieve great velocity in the same motion are different motor abilities. This is true for extreme areas of the force–velocity curve, while intermediate values depend on the F_{mm}.

3. Maximal mechanical **power** (P_{mm}) is achieved in the intermediate range of force and velocity. As the velocity of the movement increases, the exerted force decreases and the released energy (work + heat) increases. Efficiency (i.e., ratio of work to energy) achieves its greatest value when the velocity is about

Why Do Shot-Putters and Javelin Throwers Pay Different Attention to Heavy Resistance Training?

In sports such as shot putting and javelin throwing, as well as in throwing in baseball or softball, the motor task is similar—to impart maximal velocity to an implement. Why then do athletes in these sports train differently (and why are their physiques so dissimilar)? Elite shot-putters spend about 50% of their total training time on heavy resistance training, while world-class javelin throwers spend only 15 to 25% of their total training time in the weight room. The reason? The implement weights are so different. The shot weight is 7.257 kg for men and 4 kg for women; the javelins weigh 0.8 and 0.6 kg. For top athletes, the velocity of a shot release is nearly 14 m/s, while javelin release velocity is above 30 m/s. These values correspond to different parts of a (parametric) force–velocity curve. The shot-putters need a high F_{mm} because of a high (nonparametric) correlation between maximal strength and the velocity of movement at delivery phase (and similarly, the shot velocity). This correlation is low in javelin throwing. In turn it would be much smaller for a table tennis stroke, since the paddle is very light. The correlation is 0 when the maximal strength (F_{mm}) is compared to the maximal velocity (V_{mm}) of an unloaded arm.

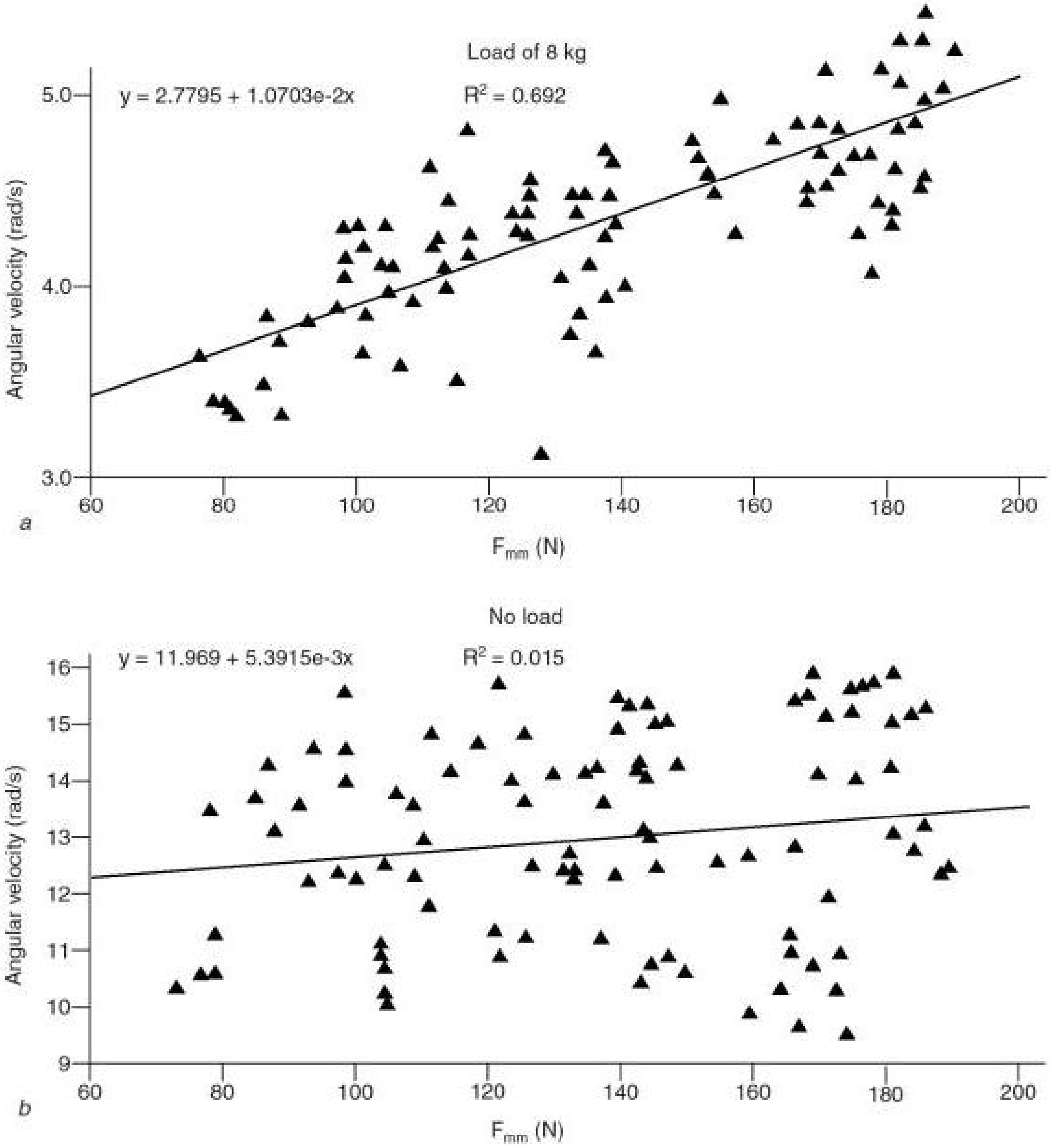


Figure 2.12 Nonparametric relation between the maximum maximorum force (F_{mm}) and the velocity of shoulder flexion with arm extended. Scattergrams of F_{mm} versus *(a)* the V_m and *(b)* V_{mm} are shown. Compare with figure 2.2. *(a)* Load (dumbbell) of 8 kg in the hand; there is a high correlation between F_{mm} and angular velocity (V_m). *(b)* No load; there is no significant correlation between F_{mm} and V_{mm}.

Reprinted, by permission, from V.M. Zatsiorsky, 1969, *Motor abilities of athletes* (Moscow, Russia: Russian State Academy of Physical Education and Sport), 48.

20% of V_{mm} with mechanical power greatest at speeds of about one third of maximum (figure 2.13).

It may seem surprising that the greatest power value is at a velocity one third the value of maximal velocity (V_{mm}). One should not forget, however, that in the simplest case, power equals force multiplied by velocity:

$$P = w / t = F(D / t) = F(V),$$

where P is power, w is work, F is force, D is distance, t is time, and V is velocity. Since F_m and

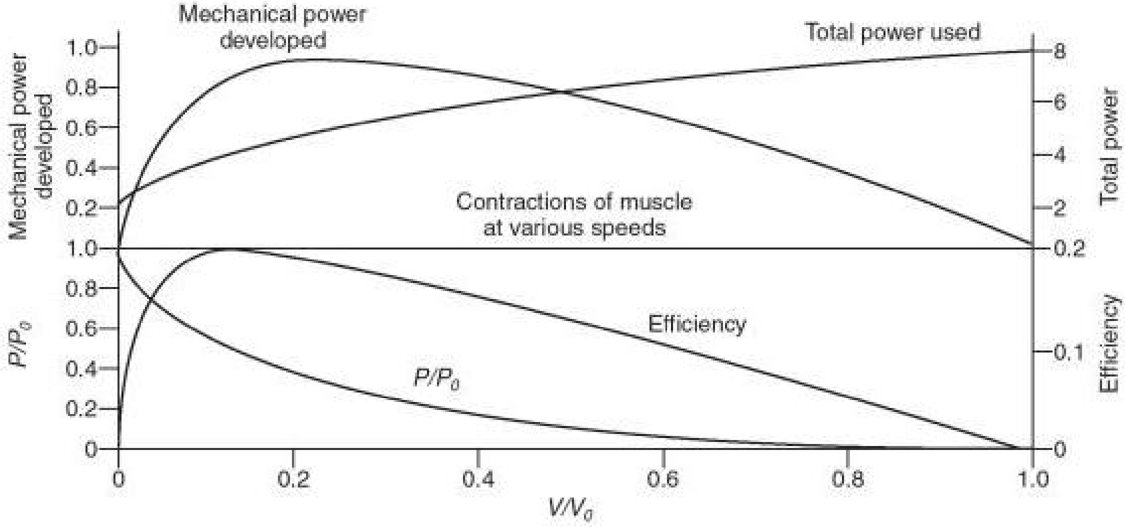


Figure 2.13 Dependence of various movement variables on motion velocity. Abscissa: speed V as a fraction of maximal speed V_0 under zero load (the symbol V_{mm} is used for this quantity throughout this book). Ordinate: Force exerted = P as a fraction of maximal force F_0 at zero speed; Efficiency = Mechanical work done / (Total energy used); Mechanical power = PV; Total power used = PV / (Efficiency). From experiments performed on isolated muscles and on men.

Reprinted, by permission, from A.V. Hill, 1950, "The dimensions of animals and their muscular dynamics," *Science Progress* 38: 209-230.

V_m are inversely related, the power is maximal when the magnitudes of force and velocity are optimal—about one third of maximal levels of maximal velocity (V_{mm}) and about one half of maximal force (F_{mm}). As a consequence, the maximal power (P_{mm}) equals approximately one sixth of the value that could be achieved if one were able to exert both highest force (F_{mm}) and highest velocity (V_{mm}) simultaneously: $P_{mm} = 1/3V_{mm}(1/2F_{mm}) = 1/6(V_{mm}F_{mm})$.

This is why the power level is greater when a relatively light shot is put than when a heavy barbell is lifted. For example, the power level is 5,075 W (6.9 horsepower [HP]) in putting a 7.25-kg shot 18.19 m, but only 3,163 W (4.3 HP) during the snatch of a 150-kg barbell. At the same time, the maximal applied force F_m is equal to 513 N for the shot and 2,000 N for the snatch. Though the exerted force is less in shot putting, the exerted power is greater in this case because of the much higher speed of movement.

In some sport movements, it is possible to change the magnitude of external resistance (e.g., cycling gear, area of the blade of an oar). If the final aim in this case is to develop maximal power P_{mm}, it can be achieved with a certain optimal combination of resistance (external force) and cadence (velocity).

Direction of Movement (Plyometrics, Stretch–Shortening Cycle)

Force in the yielding phases of a motion, under conditions of imposed muscle lengthening (eccentric or plyometric muscle action), can easily exceed the maximal isometric strength of an athlete by 50 to 100%. The same holds true for isolated muscles. The eccentric force for a single muscle may reach a level of up to twice the zero velocity (isometric) force.

Eccentric Muscular Action

A typical example of eccentric muscular activity can be seen in landing. The force exerted during the yielding phase of landing from a great height can substantially exceed either the takeoff or maximal isometric force. The ground reaction force is typically higher in the first half of the support period (during the yielding phase when the hip, knee, and ankle joints are flexing) than in the second half when the joints extend.

For another example, consider the grip force exerted during the lifting of a heavy barbell. The maximal isometric grip force of male weightlifters, measured with a grip dynamometer, is typically less than 1,000 N and is much lower than the force applied to the barbell. For instance, an athlete lifting a 250-kg barbell applies a maximal instantaneous force of well over 4,000 N to the weight. The force, 2,000 N per arm, is needed to accelerate the barbell. Although the maximal grip strength is only half as high as the force applied to the barbell, the athlete can sustain this great force without extending the grip.

Eccentric forces substantially increase with initial increases in joint movement velocity (and correspondingly the velocity of muscle lengthening) and then remain essentially constant with additional increases in velocity (figure 2.14). This is mainly true for qualified athletes and in multijoint motions such as the leg extension. (According to recently published data, in untrained persons, maximal voluntary torque output during eccentric knee extension or flexion is independent of movement velocity and remains at an isometric level.) If the same external force is exerted concentrically and eccentrically, fewer **muscle fibers** are activated while the muscle lengthens. Because of this, if the same force is developed, the level of electric activity of muscles (EMG) is lower in exercises with eccentric muscular action.

Because exercises with eccentric muscular action typically involve high force development, the risk of injury is high—a risk coaches should understand. Even if the eccentric force is not maximal, such exercises (e.g., downhill running) may easily induce delayed muscle soreness, especially in unprepared athletes. The cause of the muscle soreness is damaged muscle fibers. A small magnitude of the damage is considered by some experts a normal precursor to the adaptation of muscle to increased use. Conditioning muscle reduces the amount of injury.

Reversible Muscular Action

Eccentric muscular actions are as natural in human movements as are concentric actions. Many movements consist of eccentric (stretch) and concentric (shortening) phases. This stretch–shortening cycle is a common element of many sport skills and is referred to as the reversible action of muscles. Examples are the windup movement in throwing and the countermovement before the takeoff in standing jumps.

If a muscle shortens immediately after a stretch

- force and power output increases, and
- energy expenditure decreases.

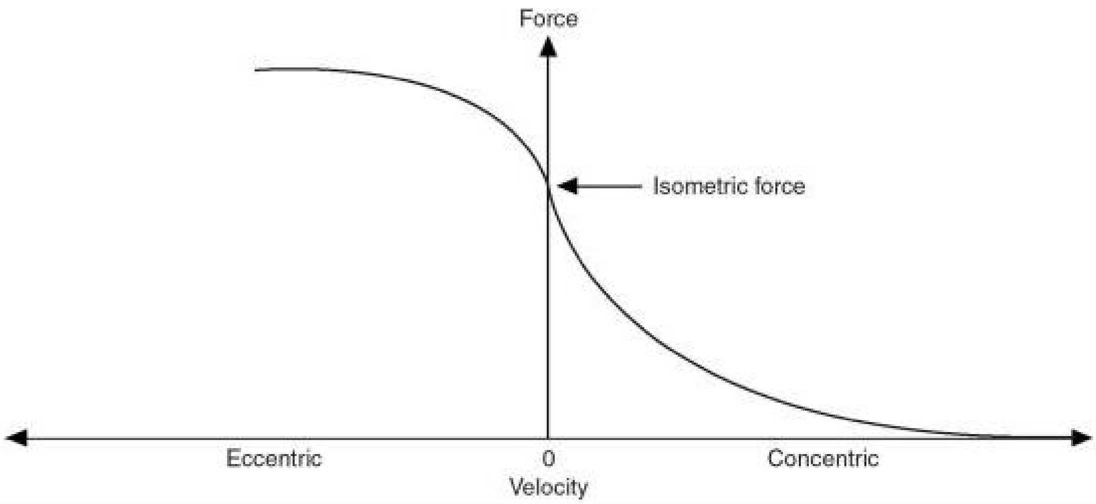


Figure 2.14 Force–velocity curve for concentric and eccentric muscular actions.

Thus, muscles can produce greater mechanical force and power while using less metabolic energy.

Reversible muscular action is an innate part of some movements, such as the landing and takeoff in running ("a spring in the leg"; figure 2.15); in other movements, such as throwing, these actions must be learned. Since many sport movements are highly complex and executed in a very brief time, even some elite athletes fail to perform this reversible muscular action correctly.

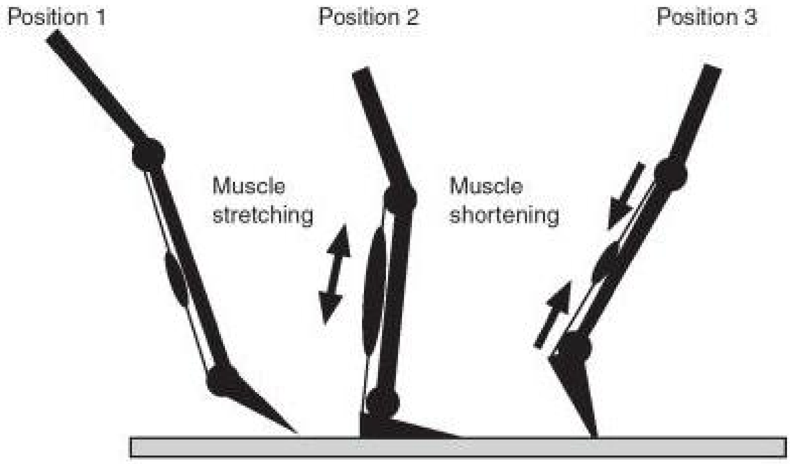


Figure 2.15 Stretch–shortening cycle during the support period in running. The plantar flexors of the foot are stretched during the first part of the support period (from position 1 to position 2) and shorten afterward, from position 2 to position 3.

Increased force is exerted in the shortening phase of a stretch–shortening cycle for four main reasons. First, at the peak of the cycle, that is, at the moment of transition from lengthening to shortening, the force is developed in isometric conditions; thus the influence of high velocity is avoided, and F_{mm} rather than F_m is exerted. Second, since the force begins to rise in the eccentric phase, the time available for force development is greater. Countermovement jumps (not drop jumps) are evidence of such an occurrence.

Apart from these two mechanisms, two other factors influence the outcome of movements with reversible muscular action: peripheral, or muscle and tendon elasticity, and central (neural), or reflex action.

• **Muscle and Tendon Elasticity** Elasticity plays a substantial role in enhancing the motor output in sport movements. If a tendon or active muscle is stretched, the elastic energy is stored within these biological structures. This deformation energy is recoiled and used to enhance motor output in the concentric phase of the stretch–shortening cycle. According to physical principles, the magnitude of the stored energy is proportional to the applied force and the induced deformation. Since muscle and tendon are arranged in series, they are subjected to the same force, and the distribution of the stored energy between them is in this case only a function of their deformation. The deformation, in turn, is a function of muscle or tendon stiffness or its inverse value, **compliance.** See figure 2.16.

The stiffness of a tendon is constant, while the stiffness of a muscle is variable and depends on the forces exerted. The passive muscle is compliant; that is, it can be easily stretched. The active muscle is stiff: One must apply great force to stretch it. The greater the muscle tension, the greater the stiffness of the muscle—the stronger the muscle resists its stretch. Superior athletes can develop high forces. The stiffness of their muscles, while active, exceeds the stiffness of their tendons (figure 2.17). That is why elastic energy in elite athletes (for instance, during takeoffs) is stored primarily in tendons rather than in muscles. Tendon elasticity and a specific skill in using this elasticity in sport movement (takeoff, delivery) are important for elite athletes. It is interesting that animals that are fast runners, such as horses, have short, strong muscles and lengthy, compliant tendons. Such tendons work as springs; they allow for storing and recoiling a large amount of mechanical energy at each step.

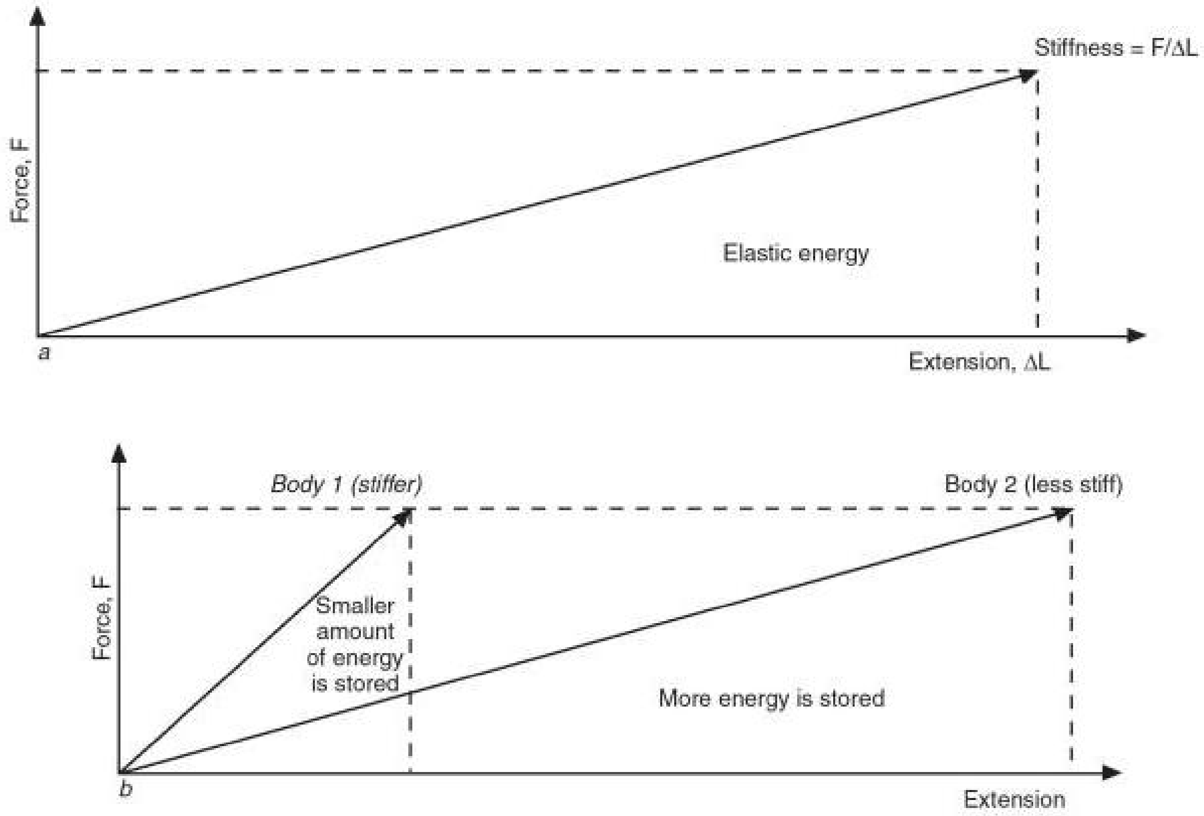


Figure 2.16 Accumulation of potential energy during deformation (extension) of elastic bodies. *(a)* The amount of the stored elastic energy equals an area of the triangle with the deformation (ΔL) and force (F) as the sides. The stiffness equals the ratio $F/\Delta L$. *(b)* Effect of equal forces on the elastic energy accumulation in two bodies of different stiffness. Body 1 is stiffer and its deformation is smaller. Body 2 is less stiff (more compliant) and it deforms more, so it stores a larger amount of elastic potential energy.

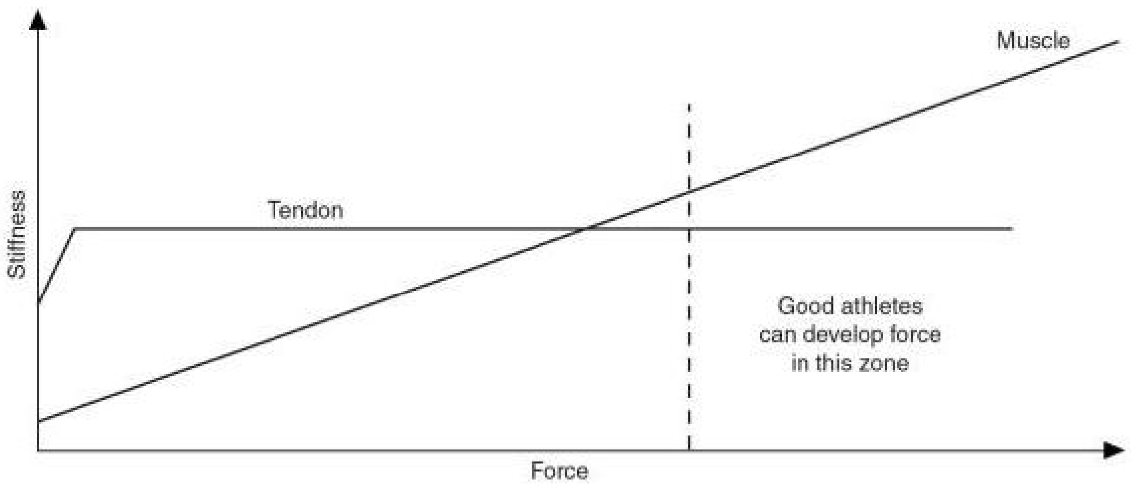


Figure 2.17 Stiffness of a muscle and a tendon at different levels of muscular force. Since elite athletes develop high forces, the stiffness of the muscle, while active, may exceed tendon stiffness. In such cases, the tendons are deformed to a greater extent than the muscles and thus store more potential energy.

• **Neural Mechanisms** Consider the neural mechanisms governing reversible muscular action during a drop jump landing. After the foot strike, there is a rapid change in both the muscle length and the forces developed. The muscles are forcibly stretched, and at the same time, muscle tension rises sharply. These changes are controlled and partially counterbalanced by the concerted action of two motor reflexes: the **myotatic,** or **stretch, reflex** and the **Golgi tendon reflex.**

These reflexes constitute two feedback systems that operate

- to keep the muscle close to a preset length (stretch reflex; length feedback) and
- to prevent unusually high and potentially damaging muscular tension (Golgi tendon reflex; force feedback).

The myotatic reflex receptors, or **muscle spindles,** are arranged parallel to the muscle fibers that constitute the bulk of the muscle. When the muscle is stretched by an external force, the muscle spindles are also subjected to stretching. The stretching induces an increase in muscle spindle discharge. The latter causes an increased discharge of alpha-**motoneurons** and in turn a reflex contraction of the stretched muscle. This reflex contraction causes the muscle to return to its initial length in spite of the load applied to the muscle (length feedback).

Golgi tendon organs are arranged in series with the muscle fibers. These receptors are sensitive to forces developed in the muscle rather than to length changes as is the case with muscle spindles. If muscle tension increases sharply, the Golgi tendon reflex evokes the inhibition of muscle action. The ensuing drop in muscle tension prevents the muscle and tendon from incurring damage (force feedback).

The **efferent** discharge to the muscle during the stretching phase of a stretch–shortening cycle is modified by the combined effects of the two reflexes mentioned

Muscles and Tendons As Springs in Series

To visualize a stretch–shortening cycle, imagine two springs connected in series. The first spring (tendon) possesses given characteristics (stiffness, compliance) that do not change during motion. The characteristics of the second spring (muscle) vary and depend on the level of muscle activation.

When the muscle is relaxed, it is very compliant. If an external force is applied to such a muscle–tendon complex, the muscle can easily be stretched. The resistance to deformation is small, and only the muscle, not the tendon, is extended. However, if the muscle is activated, its resistance to the external pulling force increases. In this instance, the tendon rather than the muscle is deformed when a tensile force is applied.

The level of muscle activation is not constant, however, even when an athlete is trying to generate a maximal muscular effort. In addition to voluntary control, the muscles are under subconscious reflex control that is presumably realized on the spinal level. At least two reflexes are acting concurrently. One (stretch) reflex takes charge of maintaining the set muscle length—if the muscle is extended, it is additionally activated to resist the deformation force and to restore the original length. The second (Golgi organ) reflex prevents the muscle from injury due to excessive force—when the muscle tension or its rate is too high, the neural impulsation to the muscle from the spinal cord is inhibited.

The real intensity of muscle activation is a tradeoff between the two reflexes (plus volitional muscle activation). The intensity of each reflex, which is not constant, determines the final outcome. When athletes are accustomed to sharp, forcible muscle–tendon stretching, for instance in drop jumps, the Golgi organ reflex is inhibited and high forces can be generated. The objective of drop-jumping drills is, in this case, to accommodate the athletes to fast muscle stretching rather than to immediately generate large forces.

earlier: the positive (excitatory) effect from the myotatic reflex and the negative (inhibitory) effect from the Golgi tendon reflex. During landing, a stretch applied to a leg **extensor** produces (via myotatic reflex) a contraction in that muscle; simultaneously, a high muscle tension sets up a Golgi tendon reflex in the same muscle, thus inhibiting its activity (figure 2.18). If athletes, even strong ones, are not accustomed to such exercises, the activity of the extensor muscles during takeoff is inhibited by the Golgi tendon reflex. Because of this, even world-class weightlifters cannot compete with triple jumpers in drop jumping. As a result of specific training, the Golgi tendon reflex is inhibited and the athlete sustains very high landing forces without a decrease in exerted muscular force. The dropping height may then be increased.

Since reversible muscular action is an element of many sport movements, it must be specifically learned or trained. Before 1960 such training was accidental, and improvement in this skill was a by-product of other exercises. Only since that time have exercises with reversible muscular action, such as drop jumps, been incorporated into training. Note that this training method has been erroneously called plyometrics by some. The term is not appropriate in this case, since reversible, not eccentric, muscular action is the training objective.

In beginners, performance in exercises with reversible muscular action can be improved through other exercises such as heavy weightlifting. In qualified athletes, this skill is very specific. Performances in drop jumps, for example, are not improved as a result of the

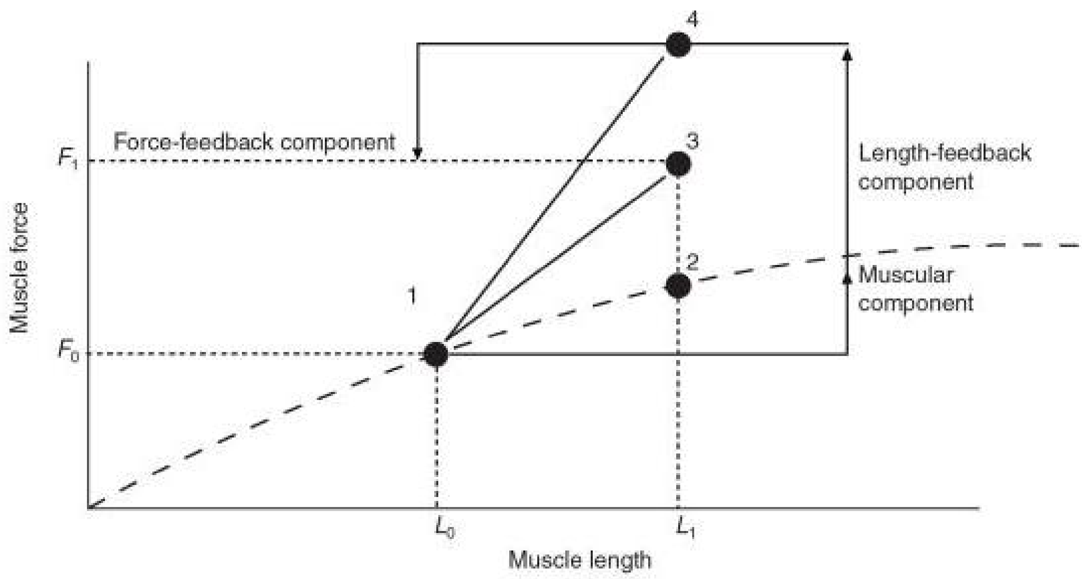


Figure 2.18 Neural mechanisms of enhanced force output in the stretch–shortening cycle. As a result of stretch from L_0 to L_1, the muscular force increases from F_0 to F_1. Three functional components responsible for the strength enhancement are shown. (1) The muscular component—the force during lengthening increases due to muscle and tendon elasticity (stiffness). (2) The force output increases due to the length-feedback component—the component arises from the facilitatory spindle discharge (myotatic reflex). (3) The force-feedback component originating from the Golgi tendon organs. The length-feedback component increases muscle stiffness (resistance to the lengthening) whereas the force-feedback component decreases it. The final outcome is the line from 1 to 3. The slope of this line defines the stiffness. The theory was originally developed by J.C. Houk and published in "Feedback Control of Muscle: A Synthesis of the Peripheral Mechanisms" 1974, in W.B. Mointcastle (ed.) *Medical Physiology*, 13th ed. (pp. 668-677), St. Louis: Mosby.

Adapted, by permission, from P.V. Komi, 1986, "Training of muscle strength and power: Interaction of neuromotoric, hypertrophic and mechanical factors," *International Journal of Sport Medicine* 7(Suppl): 10.

usual strength exercising, even with heavy weights (figure 2.19). Maximal muscular strength (F_{mm}) and forces produced in fast reversible muscular action (F_m) are not correlated in good athletes and should be treated, and trained, as separate motor abilities.

Posture, Strength Curves

The strength that an athlete can generate in a given motion depends on body posture (joint angles). For instance, the maximal force that one can exert on a barbell depends on the height of the bar (figure 2.20). The maximal force F_{mm} is exerted when the bar is slightly above the knee height. The plot of the external force exerted by an athlete (or the moment of force) versus an appropriate measure of the body position (i.e., joint angle) is a **strength curve.**

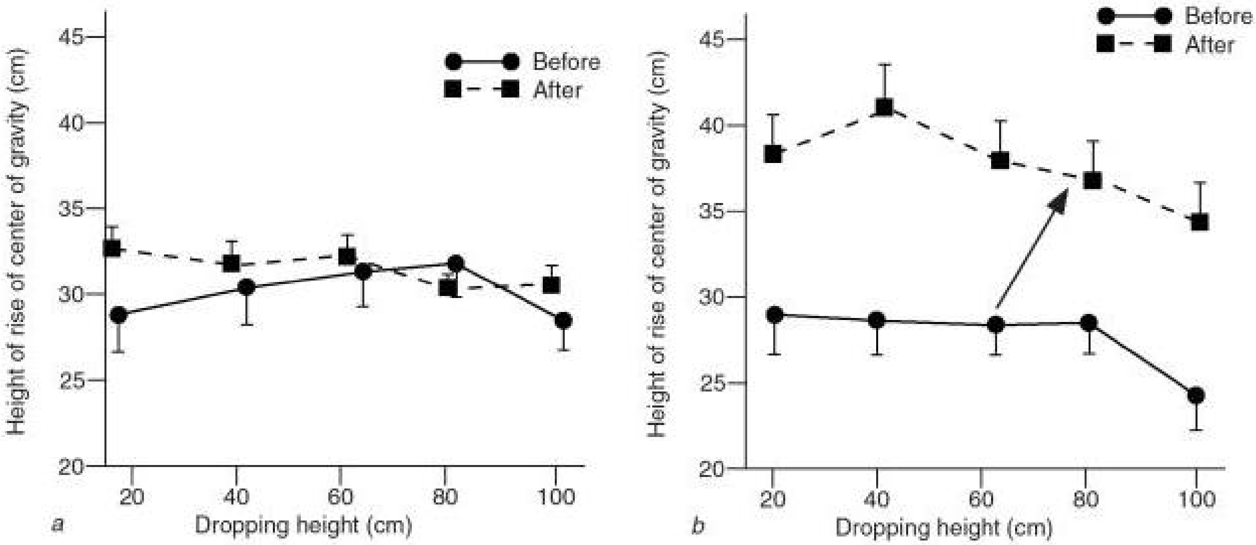


Figure 2.19 Changes in drop-jump performances by experienced athletes after 24 weeks of training with *(a)* heavy weights and *(b)* specific jumping training. *(a)* Heavy resistance (70-100 of F_m) training (n = 11). *(b)* Explosive (power) strength training (n = 10).

Reprinted, by permission, from K. Håkkinen and P.V. Komi, 1985, "Training of muscle strength and power: Interaction of Neuromotoris, hypertropic and mechanical factors" *International Journal of Sport Medicine* 7: 65-75. By permission of authors.

Why Do Elite Weightlifters Start a Barbell Lift From the Floor Slowly?

A good weightlifter imparts the greatest effort to a barbell, trying to accelerate it maximally, when the bar is approximately at knee-joint height. There are two reasons for this. First, at this position the highest forces can be generated (figure 2.20). Second (see discussion on velocity, page 29), the force decreases when the movement velocity increases (parametric force–velocity relation). The barbell must approach the most favored body position for force generation at a relatively low velocity to impart maximal force to the bar. This two-phase technique is used by all elite weightlifters except in the lightweight categories. These athletes are short (below 150 cm), and the bar is located at knee-joint level in the starting position before the lift.

This is an example of how two extrinsic factors of force generation (force posture and force velocity) are combined to develop maximal force values.

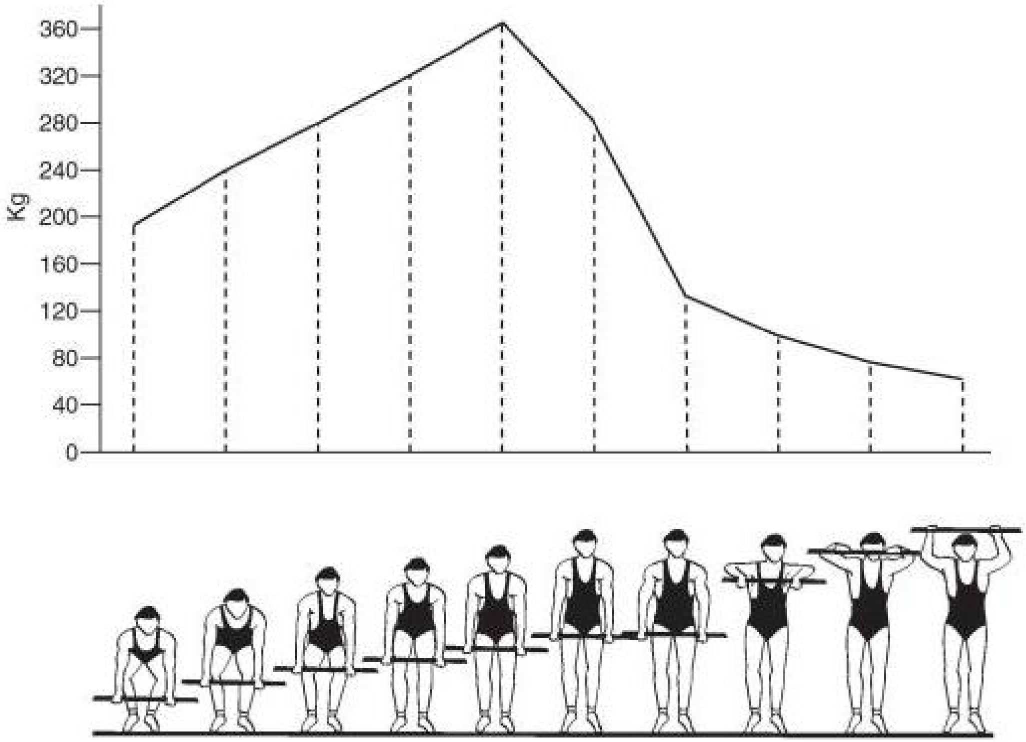


Figure 2.20 The maximal isometric force F_m applied to a bar at different body positions (at different heights of the bar). This is an example of the strength curve in a multijoint movement.

Adapted, by permission, from D.D. Donskoy and V.M. Zatsiorsky, 1979, "*Biomechanics* (Moscow, Russia: Fizkulturi i Sport), 203.

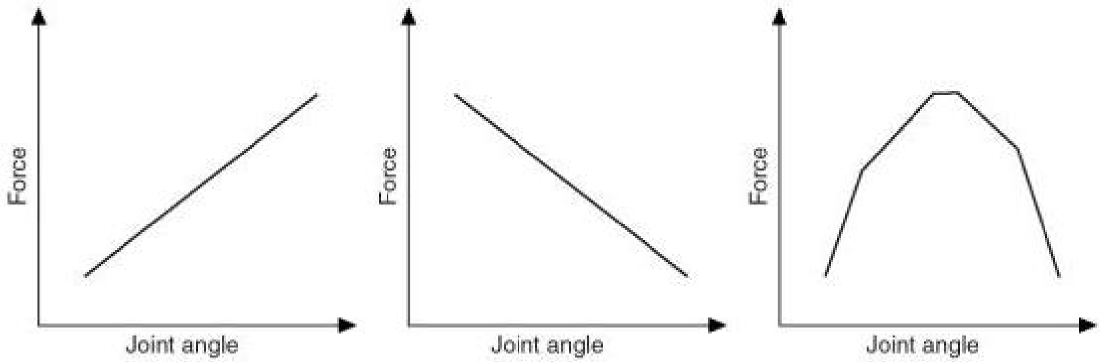


Figure 2.21 Three main forms of joint strength curves.

Adapted, by permission, from J.G. Hay and P.V. Komi, 1992, Mechanical basis of strength expression. In *Strength and power in sport*, edited by P.V. Komi (Oxford, Germany: Blackwell Scientific Publications), 197-207. Copyright 1992 by the International Olympic Committee. Adapted by permission from Blackwell Scientific Publications.

In single joints, the joint strength curves assume three general forms: ascending, descending, and concave (figure 2.21). Examples are provided in figure 2.22. Note the large difference in force produced at different joint positions.

For each movement, there are angular positions at which the maximal values of the F_m (F_{mm}) can be reached. During elbow flexion, the F_{mm} is generated at an angle of 90° (figure 2.22*a*); for elbow extension the F_{mm} values are obtained at an angle of 120°, the F_{mm} in

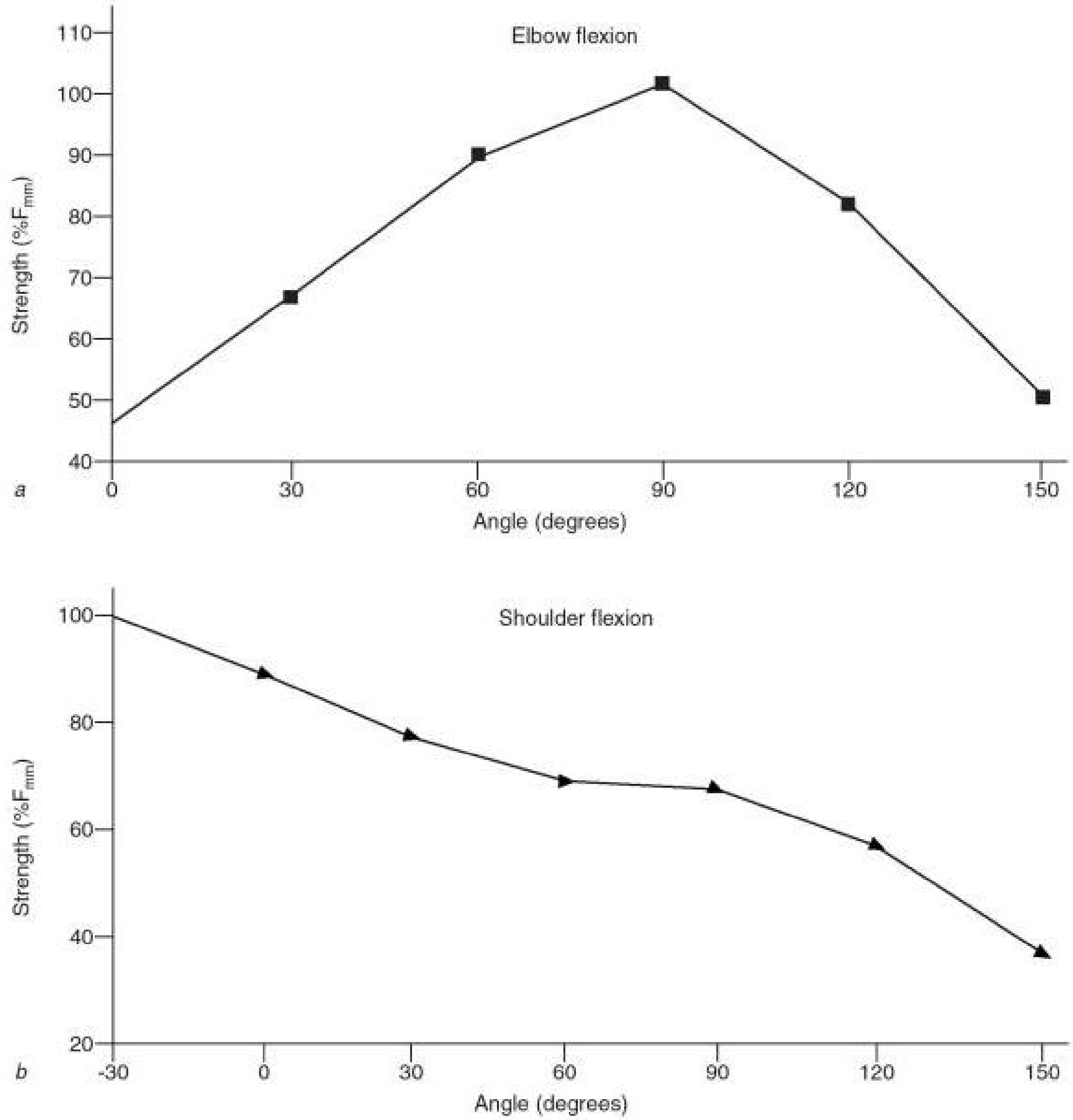


Figure 2.22 Relations between joint angles and isometric force in elbow flexion *(a)* and shoulder flexion *(b)*. The angles were defined from the anatomical position. Based on average data of 24 athletes. The elbow flexion force was measured with the forearm in a supinated position. The shoulder flexion measurements were made with subjects in a supine posture. The forearm was in a midrange position (between supinated and pronated). At –30°, the arm was positioned behind the trunk.

From V.M. Zatsiorsky and L.M. Raitsin, 1973, *Force-posture relations in athletic movements* (Moscow, Russia: Russian State Academy of Physical Education and Sport). Technical Report. By permission of Russian State Academy of Physical Education and Sport.

shoulder flexion is exerted when the arm is slightly behind the trunk (figure 2.22*b*), and so on. Strength values at the weakest positions, or the so-called **sticking points,** are also very important. The heaviest weight that is lifted through a full range of joint motion cannot be greater than the strength at the weakest point.

Biomechanically, the F_{mm} is a function of muscular forces, or tensions, that undergo two transformations. The muscular forces transform into joint moments and the joint moments transform into external force: Muscle–tendon forces → Joint moments → Strength (F_{mm}, end-point force). We consider these transformations in sequence.

Muscular Force at Different Body Positions

Muscle tension depends on muscle length. When a joint angle changes, the muscle length, or the distance from muscle origin to insertion, also changes. In turn, the change of the muscle length results in the change of muscle tension. This happens for two reasons. First, the area of overlapping actin and myosin filaments is changed, thus modifying the number of cross-bridge attachments that can be established (see chapter 3). Second, the contribution of elastic forces, especially from parallel elastic components, is changed. Because of the interplay of these two factors, the relation between the instantaneous muscle length and force production is complex. We can, however, disregard such complexity and accept as a general rule that with a few exceptions (for example, the rectus femoris muscle in some bicyclists), muscles exert smaller tension at smaller lengths. In contrast, higher forces are exerted by stretched muscles.

When a joint approaches the limits of its range of motion, the passive elastic forces increase. For instance, during the arm cocking in pitching, the external rotation of the shoulder approaches 180° (figure 2.23). At this angular position, the muscles and other soft anatomical tissues of the shoulder are deformed. Resisting the deformation, the tissues contribute to the joint torques that reach maximal values.

The length of a two-joint muscle depends on the angular positions at both joints that the muscle crosses. In such joints, the F_{mm} values depend not only on the angular position at the joint being tested but also on the angular position of the second joint. For instance, the contribution of the gastrocnemius, which is a two-joint muscle, to plantar-flexion torque at the ankle joint is reduced as the knee is flexed and, consequently, the gastrocnemius is shortened. When the knee is maximally flexed and the ankle is plantarflexed, the gastrocnemius muscle is unable to produce active force. This leg position can be used for selective training of the soleus muscle.

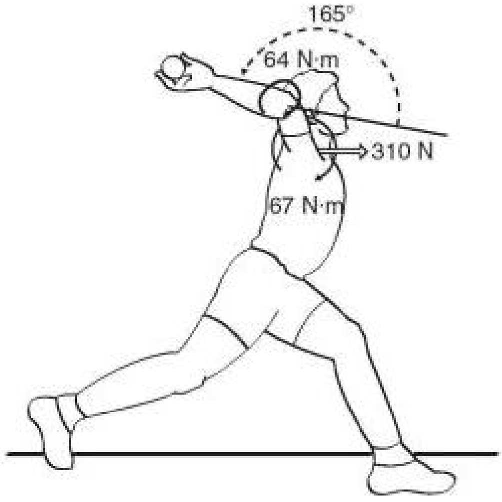


Figure 2.23 Forces in pitching. In this instance, the highest forces are observed.

MOCK Reprinted, by permission, from G.S. Fleisig et al., 1995, "Kinetics of baseball pitching with implications about injury mechanism," *American Journal of Sports Medicine* 23(7): 223-239.

The length–tension curves are usually recorded for isometric contraction at discrete joint positions or at discrete muscle lengths. The curves do not represent precisely the force exerted during muscle stretching or shortening. During a stretch, the tension is larger. During shortening, the tension is smaller than the tension exerted in static conditions.

Transformation of Muscular Forces Into Joint Moments

Any force tends to rotate the body about any axis that does not intersect the line of force action. The turning effect of the force is called the moment of force, or **torque.** The moment of a force F equals the product of the magnitude of F and the shortest distance, d, from the center of rotation to the line of force action, $M = Fd$. The distance d is called a **moment arm.** When a muscle exerts tension, the muscle tension generates a rotational effect at the joint. A joint moment produced by a muscle equals the following product:

$$\text{Joint moment} = \text{Muscle tension} \cdot \text{Muscle moment arm}.$$

When a joint angle varies, the moment arm of a muscle spanning the joint changes. For instance, fourfold difference has been measured in the moment arm of the biceps brachii (long head) in assorted elbow angle positions; the force arm was 11.5 mm at the 180° angle (full extension) and 45.5 mm at the 90° angle of elbow flexion. Thus, if muscle tension were identical in each case, the moment of force developed by the muscle in elbow flexion would change fourfold. The external force (strength) would also be four times higher.

In summary, when a joint angle varies, the externally registered force (strength) changes due to two reasons: (1) The muscles produce different tension and (2) the muscular forces act through different moment arms (figure 2.24).

Many muscles produce moments about more than one joint axis. These muscles have several functions. For instance, the biceps both flexes and supinates the forearm at the elbow joint. Let's briefly discuss two effects of such an anatomical arrangement that are important for practitioners.

First, muscles produce moments of force not only in the desired direction (primary moments) but also in other directions (secondary moments). To counterbalance the secondary moments, which are not necessary for the intended purpose, additional muscles are activated. The number of active muscles increases but the strength may decrease. Consider, for example, a forceful arm supination with the elbow flexed at a right angle, as in driving a screw with a screwdriver. During the supination effort, the triceps, even though it is not a supinator, is also active. A simple demonstration proves this: Perform a forceful supination against a resistance while placing the second hand on the biceps and triceps of the working arm. Both the biceps and the triceps spring into action simultaneously. The explanation is simple. When the biceps acts as a supinator, it also produces a flexion moment (secondary moment). The flexion moment is counterbalanced by the extension moment exerted by the triceps.

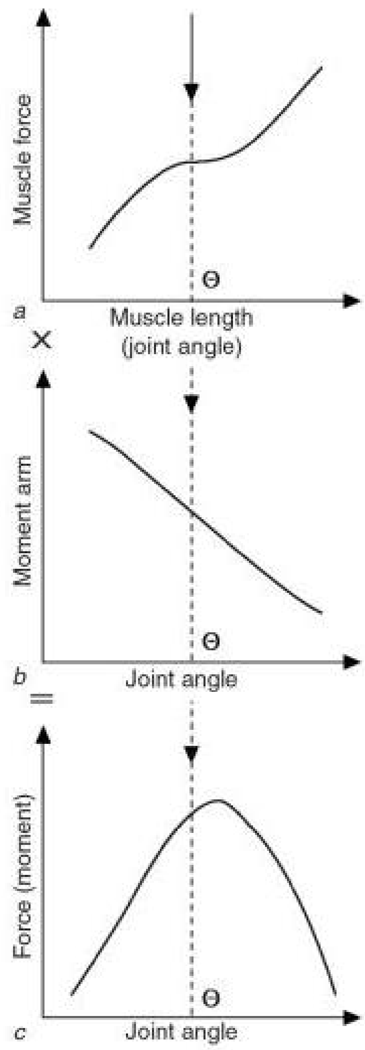


Figure 2.24 External muscular torque (strength) registered at any joint angle is the product of muscle tension and moment arm at this joint configuration. The downward arrows and the dotted lines indicate a certain joint angle. *(c)* The entire joint strength curve is a result of multiplication of *(a)* the muscle tension–angle curve *(a)* and *(b)* the moment arm–angle curve.

Performing Chin-Ups: Overhand Grip Versus Underhand Grip

With the arm pronated, the biceps cannot generate its maximal tension because of the possible supination effect. Therefore, when performing elbow flexion, pronation of the forearm decreases the strength of the elbow curl. Because of this anatomical fact, it is simpler to perform chin-ups on a high bar using an underhand grasp than an overhand grasp.

Second, athletes tend to perform forceful movements in a way that minimizes secondary moments. For instance, during pull-ups performed on gymnastics rings, the performers always supinate the arms while flexing the elbow joints. Nobody teaches them to do so; the movement pattern is simply more convenient for the performers.

From Joint Moments to Muscular Strength (End-point Force)

In a single-joint task, the strength (the force exerted at the end effector) equals the ratio of the joint moment to the moment arm of the external force. Therefore, the closer the external force to the joint, or, in other words, the smaller the moment arm of the force, the larger the external force that the same joint moment would generate.

In multilink chains the transformation of joint moments into the end-point force is much more complex. Fortunately, one important case is simple: The highest forces in leg or arm extension can be exerted when the extremity is almost completely extended (figures 2.25 and 2.26). At this leg or arm position the line of force action is close to the

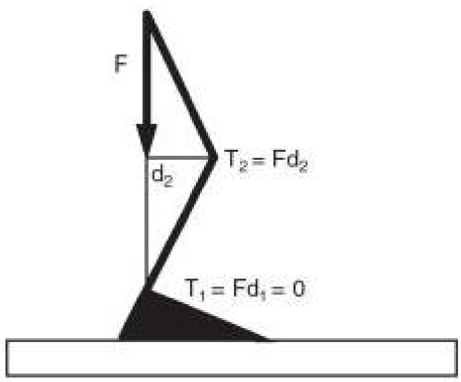


Figure 2.25 The closer the leg is to full extension, the smaller the moment arm *(d_2)* of the load force is with respect to the knee joint and, hence, the smaller the knee joint moment *(T_2)* required to bear the force *F ($T_2 = Fd_2$)*. This explains why the heaviest loads can be borne when the legs are almost completely extended. When the line of force action passes through the joint center, the joint moment is 0. In the figure shown, this happens at the ankle joint. When the leg or arm is nearly outstretched, large external forces can be exerted with low joint moments.

Reprinted, by permission, from V.M. Zatsiorsky, 1992, *Kinetics of human motion* (Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics), 140.

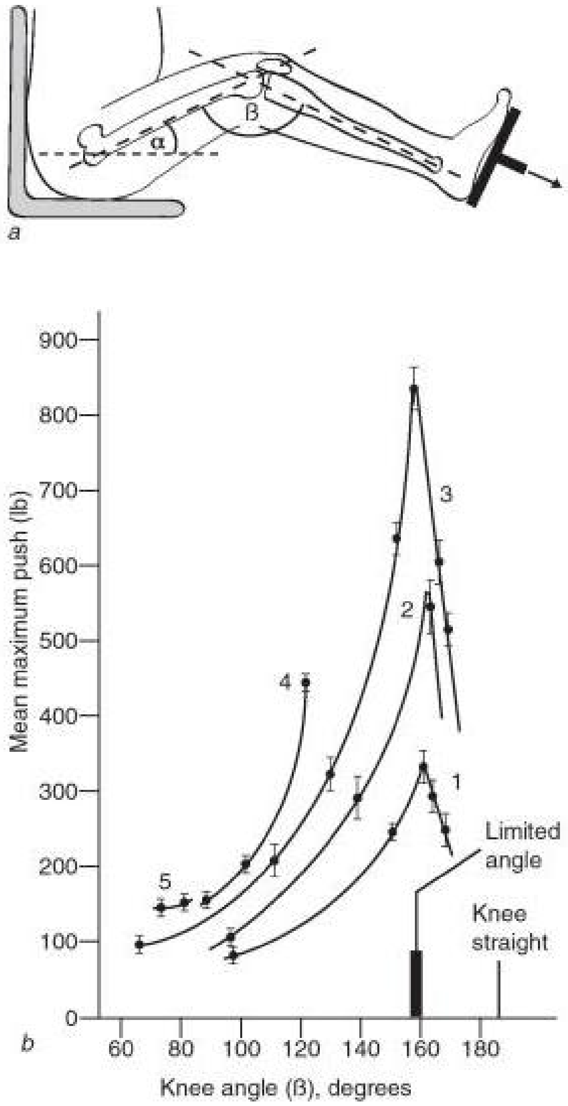


Figure 2.26 Dependence of the pushing force on limb position in seated subjects. *(a)* Experimental setup. *(b)* The mean maximum push (± 2 standard deviations) exerted isometrically by six subjects on a pedal placed in different positions. For each of the five different angles of thigh to the horizontal (α), the knee angle (β) varied. Curve 1 represents the data for angle α between −15° and −6°; curve 2 for α between +5° and +10°; curve 3, 15-19°; curve 4, 33-36°; and curve 5 corresponds to the thigh angle α = 48 to 49°. Curves 4 and 5 necessarily stop as shown, well before the limiting angle is reached. At these thigh positions, the knee cannot be extended further due to the limitation provided by the hamstring. Note the ninefold difference between the force magnitudes at different body postures.

Adapted, by permission, from P. Hugh-Jones, 1947, "The effect of limb position in seated subjects on their ability to utilize the maximum contractile force of the limb muscles," *Journal of Physiology* 105: 332-344.

knee or elbow joint and hence the moment arm of the force is small. When the leg or arm is completely extended, the force acts along the extremity, and moment arm of the force is close to 0. As a result, at this joint configuration people can sustain extremely large forces.

In a nutshell, selection of proper body position affects the maximal values of the external force that athletes can produce.

SUMMARY

An athlete can perform a given motor task, such as throwing, lifting, or jumping, with different levels of effort. When effort is maximal, the athlete attains a maximal muscular performance for the given task. Each motor task is characterized by certain variables called parameters—such as resistance, angle of slope in uphill running, or weight of an implement—and the magnitudes of these parameters.

If the parameters of a motor task are changed systematically, the parametric relation between the dependent variables of maximal muscular performance can be established. The parametric relation between the maximal force (F_m) and maximal velocity (V_m) is negative: The higher the force, the lower the velocity. The highest maximal force (F_{mm}) is called the maximum maximorum force. The dependence between F_{mm} values and the maximal velocity (V_m) at a given parameter proportion is the nonparametric relation, a correlation that is typically positive (i.e., the higher the force, the greater the velocity). The magnitude of the correlation depends on the parameter values: The greater the resistance, the higher the coefficient of the correlation.

Muscular strength is the ability to produce maximum maximorum external force F_{mm}. It can be generated and measured only at certain parameter values of a motor task, such as muscular force exerted on a heavy implement. When athletes attempt to produce maximal force, the generated force values depend on the motor task. Even when the "geometry" of a motion (e.g., involved body limbs, movement trajectory) is fixed, the resulting force varies.

Several factors determine the force values across motor tasks. These factors are classified as extrinsic (external) and intrinsic (internal). The force exerted by an athlete on an external body depends not only on the athlete but also on external factors, in particular the type of resistance (such as elasticity, inertia, gravity force, and hydrodynamic force).

The type of resistance influences the pattern of the force produced. Imagine that the same arm motion (e.g., in a lateral–medial direction) is performed against different resistance: first, springs, and then, viscosity (the arm moves in tough dough). In the first instance, the resistance increases in proportion to the movement amplitude; in the second, resistance is proportional to the movement velocity. Often the resistance provided by a strength exercise apparatus does not resemble the type of resistance found in natural sport movements. This is detrimental to the efficiency of strength training.

Several intrinsic characteristics of motor tasks are important for producing maximal force. Time available for force development is a crucial factor in many sport events. The time required to produce maximal force is typically longer than the time available for the manifestation of strength in real sport movements. Thus the rate of force development, rather than the force itself, is the crucial factor in a successful athletic performance. The relative contributions of the maximal force and the rate of force development depend on the level of athletic performance. The higher the performance, the shorter the time available for force production and thus the greater the importance of the rate of force development. The ability to produce maximal forces in minimal time is called explosive strength. Strong people do not necessarily possess explosive strength.

Movement velocity influences the magnitude of the force that can be produced; the higher the velocity, the smaller the force (parametric relation). Thus the lower the movement velocity and, consequently, the greater the force values produced during the natural athletic movement, the greater the contribution of F_{mm} (and also of heavy resistance training) toward athletic performance.

Direction of movement (i.e., whether the muscle is shortening or lengthening during a motion) is a matter of primary importance. The highest forces are generated during eccentric muscular action as well as during reversible muscular action, when the muscle is forcibly stretched and then permitted to shorten. Such a stretch–shortening cycle is an innate part of many athletic movements. The magnitude of the force produced during the stretch–shortening muscular action, as well as the magnitude of the stored and recoiled potential energy of deformation, depends on both the elastic properties of muscles and tendons and the neural control of muscle activity. The interplay of two spinal reflexes (stretch reflex and Golgi organ reflex) is considered to be a major factor toward determining neural inflow to the muscle during the stretch–shortening cycle.

Furthermore, the magnitude of the manifested muscular force depends largely on body posture. For one-joint motions, joint strength curves (i.e., the force–angle relations) are affected by changes in muscle–tendon forces and changes in the moment arms of these forces. In multijoint body movements, the strongest as well as the weakest (sticking) points exist throughout the whole range of motion at which maximal (minimal) force values are manifested.

chapter 3

Athlete-Specific Strength

In the previous chapter we looked at how strength depends on various factors specific to the tasks within a given sport or activity. We turn now to the factors that affect maximal forces produced by individual athletes, and how they may vary from person to person, that is, the determining factors in a comparison across athletes. We conclude the chapter and examination of the determinants of strength with a taxonomy to help you consolidate and sort what you have learned in chapters 2 and 3.

Individual athletes generate different maximal forces when they perform similar motions. These variations stem mainly from two factors:

- The maximal force capabilities of individual muscles, or **peripheral factors.**
- The coordination of muscle activity by the central nervous system, or **central factors.** Two aspects of neural coordination are discernible: intramuscular coordination and intermuscular coordination.

This is not a book on physiology, so we will look only briefly at these factors to clarify what is most relevant to strength training.

MUSCLE FORCE POTENTIAL (PERIPHERAL) FACTORS

Among the peripheral factors affecting muscle force potential, muscle dimensions seem to be the most important. Muscle mass and dimensions are affected by training, of course, and by other factors, including nutrition and hormonal status.

Muscle Dimensions

It is well known that muscles with a large physiological **cross-sectional area** produce higher forces than similar muscles with a smaller cross section. This is true regardless of muscle length. With heavy resistance training in which the muscle cross section is increased, there is typically an accompanying increase in maximal strength.

Skeletal muscle consists of numerous fibers, or long, cylindrical muscle cells. Each fiber is made up of many parallel **myofibrils,** which consist of longitudinally repeated units called **sarcomeres.** Sarcomeres in turn include thin **filaments** consisting largely of the protein **actin** and thick filaments of the protein **myosin.** The actin and myosin filaments partially overlap. Myosin filaments have small outward helical projections called cross bridges. These cross bridges end with myosin heads that make contact, known as **cross-bridge attachments** or links, with the thin filaments during contraction. According to the sliding-filament theory, shortening of the sarcomere, and hence the muscle fiber, occurs as a result of the active relative sliding of the actin filaments between the myosin filaments.

The force produced by a muscle is the outcome of activity of muscle subunits (sarcomeres, myofibrils, muscle fibers). The maximal force produced by a sarcomere depends to some extent on the total number of myosin heads available for the cross-bridge links with actin filaments. The total number of cross-bridge links in a given sarcomere is apparently the product of

- the number of actin and myosin filaments, or the cross-sectional area of all the filaments, and
- the number of myosin heads that can interact with actin filaments, or the sarcomere length.

Muscles with long sarcomeres (longer actin and myosin filaments) exert greater force per unit of cross-sectional area because of the greater extent of possible overlap.

All the sarcomeres of one myofibril work in series. The force exerted by, or on, any element of a linear series (i.e., by any sarcomere in the myofibril) is equal to the force developed in each of the other elements in the series. Therefore, all sarcomeres of the myofibril exert the same force, and the force registered at the ends of the myofibril does not depend on its length.

The force produced by a muscle fiber is limited by the number of actin and myosin filaments and consequently by the number of myofibrils working in parallel. The differences in parallel and serial action of sarcomeres are listed in figure 3.1 for the example of two fibers consisting of two sarcomeres each. To estimate the muscle potential in force production, instead of calculating the number of filaments, researchers determine their total cross-sectional area. The ratio of the filament area to the muscle fiber area is called **filament area density.**

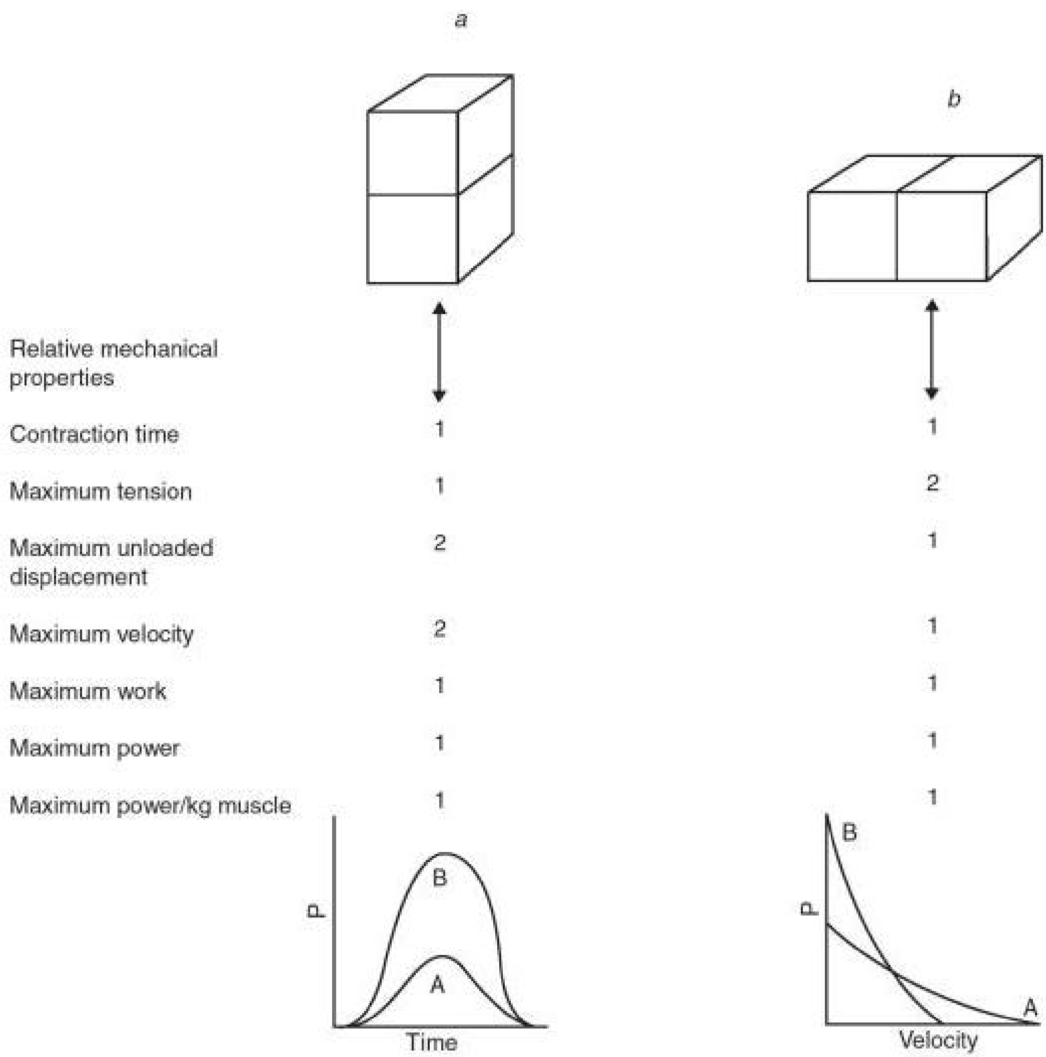


Figure 3.1 The relative effects of different arrangements of sarcomeres, *(a)* in series and *(b)* in parallel, on the mechanical properties of a muscle fiber. In addition, the relative isometric and isotonic properties are illustrated at the bottom of the figure.

Reprinted, by permission, from W.R. Edgerton et al., 1986, Morphological basis of skeletal muscle power output. In *Human Muscle Power*, edited by N.L. Jones, N. McCartney, and A.J. McComas (Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics), 44.

Strength exercise can increase the number of filaments per myofibril, myofibrils per muscle fiber, and filament area density; thus there is a rise in both muscle cell size and strength. We know little about the influence of strength training on sarcomere length.

The capacity of a muscle to produce force depends on its physiological cross-sectional area, particularly the number of muscle fibers in the muscle and the cross-sectional areas of the fibers.

It is commonly known that the size of a muscle increases when it is subjected to a strength training regimen. This increase is called **hypertrophy** and is typically displayed by bodybuilders. Whole-muscle hypertrophy is caused by

- an increased number of motor fibers (fiber **hyperplasia**), or
- the enlargement of cross-sectional areas of individual fibers (fiber hypertrophy).

Recent investigations have found that both hyperplasia and hypertrophy contribute to muscle size increase. However, the contribution of fiber hyperplasia is rather small (< 5%) and may be disregarded for practical purposes of strength training. Muscle size increases are caused mainly by individual fiber size increases, not by the gain in fibers (through fiber splitting). People with large numbers of fibers have greater potential as weightlifters or bodybuilders than do people with smaller numbers of fibers in their muscles. The size of individual fibers, and consequently the size of the muscles, increases as a result of training. The number of fibers is not changed substantially.

Two extreme types of muscle fiber hypertrophy can be schematically depicted: sarcoplasmic and myofibrillar hypertrophy (figure 3.2).

Sarcoplasmic hypertrophy of muscle fibers is characterized by the growth of sarcoplasm (semifluid interfibrillar substance) and noncontractile proteins that do not directly contribute to the production of muscle force. Specifically, filament area density in the muscle fibers decreases, while the cross-sectional area of the muscle fibers increases, without an accompanying increase in muscle strength.

Myofibrillar hypertrophy is an enlargement of the muscle fiber as it gains more myofibrils and, correspondingly, more actin and myosin filaments. The synthesis of actin and myosin proteins in a muscle cell is controlled by the genes in the cell nucleus. Strength exercises can prompt the genes to send chemical messengers to enzymes outside the nucleus, stimulating them to build actin and myosin proteins (contractile proteins). Contractile proteins are synthesized, the proteins link up to form new filaments, and filament density increases. This type of fiber hypertrophy leads to increased muscle force production.

Heavy resistance exercises lead to a mix of sarcoplasmic and myofibrillar hypertrophy of muscle fibers. Depending on the training routine, these types of fiber hypertrophy are manifested in varying degrees (it seems that pure sarcoplasmic or myofibrillar hypertrophy never occurs). Mostly myofibrillar hypertrophy is found in elite weightlifters (if the training program is designed properly), whereas sarcoplasmic hypertrophy is typically seen in bodybuilders. Except for very special cases in which the aim of heavy resistance training is to achieve body weight gains, athletes are interested in inducing myofibrillar hypertrophy. Training must be organized to stimulate the synthesis of contractile proteins and to increase filament muscle density.

A common belief in strength training is that exercise activates protein **catabolism** (breakdown of muscle proteins), creating conditions for the enhanced synthesis of contractile proteins during the rest period (breakdown and buildup theory). During strength exercises, muscle proteins are forcefully converted into more simple substances (broken down); during restitution **(anabolism),** the synthesis

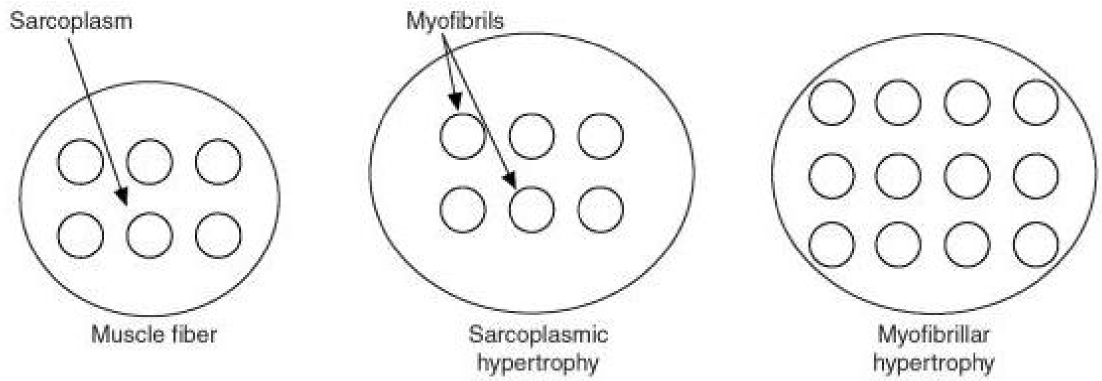


Figure 3.2 Sarcoplasmic and myofibrillar hypertrophy.

of muscle proteins is vitalized. Fiber hypertrophy is considered to be a supercompensation of muscle proteins.

The mechanisms involved in muscle protein synthesis, including the initial stimuli triggering the increased synthesis of contractile proteins, have not been well established at this time. It is obvious that older theories will have to be reworked into newer concepts as more direct evidence accumulates that sheds new light into their efficacy or further alienates them from the facts. A few hypotheses that were popular among coaches 30 to 40 years ago are now completely disregarded, including the following:

- The blood overcirculation hypothesis suggests that increased blood circulation in working muscles is the triggering stimulus for muscle growth. One of the most popular methods of bodybuilding training, called *flushing* (see chapter 8), is based on this assumption. It has been shown, however, that active muscle hyperemization (i.e., the increase in the quantity of blood flowing through a muscle) caused by physical therapeutical means does not, in itself, lead to the activation of protein synthesis. While blood flow to the exercising muscle is important for delivery of essential nutrients and hormones, its effects are related to the activation of maximal number of the motor units in the muscle.
- The muscle hypoxia hypothesis, in contrast to the blood overcirculation theory, stipulates that a deficiency, not an abundance, of blood and oxygen in muscle tissue during strength exercise triggers protein synthesis. Muscle arterioles and capillaries are compressed during resistive exercise and the blood supply to an active muscle is restricted. Blood is not conveyed to muscle tissue if the tension exceeds approximately 60% of maximal muscle force.

However, by inducing a hypoxic state in muscles in different ways, researchers have shown that oxygen shortage does not stimulate an increase in muscle size. Professional pearl divers, synchronized swimmers, and others who regularly perform low-intensity movements in oxygen-deficient conditions do not have hypertrophied muscles. Tissue hypoxia directly increases the amount of free radical formation and local tissue damage and studies have shown that resistance training can reduce this effect. Thus, hypoxia for the most part is detrimental to optimal recovery and repair patterns in muscle.

- The adenosine triphosphate (ATP) debt theory is based on the assumption that ATP concentration is decreased after heavy resistive exercise (about 15 repetitions in 20 s per set were recommended for training). However, recent findings indicate that, even in a completely exhausted muscle, the ATP level is not changed.

A fourth theory, although it has not been validated in detail, appears more realistic and appropriate for practical training—the **energetic theory of muscle hypertrophy.** According to this hypothesis, the crucial factor for increasing protein catabolism is a shortage in the muscle cell of energy available for protein synthesis during heavy strength exercise. The synthesis of muscle proteins requires a substantial amount of energy. The synthesis of one peptide bond, for instance, requires energy liberated during the hydrolysis of two ATP molecules. For each instant in time, only a given amount of energy is available in a muscle cell. This energy is spent for the anabolism of muscle proteins and for muscular work. Normally, the amount of energy available in a muscle cell satisfies these two requirements. During heavy resistive exercise, however, almost all available energy is conveyed to the contractile muscle elements and spent on muscular work (figure 3.3).

Since the energy supply for the synthesis of proteins decreases, protein degradation increases. The uptake of amino acids from the blood into muscles is depressed during exercise. The mass of proteins catabolized during heavy resistive exercise exceeds the mass of protein that is newly synthesized. As a result, the amount of muscle proteins decreases somewhat after a strength workout, while the amount of protein catabolites (e.g., the concentration of nonprotein nitrogen in the blood) rises above its resting

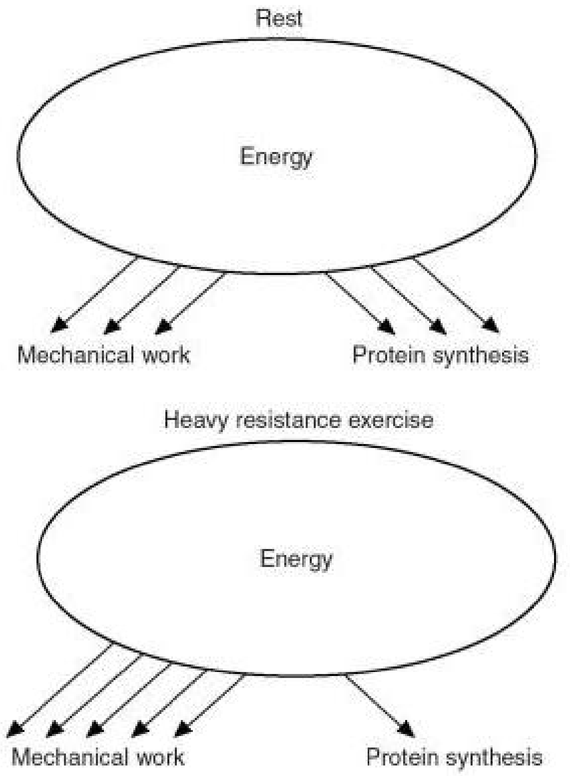


Figure 3.3 Energy supply at rest and during heavy resistance exercise. During heavy resistance exercise, the amount of energy immediately available for the synthesis of muscle proteins decreases.

value. Then, between training sessions, protein synthesis is increased. The uptake of amino acids from the blood into muscles is above resting values. This repeated process of enhanced degradation and synthesis of contractile proteins may result in the supercompensation of protein (figure 3.4). This principle is similar to the overcompensation of muscle glycogen that occurs in response to endurance training.

Type I, or **slow-twitch fibers,** and **type II,** or **fast-twitch fibers,** do not hypertrophy in exactly the same manner. Type I muscle fibers rely more on reducing the amount of myofibrillar protein degradation, while type II muscle fibers rely more on increasing synthesis. While both functions are operational in a muscle fiber, these differences do support certain training conderations. Type I muscle fibers will be more responsive to detraining and may require a higher maintenance frequency than type II muscle fibers.

Whatever the mechanism for stimulating muscle hypertrophy, the vital parameters of a training routine that induce such results are exercise intensity (the exerted muscular force) and exercise volume (the total number of repetitions, performed mechanical work). The practical aspects of this theory will be described in chapter 4.

Body Weight

Muscle mass constitutes a substantial part of the human body mass or body weight. (In elite weightlifters, muscle mass is about 50% of body weight). That is why, among equally trained individuals, those with greater body weight demonstrate greater strength.

The dependence of strength on weight is seen more clearly when tested subjects have equally superb athletic qualifications. World-record holders in weightlifting have shown a very strong correlation between performance level and body weight, 0.93. The correlation for participants at the world championships has been 0.80, and among those not involved in sport activities, the correlation has been low and may even equal 0.

To compare the strength of different people, the strength per kilogram of body weight, or **relative strength,** is usually calculated. On the other hand, muscular strength, when not related to body weight, is called **absolute strength.** Thus, the following equation is valid:

Relative strength = Absolute strength / Body weight

With an increase in body weight, among equally trained athletes of various weight classes, absolute strength increases and relative strength decreases (figure 3.5). For instance, a world record in the **clean and jerk** lift in the 56-kg weight category equals 168.0 kg. Hence, the relative strength is 3.0 (168.0 kg of force / 56 kg of body weight = 3.0). The body weight of athletes in the super-heavyweight division, on the other hand, must be above 105 kg and is typically 130 to 140 kg. If the

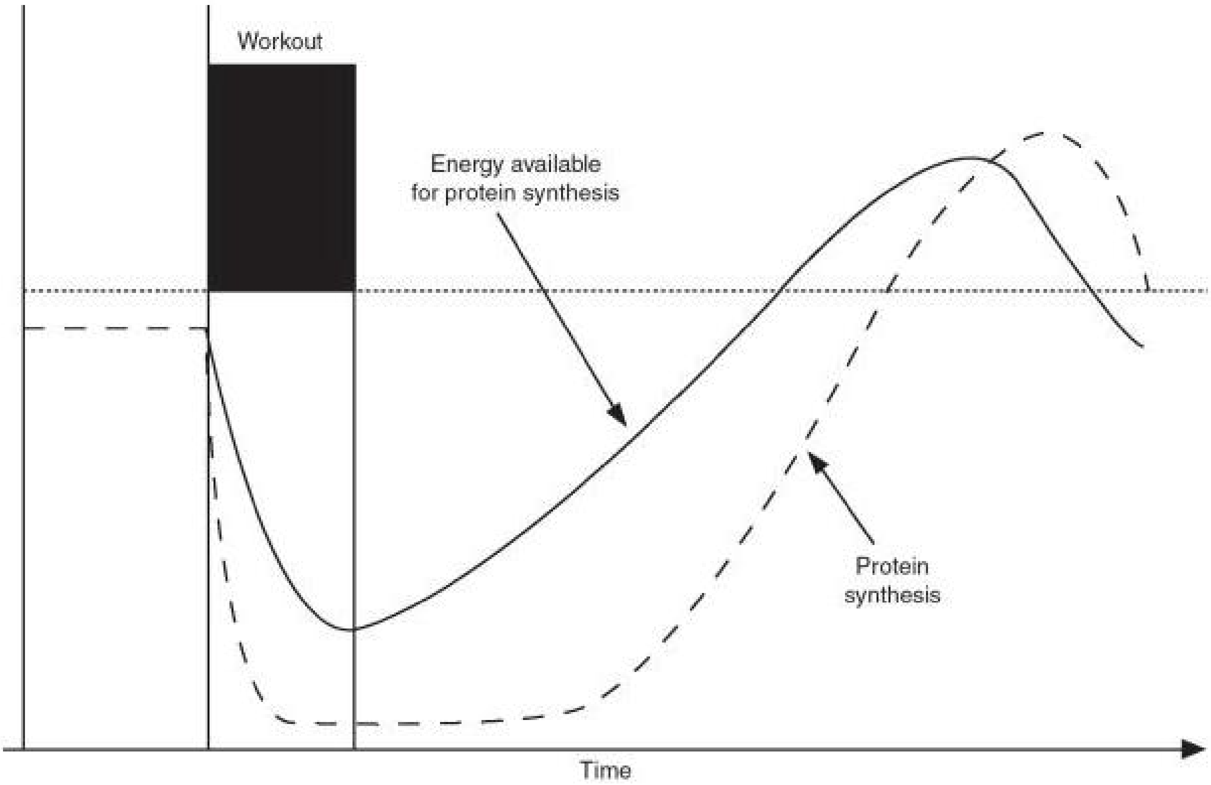


Figure 3.4 Energetic potential of a muscle cell and the rate of protein anabolism.

Adapted, by permission, from A.A. Viru, 1990, Influence of exercise on protein metabolism. In *Lectures in exercise physiology,* edited by A.A. Viru (Tartu, Estonia: The Tartu University Press), 123-146. By permission of author.

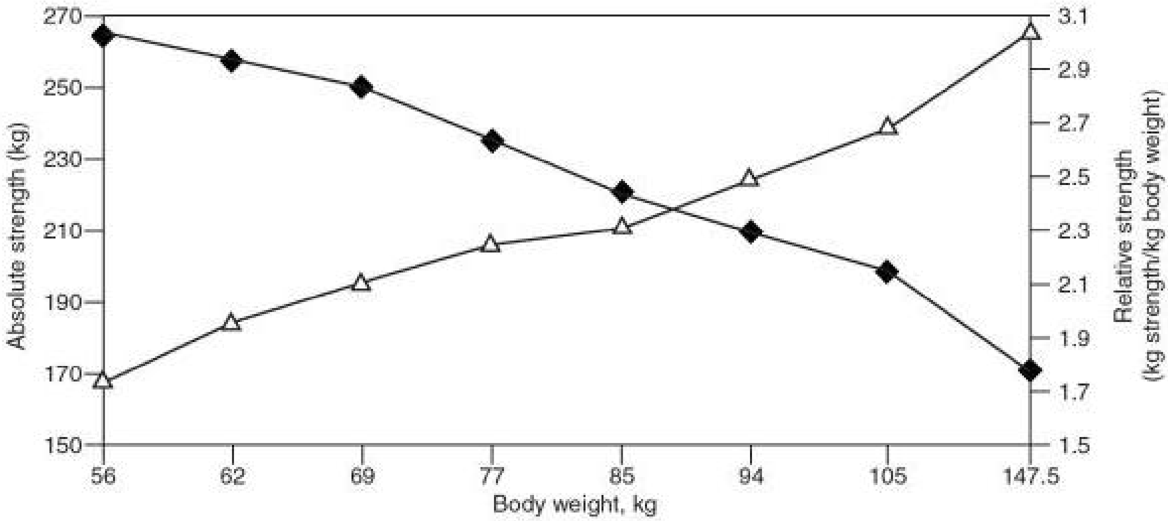


Figure 3.5 Absolute (triangle line) and relative (diamond line) strengths of elite weightlifters at different weight classes. World records in clean and jerk lifts (January 01, 2005) serve as indices of absolute strength. For the super-heavyweight category (>105 kg), the actual weight of the world-record holder is shown (H. Rezazadeh, Iran, body weight 147.5 kg; the world record is 263.5 kg; the relative strength is 263.5/147.5 = 1.786 kg of strength/kg of body weight).

Why Do Athletes From Various Sports Have Different Body Dimensions?

Why are gymnasts short? (The height of the best male gymnasts is usually in the range of 155 to 162 cm; female gymnasts are typically 135 to 150 cm tall and often even shorter.) Because they have to lift their own body and nothing else, relative, not absolute, strength is important in gymnastics. Short athletes have an advantage in this sport.

Why are the best shot-putters tall and heavy (but not obese)? Because here absolute strength is important. Athletes with large body dimensions have a distinct advantage in this sport.

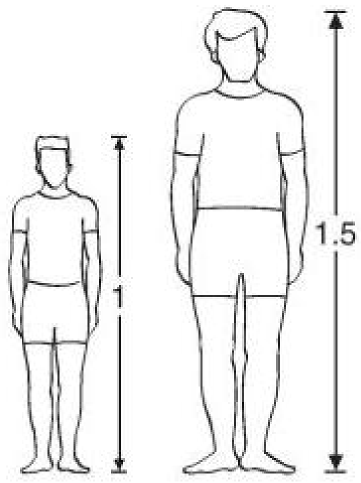


Figure 3.6 Two athletes of different body dimensions.

best athletes of this weight class had a relative strength of 3.0 kg of force per kilogram of body weight, they would lift approximately 400 kg in the clean and jerk. In reality, the world record in this weight class is 263.5 kg.

Because of their great relative strength, athletes of small body dimensions have an advantage in lifting their own bodies. Elite wrestlers of lightweight classes can usually perform more than 30 pull-ups on a horizontal bar; for athletes in the super-heavyweight category, 10 pull-ups is an excellent achievement.

To see what causes such discrepancies, imagine two athletes, A and B, with equal fitness levels but different body dimensions. One of them is 1.5 times as tall as the other (figure 3.6). Their heights are 140 and 210 cm, and all anteroposterior and frontal diameters are also in the proportion of 1:1.5.

Compare the linear measures (length of segments, diameters), surface measures (physiological cross-sectional area, body surface), and volume measures (volume, body mass):

Measure	A	B
Linear	1	1.5
Area (and strength)	1	$1.5^2 = 2.25$
Volume (and body weight)	1	$1.5^3 = 3.375$

Thus, the proportion for body height is 1:1.5; the proportion for area (including muscle physiological cross-sectional area) is 1:2.25; and the proportion for volume and weight is 1:3.375. Athlete B is 2.25 times stronger than athlete A, but also 3.375 times heavier. Athlete B has the advantage in absolute strength, and athlete A the advantage in relative strength.

The relationship between body weight and strength can then be analyzed using simple mathematics. Taking into account that

$$W = aL^3,$$

where W is the body weight, L is the linear measure, and a is a constant (coefficient), we can write

$$L = aW^{1/3}.$$

Since strength (F) is proportional to muscle physiological cross-sectional area, it is also proportional to L^2:

$$F = aL^2 = a(W^{1/3})^2 = aW^{2/3} = aW^{0.666}.$$

Or, in logarithmic form,

$$\log_{10}F = \log_{10}a + 0.666(\log_{10}W).$$

We can validate the last equation by using, for instance, the world records in weightlifting. With this objective the logarithm of body weight is plotted in figure 3.7 against

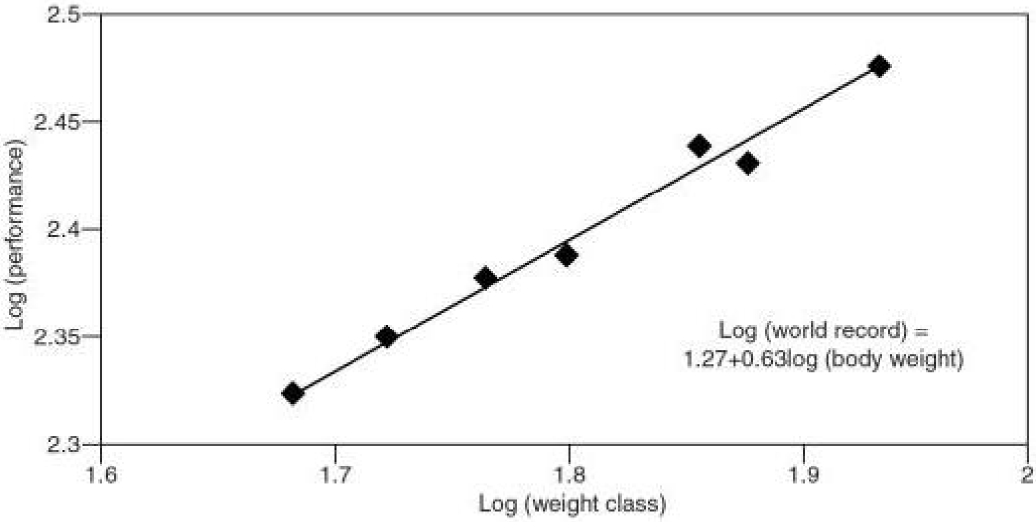


Figure 3.7 The relation between athlete strength and body weight. The world records in weightlifting (snatch plus clean and jerk lifts) for female athletes of different weight categories are used as indices of maximal strength. The records are for January 1, 2005. Because the body weight of athletes of the weight category above 75 kg is not precisely controlled by the rules, these data are not included in the analysis (during the 2004 Olympics the record holder—G. Tang, China—had a body weight of approximately 120 kg). Note the logarithmic scale. The empirical regression equation is $\log_{10}F = 1.27 + 0.63(\log_{10}W)$.

the logarithm of weight lifted by an athlete. The regression coefficient is 0.63 (close to the predicted 0.666), proving that the equation is valid. Such an equation (or corresponding tables such as table 3.1) can be used to compare the strength of people with different body weights. The table shows that a 100-kg force in the 67.5 kg weight class corresponds to 147 kg in super-heavyweight lifters.

For linemen in football, super-heavyweight lifters, and throwers, among others, absolute strength is of great value. For sports in which the athlete's body rather than an implement is moved, relative strength is most important. Thus, in gymnastics, the cross is performed only by those athletes whose relative strength in this motion is near 1 kg per kilogram of body weight (table 3.2). Because the gymnast does not suspend the entire body (there is no need to apply force to maintain handholds), the cross can be performed when relative strength is slightly less than 1.0.

In sports in which absolute strength is the main requirement, athletes should train in a manner that stimulates gains in lean muscle mass. As weight increases, the percentage of body fat must remain constant, or even decrease, to ensure that the weight gain is primarily in lean body mass.

An increase in relative strength may be accompanied by different changes in body weight. Sometimes it is accompanied by stabilization or even weight loss. Table 3.3 illustrates this phenomenon for an athlete who lost weight and increased her performance. Proper eating habits and regular weight control are necessary for all athletes. Weekly weigh-ins and regular determinations of body composition (skinfold measurements, underwater weighing) are an excellent idea.

A common athletic practice is to reduce body weight before competition. Athletes "make weight" in order to increase their relative strength and improve performance. In sports with weight categories, such as wrestling and judo, athletes succumb to this practice to be eligible for a division lower than their usual weight division. Food restriction, fluid deprivation, and dehydration induced by thermal procedures such as the sauna are used toward this end.

This strategy is acceptable when properly employed (weight loss should not exceed 1 kg per week in average athletes and 2.5 kg in

Table 3.1 Equivalent Strength Levels for Athletes of Different Body Weight

Body weight (kg)							
56	60	67.5	75	82.5	90	110	120
44	46	50	54	57	61	69	73
53	55	60	64	69	73	83	88
62	65	70	75	80	85	96	103
71	76	80	86	91	97	111	117
79	83	90	97	103	109	125	132
88	92	100	107	114	121	139	147
132	139	150	161	171	182	208	220
177	185	200	215	229	242	277	293
221	231	250	290	285	303	346	367
265	277	300	322	343	363	415	425

Data from V.M. Zatsiorsky and I.F. Petrov, 1964, "Applied aspects of the analysis of the relations between the strength and body weight of the athletes," *Theory and Practice of Physical Culture* 27(7): 71-73.

Table 3.2 Maximal Force of Arm Adduction in Cross Position of Two World Champions in Gymnastics

Name	Arm adduction force (kg)	Body weight (kg)	Force excess over the weight (kg)	Relative force (kg of force per kg of body weight)	Number of crosses in a composition
Azarian, A.	89	74	15	1.20	5-6
Shachlin, B.	69.2	70	−0.8	0.98	1-2

Adapted from A.A. Korobova and A.B. Plotkin, 1961, *Strength testing of elite athletes*, technical report #61-105 (Moscow, Russia: All-Union Research Institute of Physical Culture), 48.

Table 3.3 Body Weight Changes and Some Indirect Indices of Relative Strength in 1960 Olympic Champion (Long Jump) V. Krepkina

Age	Weight (kg)	Height (m)	Weight / height	Standing jump (cm)	Long jump (cm)	Sprint 100 m (s)
16	64	1.58	40.5	214	490	13.6
24	55	1.58	34.5	284	617	11.3

Data from V.M. Zatsiorsky, 1966, *Motor abilities of athletes* (Moscow, Russia: Fizkultura i Sport), 26.

Female Gymnasts at Risk

Christy Henrich, one of the best American gymnasts of the 1980s, is a well-known example of the tragic consequences of eating problems. When she weighed 95 lb (43 kg), she was told by her coaches that she was too fat to make the Olympic team. She began a life of anorexia and bulimia, still missing the Olympics by a fraction of a point. Less than a decade later she died at age 22, weighing just 52 lbs (23.5 kg). Coaches should comment about weight issues thoughtfully and carefully.

elite ones). However, extreme weight reduction is detrimental to athletic performance and is unsafe. Rapid loss of body weight over short periods of time leads to lean tissue and water loss rather than the loss of fat. In addition, there is a depletion of glycogen stores, the most important energy source for high-intensity performance. The athlete's capacity decreases either as a consequence of reduced carbohydrate availability or as a result of the effects of the disturbed fluid balance. Thus, it is important that athletes follow only long-term, planned weight reduction programs with food restriction in the range of 2 to 4 kJ/day (500-1,000 kcal/day) below normal energy intake.

Abuses associated with extreme and rapid weight loss, such as the use of rubber suits, laxatives, enemas, induced vomiting, and diuretics, cannot be justified. **Diuretics,** for instance, are considered doping; their use is prohibited by the Medical Commission of the International Olympic Committee (IOC). Unfortunately, in spite of all efforts to discourage the malpractice of rapid weight reduction, many athletes continue to lose weight through unacceptable and unsafe methods. They should be vigorously opposed especially for children and teenagers.

The alternative to weight loss is an increase in relative strength through gains in muscle mass. This is completely justified, and athletes should not be wary of muscular growth for muscles carrying the main load in their sport movements.

Other Factors (Nutrition, Hormonal Status)

Strength training activates the synthesis of contractile muscle proteins and causes fiber hypertrophy only when there are sufficient substances for protein repair and growth. The building blocks of such proteins are amino acids, which must be available for resynthesis in the rest period after workouts.

Amino acids are the end-products of protein digestion (or hydrolysis). Some amino acids, termed **essential** or indispensable, cannot be produced by the body and must be provided by food. Amino acids supplied by food pass unchanged through the intestinal wall into the general blood circulation. From there they are absorbed by the muscles according to the specific amino acid needed by that muscle to build up its own protein. In practical terms, then,

- the full assortment of amino acids required for protein anabolism must be present in the blood during the restitution period; and
- proteins, especially essential ones, must be provided by the proper kinds of foods in sufficient amounts.

Athletes in sports such as weightlifting and shot putting, in which muscular strength is the dominant motor ability, need at least 2 g of protein per kilogram of body weight. In superior athletes during periods of stress training, when the training load is extremely high, the protein demand is up to 3 g per kilogram of body weight a day. This amount of protein must be provided by foods with a proper assortment of essential amino acids. It is important to note that the actual requirements are not for protein but rather for selected amino acids.

In addition to the amino acid supply, the hormonal status of an athlete plays a very important role. Several hormones secreted by different glands in the body affect skeletal muscle tissue. These effects are classified as either catabolic, leading to the breakdown of muscle proteins, or anabolic, leading to the synthesis of muscle proteins from amino

Growth and Strength

As children and teenagers become taller and heavier, their relative strength should decrease. This often happens, especially during pubertal growth spurts. It is not uncommon for 8-year-old boys and girls to show comparatively high values of relative strength; for instance, they might perform 10 or 12 chin-ups. But if they do not exercise regularly, they will not be able to repeat these achievements when they are 16.

Typically, however, the relative strength of children does not decrease during childhood and puberty, because during the maturation process the muscles of mature individuals produce a greater force per unit of body mass. Thus, two concurrent processes with opposite effects take place during childhood and puberty: growth (i.e., an increase in body dimensions) and maturation. Due to growth, relative strength decreases; at the same time, due to maturation, it increases. The superposition of these two processes determines the manifested strength advancement (or decline). The interplay of the two concurrent processes of child development is important in the preparation of young athletes.

Consider training methods of the best male gymnasts from countries that were once part of the USSR. They learn all the main technical stunts, including the most difficult ones, before the age of 12 or 13 when the puberty growth spurt begins. During the puberty period (13-16 years of age) they learn very few, if any, new technical elements. In training during this period they concentrate on conditioning, especially strength training and specific endurance training, and stability of performance. All compulsory and optional routines are trained (to achieve high stability of performance and gain specific endurance) rather than new elements and single stunts. Great attention is paid to strength development. As a result, at 17 to 18 years of age the gymnasts are prepared to compete at the international level. Dmitri Bilozerchev, for instance, won an all-around world championship when he was 16.

As the complexity of the optional routines increases, the most difficult stunts are performed (during training sessions) not by contemporary Olympic and world champions, but by their young counterparts (i.e., 12- and 13-year-old boys who are preparing at this time to compete at the 2008 and 2012 Olympic Games).

acids. Among the anabolic hormones are **testosterone, growth hormone** (also called somatotropin), and insulin-like growth factors (also called somatomedins). The predominant catabolic hormone is cortisol, which is secreted by the adrenal gland. While each hormone plays a role in anabolism or catabolism, all the hormones have multiple roles in regulating the homeostatic balance in the body and cannot be exclusively defined by their role in one physiological equation. However, the net effect of a hormone for the athlete may be either positive or negative as it relates to gains in muscle and the catabolic and anabolic balance.

The concentrations of these hormones in the blood largely determine the metabolic state of muscle fibers. The serum level of testosterone is lower in females than in males, and therefore strength training does not elicit the same degree of muscle hypertrophy in females as in males. Strength training elicits changes in the level of anabolic hormones circulating in the blood. These changes may be acute (as a reaction to one workout) or cumulative (long-term changes in resting levels). For instance, strength training elicits increases in resting serum testosterone concentrations and induces an acute elevation in the level of circulating testosterone. A relatively high positive correlation ($r = 0.68$) has been found between the ratio of serum testosterone to sex hormone–binding globulin (SHBG) and concomitant gains in competitive weightlifting results for the clean and jerk lift (figure 3.8).

Serum growth hormone (GH) levels are significantly elevated during exercise with heavy weight (70-85% of maximal force). No change in serum GH has been observed when the resistance is reduced to allow the completion of 21 repetitions. The resting level

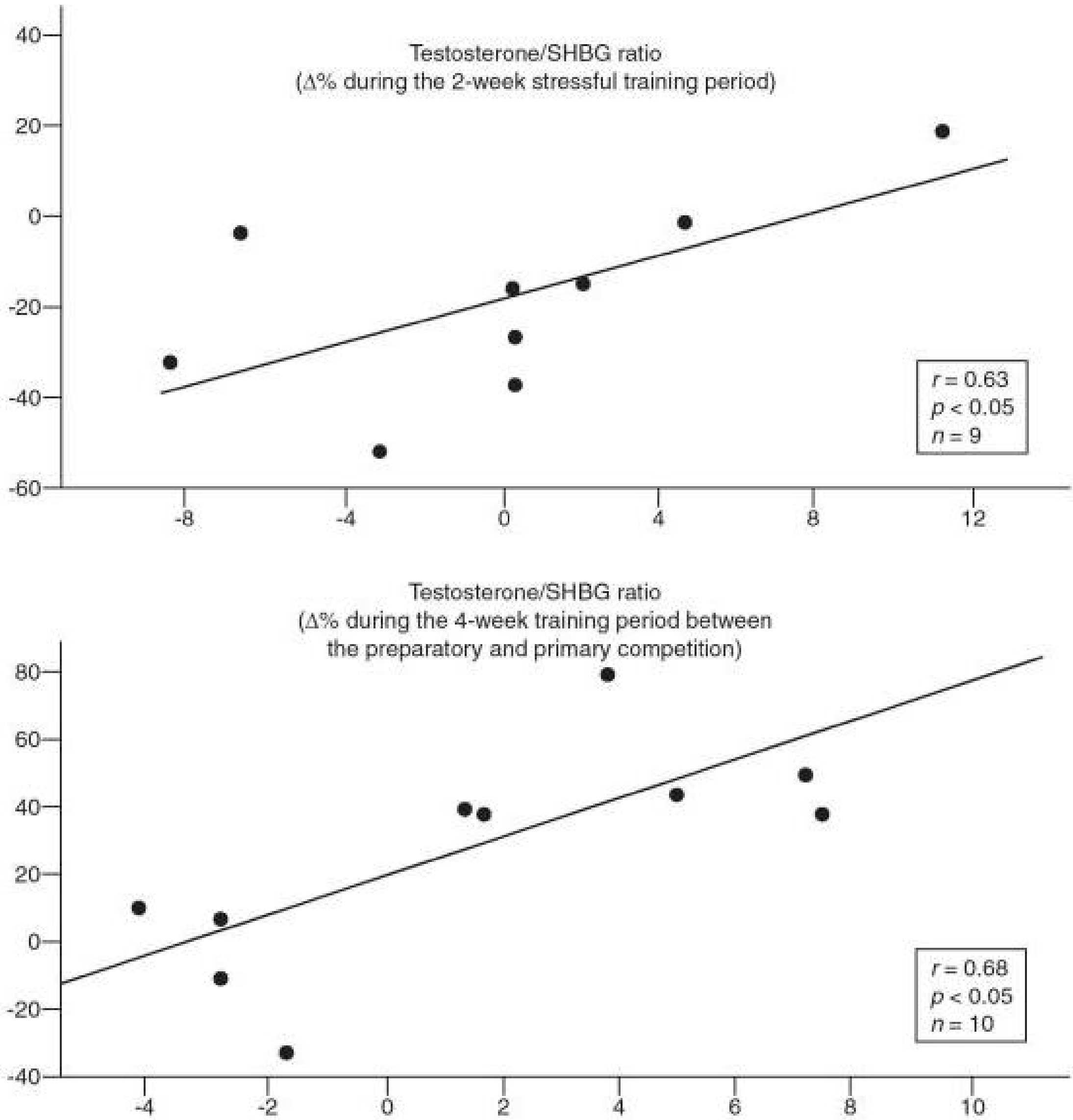


Figure 3.8 Relations between relative change in serum testosterone–SHBG ratio and results of the clean and jerk lift. Testosterone is not freely soluble in plasma and must bind with plasma proteins or globulines in order to circulate in blood. During resting conditions, more than 90% of testosterone is bound to either SHBG or to albumin. The remaining testosterone is in a metabolically active "free" form. This study demonstrates a significant correlation between increases in strength and the ratio of free to bound testosterone. The subjects were all Finnish champions or national record holders (or both) in weightlifting.

Adapted, by permission, from K. Håkkinen et al., 1987, "Relationships between training volume, physical performance capacity, and serum hormone concentration during prolonged training in elite weight lifters," *International Journal of Sport Medicine* 8: 61-65. By permission of author.

of GH is not changed as a result of strength training. This may be due to the fact that basic GH molecules are bound together in clusters, creating higher molecular variants, while the different variants, as well as binding proteins, respond differently to strength training. The magnitudes of acute hormonal responses to a specific workout are related to the following:

- Amount of muscle mass activated
- Amount of work
- Amount of rest between sets and exercises

Protein and Carbohydrate Intake

Intake of protein and carbohydrate before and after a workout affects the amount of testosterone that will bind to the androgen receptors. The increased binding of testosterone to the androgen receptors in the muscle results in what is called an *up regulation*, meaning there is an increased number of receptors that are responsive to the circulating testosterone. Testosterone is one of the major hormonal signals of increased protein synthesis in the muscle, but it must be bound to the receptor in order to send the signal to the cell's DNA machinery. Recent findings show that with nutrient intake, circulating testosterone decreases. This is thought to be due to the greater use and binding interactions with the androgen receptor.

In addition to testosterone, with 25 to 50 g of protein (essential amino acids being most important) and 50 g of carbohydrate ingested before and within 10 min following the workout, an increase in circulating insulin will occur, stimulating greater uptake of amino acids into the muscle. Growth hormone from the anterior pituitary gland and insulin-like growth factor-1 from the liver also increase with such nutrient intakes surrounding a workout. Thus macronutrient intake timing may be crucial for optimizing the anabolic environment surrounding a workout. The increased protein synthesis appears to be mediated by a host of different anabolic hormones.

NEURAL (CENTRAL) FACTORS

The central nervous system (CNS) is of paramount importance in the exertion and development of muscular strength. Muscular strength is determined not only by the quantity of involved muscle mass but also by the extent to which individual fibers in a muscle are activated (by intramuscular coordination). Maximal force exertion is a skilled act in which many muscles must be appropriately activated. This coordinated activation of many muscle groups is called intermuscular coordination. As a result of neural adaptation, superior athletes can better coordinate the activation of fibers in single muscles and in muscle groups. In other words, they have better intramuscular and intermuscular coordination.

Intramuscular Coordination

The nervous system uses three options for varying muscle force production. These include

- recruitment, the gradation of total muscle force by the activation and deactivation of individual motor units;
- rate coding, a change in the firing rate of motor units; and
- synchronization, the activation of motor units in a more or less synchronized way.

All three options are based on the existence of **motor units (MUs).** MUs are the basic elements (quantums) of motor system output. Each MU consists of a motoneuron in the spinal cord and the muscle fibers it innervates. An MU also includes a long **axon** going from the motoneuron down to the muscle, where it branches out and innervates individual muscle fibers. When a motoneuron is active, impulses are distributed to all the fibers in the MU. In small muscles that afford a fine level of control, MUs consist of several dozen muscle fibers. For instance, MUs in the extraocular muscles that position the eyes include on average only 23 muscle fibers. In large muscles such as the rectus femoris, on the other hand, one MU may include up to 2,000 muscle fibers.

MUs can be classified as fast or slow on the basis of contractile properties. Slow MUs, or slow-twitch (ST) motor units, are specialized for prolonged use at relatively slow velocities. They consist of (a) small, low-threshold motoneurons with low discharge frequencies; (b) axons with relatively low conduction velocities; and (c) motor fibers highly adapted to lengthy **aerobic exercise.** Fast MUs, or fast-twitch (FT) motor units, are specialized for relatively brief periods of activity characterized by large power outputs, high velocities, and high rates of force development. They consist of (a) large, high-threshold motoneurons with high discharge frequencies; (b) axons with high conduction velocities; and (c) motor fibers adapted to explosive or anaerobic activities. A more detailed classification includes three types of muscle fibers: type I (slow), type IIA (fast but fatigue resistant), and IIX (fast with low resistance to fatigue) (see table 3.4 and figure 3.9). In contrast to previous reports, transition from type I to type II muscle fibers as a result of training is not considered possible; early reports to such effects did not completely type the full array of fiber types and their hybrids.

MUs are activated according to the **all-or-none law.** At any point in time, an MU is either active or inactive; there is no gradation in the level of motoneuron excitation. The gradation of force for one MU is accomplished through changes in its firing rate (rate coding).

In humans, contraction times vary from 90 to 110 ms for ST motor units and from 40 to 84 ms for FT motor units. The maximal shortening velocity of fast motor fibers is almost four times greater than the V_m of ST motor fibers. The force per unit of fast and slow motor fibers is similar, but the FT motor units typically possess larger cross sections and produce greater force per single motor unit. Differences in the force-producing capacity among the MUs can be 100-fold.

All human muscles contain both ST and FT motor units. The proportion of fast and slow motor fibers in mixed muscles varies among athletes. Endurance athletes have a high percentage of ST motor units, while FT motor units are predominant among strength and power athletes.

Table 3.4 Main Types of Muscle Fibers

Type	I	IIA	IIX
Twitch rate	Slow	Fast	Fast
Resistance to fatigue	High	Average	Low
Respiration type	Aerobic	Aerobic–anaerobic	Anaerobic
Capillaries	Many	Many	Few

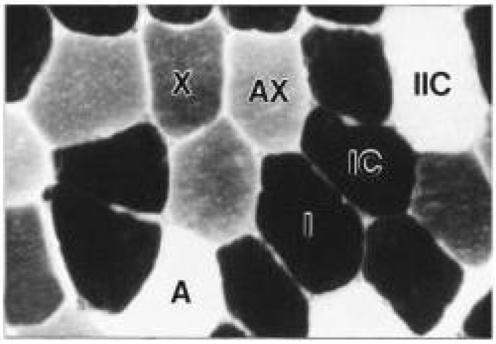


Figure 3.9 A micrograph of a muscle fiber cross section made up of different fiber types. Typing is achieved through the use of different colors from the staining procedure of a piece of muscle, or ATPase histochemical staining (the myosin ATPase stain at pH 4.6). The main muscle fiber types shown in this micrograph are type I (slow twitch) and type IIA and IIX (fast twitch), along with a representative fast-twitch hybrid IIAX that occurs when muscle fibers are making a transition from one type of type II fiber to another in their protein characteristics. More comprehensive classifications categorize muscle fibers according to different criteria. The main fibers in humans from the most oxidative to the least oxidative are types I, IC, IIC, IIAC, IIA, IIAX, and IIX.

Recruitment

During voluntary contractions, the orderly pattern of recruitment is controlled by the size of motoneurons—this is the so-called **size principle.** Small motoneurons, those with the lowest firing threshold, are recruited first, and demands for larger forces are met by the recruitment of increasingly forceful MUs. Motor units with the largest motoneurons, which have the largest and fastest twitch contractions, have the highest threshold and are recruited last (figure 3.10). This implies, in mixed muscles containing both ST and FT motor units, that the involvement of ST motor units is forced, regardless of the magnitude of muscle tension and velocity being developed. In contrast, full FT **motor unit activation** is difficult to achieve. Untrained people cannot recruit all their FT motor units. Athletes engaged in strength and power training show increased MU activation.

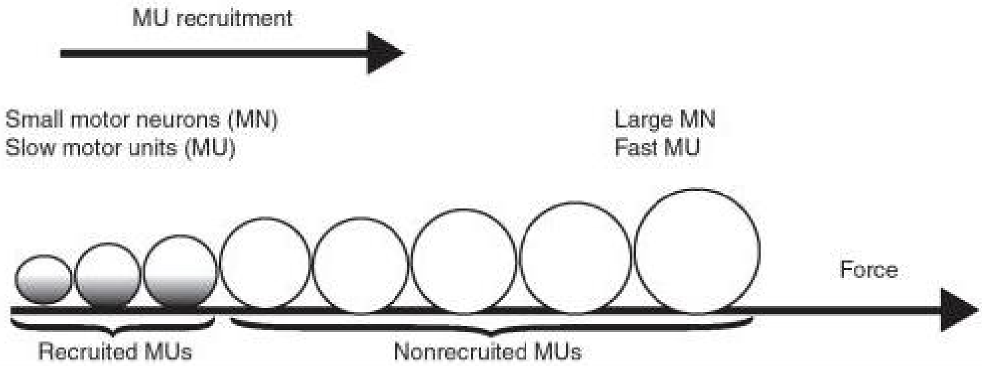


Figure 3.10 Size principle of motor neuron recruitment. The motor neurons are arranged according to their size. The small motor neurons innervate slow-twitch fibers, while large motor neurons innervate fast-twitch fibers. When the muscle force increases, the motor neurons are activated (recruited) according to size, from small to large. In this figure, the required force is low and only small motor neurons are recruited. When the force builds up, the number of active MUs increases and the fast MUs are recruited.

The recruitment order of MUs is relatively fixed for a muscle involved in a specific motion, even if the movement velocity or rate of force development alters. However, the recruitment order can be changed if the multifunction muscle operates in different motions. Different sets of MUs within one muscle might have a low threshold for one motion and a high threshold for another.

The variation in recruitment order is partially responsible for the specificity of training effect in heavy resistance exercise. If the objective in training is the full development of a muscle (not high athletic performance), one must exercise this muscle in all possible ranges of motion. This situation is typical for bodybuilders and beginning athletes, but not elite athletes.

Rate Coding

The other primary mechanism for the gradation of muscle force is rate coding. The discharge frequency of motoneurons can vary over a considerable range. In general, the firing rate rises with increased force and power production.

The relative contributions of recruitment versus rate coding in grading the force of voluntary contractions are different in small and large muscles. In small muscles, most MUs are recruited at a level of force less than 50% of F_{mm}; thereafter, rate coding plays the major role in the further development of force up to F_{mm}. In large proximal muscles, such as the deltoid and biceps, the recruitment of additional MUs appears to be the main mechanism for increasing force development up to 80% of F_{mm} and even higher. In the force range between 80 and 100% of F_{mm}, force is increased almost exclusively by intensification of the MU firing rate.

Synchronization

Normally, MUs work asynchronously to produce a smooth, accurate movement. However, there is some evidence that, in elite power and strength athletes, MUs are activated synchronously during maximal voluntary efforts.

In conclusion, maximal muscular force is achieved when

1. a maximal number of both ST and FT motor units are recruited;
2. rate coding is optimal to produce a fused tetanus in each motor fiber; and
3. the MUs work synchronously over the short period of maximal voluntary effort.

Psychological factors are also of primary importance. Under extreme circumstances (i.e., life-or-death situations), people can develop extraordinary strength. When untrained subjects (but not superior athletes) receive hypnotic suggestions of increased strength, they exhibit strength increases, whereas both athletes and untrained people show strength decrements after receiving the hypnotic suggestion of decreased strength. Such strength enhancement is interpreted to mean that the CNS in extraordinary situations either increases the flow of excitatory stimuli, decreases the inhibitory influence to the motoneurons, or both.

It may be that the activity of motor neurons in the spinal cord is normally inhibited by the CNS and that it is not possible to activate all MUs within a specific muscle group. Under the influence of strength training and in exceptional circumstances (important sport competitions included), a reduction in neural inhibition occurs with a concomitant expansion of the recruitable motoneuron pool and an increase in strength.

Intermuscular Coordination

Every exercise, even the simplest one, is a skilled act requiring the complex coordination of numerous muscle groups. The entire movement pattern, rather than the strength of single muscles or the movement of single joints, must be the primary training objective. Thus, an athlete should use isolated strength exercises, in which the movement is performed in a single joint, only as a supplement to the main training program.

Here are some examples of the primary importance of the entire coordination pattern (rather than the force of single muscles) for muscular strength.

- It is possible to induce hypertrophy and increase the maximal force of a single muscle, for instance the rectus femoris, or even a muscle group (e.g., knee extensors), through electrostimulation (EMS). However, if only EMS is used, it takes a great deal of time and effort to transmute this increased potential into a measurable strength gain in a multijoint movement such as a leg extension. Some athletes who try EMS decide that it is not worth the effort (see also chapter 6 on EMS). Strength gains attained through conventional voluntary training rely on changes in the nervous system that do not occur when muscles are stimulated electrically.

- The best weightlifters are the strongest people in the world, but they cannot perform some slow gymnastics exercises, which require only strength (e.g., the cross exercise on the rings). On the other hand, elite gymnasts do not exercise with free weights to increase the force of the shoulder girdle muscles. They do this with gymnastics exercises using body weight as resistance (heavy ankle cuffs or waist belts are added from time to time).

- If an athlete simultaneously exerts maximal force with two extremities, the force for each extremity is lower than it is in unilateral force development. Training with bilateral contractions reduces the bilateral deficit. Athletes in sports such as rowing or weightlifting that require the simultaneous bilateral contraction of the same muscle groups should use similar exercises to eliminate bilateral deficits. (However, elite super-heavy lifters employ exercises such as stepping up on a bench with barbells 180 kg and heavier; they do this to avoid the extremely high loading that occurs during squatting exercises, in which the barbell weight can exceed 350 kg.)

In the case of the bottleneck effect, when low strength in one joint of a kinematic chain limits performance (e.g., knee extensor strength is the limiting factor in squatting), the coach should first try to change the exercise to redistribute the load among different muscle groups. Only after that is an isolated knee extension against a resistance advisable.

The important limitation of many strength training machines is that they are designed to train muscles, not movement. Because of this, they are not the most important training tool for athletes.

TAXONOMY OF STRENGTH

Let us review some facts from chapters 2 and 3:

1. Magnitudes of the maximal force F_m in slow movements do not differ greatly from those in isometric actions.
2. The greatest muscular forces are developed in eccentric actions; such forces

are sometimes twice those developed in isometric conditions.

3. In concentric actions, the force F_m is reduced when the time to peak force T_m decreases or the velocity increases.
4. There are no substantial correlations between maximum maximorum force (F_{mm}) and the force F_m in movements with minimal external resistance (note that body weight is not minimal resistance). The correlation is greater when the resistance is increased.
5. The rate of force development (especially the S-gradient) does not correlate with the maximal force F_{mm}.
6. The force in exercises with reversible muscle action does not change after heavy resistance training, regardless of the F_{mm} increase (this is true at least for experienced athletes).

In summary, the following general scheme can be proposed as a taxonomy of muscular strength:

Type of Strength	*Manifestation*
Static strength (or, simply, strength)	Isometric and slow concentric actions
Dynamic strength	Fast concentric actions
Yielding strength	Eccentric actions

Additionally, the explosive strength (or rate of force development) and the force exerted in stretch–shortening (reversible) muscle actions are considered independent components of motor function.

The summary classification scheme is certainly not completely satisfactory from a scientific point of view in that it uses different bases for categorization (direction of movement, velocity, time). Furthermore, in real life a smooth transition exists rather than a sharp demarcation between different types of strength. Despite these valid criticisms, this classification system has served as a useful tool in practical work for many years, and a better system does not exist at this time.

SUMMARY

To understand what determines differences among athletes, we scrutinize two factors: peripheral factors (that is, capabilities of individual muscles) and central factors (the coordination of muscle activity by the CNS). Among peripheral factors, muscle dimensions seem to be the most important: Muscles with a large physiological cross-sectional area produce higher forces. The size of a muscle increases when (a) a properly planned strength training program is executed and (b) the required amount and selection of amino acids are provided via nutrition. The enlargement of the cross-sectional area of individual fibers (fiber hypertrophy) rather than an increase in the number of fibers (hyperplasia) is responsible for muscle size growth. Heavy resistance exercise activates the breakdown of muscle proteins, creating conditions for the enhanced synthesis of contractile proteins during rest periods. The mass of proteins catabolized during exercise exceeds the mass of newly synthesized protein. The crucial factor for increasing the protein breakdown is a shortage in the muscle cell of energy available for protein buildup during heavy resistance exercise.

Since muscle mass constitutes a substantial part of the human body, athletes with larger body weight demonstrate greater strength than equally trained athletes of smaller body dimensions. The strength per kilogram of body weight is called relative strength; muscular strength, when not related to body weight, is absolute strength. Among equally trained athletes of various weight classes, absolute strength increases and relative strength decreases with a gain in body weight. Body weight loss, if properly managed, is helpful toward increasing relative force. However, athletes must be warned against the malpractice of rapid weight reduction.

Neural (central) factors include intramuscular and intermuscular coordination. On the level of intramuscular coordination, three main options are used by the CNS for varying muscle force production: recruitment of MUs, rate coding, and synchronization of MUs. These can be observed in well-trained athletes during maximal efforts. The orderly recruitment of MUs is controlled by the size of motoneurons (size principle): Small motoneurons are recruited first and requirements for higher forces are met by the activation of the large motoneurons that innervate fast MUs. It seems that the involvement of slow-twitch MUs is forced, regardless of the magnitude of muscle force and velocity being developed. The firing rate of the MUs rises with increased force production (rate coding). The maximal force is achieved when (a) a maximal number of MUs is recruited, (b) rate coding is optimal and (c) MUs are activated synchronously over the short period of maximal effort.

The primary importance of intermuscular coordination for generating maximal muscular force is substantiated by many investigations. Thus, entire movement patterns rather than the strength of individual muscles or single-joint movements should be the primary training objective. Explosive strength (or rate of force development) and the force exerted in stretch–shortening (reversible) muscle actions are independent components of motor function.

part II

Methods of Strength Conditioning

Part II summarizes the requisite knowledge for coaching successfully, concentrating on information derived both from scientific evidence and the documented practical experience of elite athletes. Chapter 4, which covers intensity and methods of strength training, begins with the description of measurement techniques. It also reviews current scientific material about exercising with different resistance, analyzing metabolic reactions, intramuscular coordination, and biomechanical variables. The chapter then scrutinizes the training intensity of elite athletes and presents data from some 35 years' worth of training logs of dozens of the best athletes in the world, including Olympic champions and world-record holders from Eastern Europe. Chapter 4 also outlines three main methods of strength training and discusses in detail the parallels between practical training and scientific lore.

Chapter 5 turns to timing during training, including short-term and medium-term timing. It covers the main problems of short-term planning; how to use strength exercises in workouts and training days as well as in micro- and mesocycles; and the four main aspects of periodization: delayed transformation, delayed transmutation, training residuals, and the superposition of training effects.

Chapter 6 pertains to the issue that coaches face first and foremost when they devise strength training programs: exercise selection. The chapter examines various strength exercises, and it also classifies exercises and presents a rationale for exercise selection. For experienced athletes, decisions are fairly complex, and among the exercise features they must consider are the following: working muscles, type of resistance, time and rate of force development, movement velocity, movement direction, and the force–posture relationship. Chapter 6 also describes the peak-contraction principle, accommodating resistance, and accentuation—the three basic techniques used in modern strength training to handle the force–posture paradigm.

A later section of chapter 6 concentrates on strength exercises that are regarded by many as supplementary, including isometric exercises, self-resistance exercises, and yielding exercises. We note that exercises with reversible muscular action, such as dropping jumps, are becoming more popular. Meanwhile, the sport exercises that call for added resistance, which are often referred to as speed resisted, can now hardly be called auxiliary. In fact, some experts see the shift in popularity of this group of exercises as the most visible trend in training since the 1980s. Chapter 6 explains how to choose and use all these training techniques. It then reviews electrostimulation and vibration training as training techniques and ends by offering some practical advice on how to breathe while exercising.

Chapter 7 describes measures that may prevent injuries during strength training, especially to the lumbar region, explaining the underlying theory while presenting practicable techniques. Several applied aspects are discussed, including muscle strengthening, sport technique requirements, use of protective implements, posture correction and flexibility development, and rehabilitation measures.

Chapter 8 explores goal-specific strength training. Both athletes and laypeople exercise for strength not only to improve strength performance but also for many other reasons (goals may be as diverse as power performance, muscle mass gain, endurance performance, or injury prevention). The chapter also summarizes specific features of strength training.

chapter 4

Training Intensity

In this chapter we turn to the topic of training intensity and focus on four major issues. First we consider several methods of measuring training intensity. Then we look at the physiological characteristics of exercises with varying intensities, particularly the influence of different strength exercises on metabolism and intra- and intermuscular coordination. The third issue is the training intensities of elite, world-class athletes—information that suggests which training patterns are the most efficient. The fourth section deals with the optimal training intensities determined from the comparative research. The final section outlines the theory underlying a described training pattern and presents the primary methods of strength training.

MEASUREMENT TECHNIQUES

Training intensity can be estimated in four different ways:

- Magnitude of resistance (e.g., weight lifted) expressed as a percentage of the best achievement (F_m or F_{mm}) in a relevant movement (if the weight lifted is expressed in kilograms, it is difficult to compare the training loads of athletes who vary in mastership and weight class)
- Number of repetitions (lifts) per set (a set is a group of repetitions performed consecutively)
- Number (or percentage) of repetitions with maximal resistance (weight)
- Workout density (i.e., number of sets per hour in a workout)

You can read in this chapter about the first three methods, and in chapter 5 you can read about workout density.

To characterize the magnitude of resistance (load), we use the percentage of weight lifted relative to the athlete's best performance. Depending on how the best achievement is determined, two main variants of such a measure may be used. One option is to use the athletic performance attained during an official sport competition (competition $F_{mm} = CF_{mm}$), or the **maximum competition weight *(CF_{mm})*.** The second option is to use a **maximum training weight *(TF_{mm})*** for comparison.

By definition, maximum training weight is the heaviest weight (1-repetition maximum, or 1RM) an athlete can lift without substantial *emotional* stress. In practice, experienced athletes determine TF_{mm} by registering heart rate. If the heart rate increases before the lift, this is a sign of emotional anxiety. The weight exceeds TF_{mm} in this case. (Note, however, that heart rate elevation before lifting the maximal competition load CF_{mm} varies substantially among athletes. During important competitions, the range is between 120 and 180 beats per minute. To determine TF_{mm}, athletes must know their individual reactions.) The difference between the TF_{mm} and the CF_{mm} is approximately 12.5 ± 2.5% for superior weightlifters. The difference is greater for athletes in heavy weight classes. For athletes who lift 200 kg during competition, a 180-kg weight is typically above their TF_{mm}.

For an athlete, the difference between CF_{mm} and TF_{mm} is great. After an important competition, weightlifters are extremely tired even though they may have performed only 6 lifts, in comparison to nearly 100 lifts during a regular training session. Such athletes have a feeling of emptiness and cannot lift large weights. Thus they need about 1 week of rest, during which they lift smaller weights, and cannot compete in an important competition until after 1 month (compare with the situation in other sports in which contests are held two to three times a week). The reason is not the physical load itself but the great emotional stress an athlete experiences while lifting CF_{mm}. TF_{mm} can be lifted at each training session.

It is more practical to use CF_{mm} than to use TF_{mm} for the calculation of training intensity. Since the 1960s, the average training intensity for elite athletes has been 75 ± 2%.

In a sport such as weightlifting, the training intensity is characterized also by an **intensity coefficient.** This ratio is calculated as follows:

100(Average weight lifted / Athletic performance),

where Average weight lifted and Athletic performance are in kilograms, and Athletic performance is measured using the snatch plus clean and jerk.

On average, the intensity coefficient for superior athletes has been 38 ± 2%.

It is a good idea to use as a CF_{mm} value the average of two performances attained during official contests immediately before and after the period of training you are studying. For instance, if the performance was 100 kg during a competition in December and it was 110 kg in May, the average CF_{mm} for the period January through April was 105 kg. There are many misconceptions in sport science literature regarding the training loads used in heavy resistance training. One reason is that the difference between CF_{mm} and TF_{mm} is not always completely described. It is important to pay attention to this difference.

The number of repetitions per set is the most popular measure of exercise intensity in situations in which maximal force F_{mm} is difficult or even impossible to evaluate, for instance in sit-ups.

The magnitude of resistance (weight, load) can be characterized by the ultimate number of repetitions possible in one set (to failure). The maximal load that can be lifted a given number of repetitions before fatigue is called **repetition maximum (RM).** For instance, 3RM is the weight that can be lifted in a single set only three times. Determining RM entails the use of trial and error to find the greatest amount of weight a trainee can lift a designated number of times. RM is a very convenient measure of training intensity in heavy resistance training. However, there is no fixed relationship between the magnitude of the weight lifted (expressed as a percentage of the F_{mm} in relevant movement) and the number of repetitions to failure (RM). This relationship varies with different athletes and motions (figure 4.1). As the figure shows, 10RM corresponds to approximately 75% F_m. This is valid for athletes in sports where strength and explosive strength predominate (such as weightlifting, sprinting, jumping, and throwing). However, note that a given percentage of 1RM will not always correspond to the same number of repetitions to failure in the performance of different lifts.

During training, superior athletes use varying numbers of repetitions in different lifts. In the snatch and the clean and jerk the typical number of repetitions ranges from 1 to 3, and the most common number is 2 (almost 60% of all sets are performed with 2 repetitions). In barbell squats, the range is from 2 to 7 lifts per set (more than 93% of all sets are performed in this range; see figure 4.2). You will find further examples and an explanation of these findings later on in this chapter. As a rule of thumb, no more than 10- to 12RM should be used for muscular strength development; the exceptions to this are rare (e.g., sit-ups).

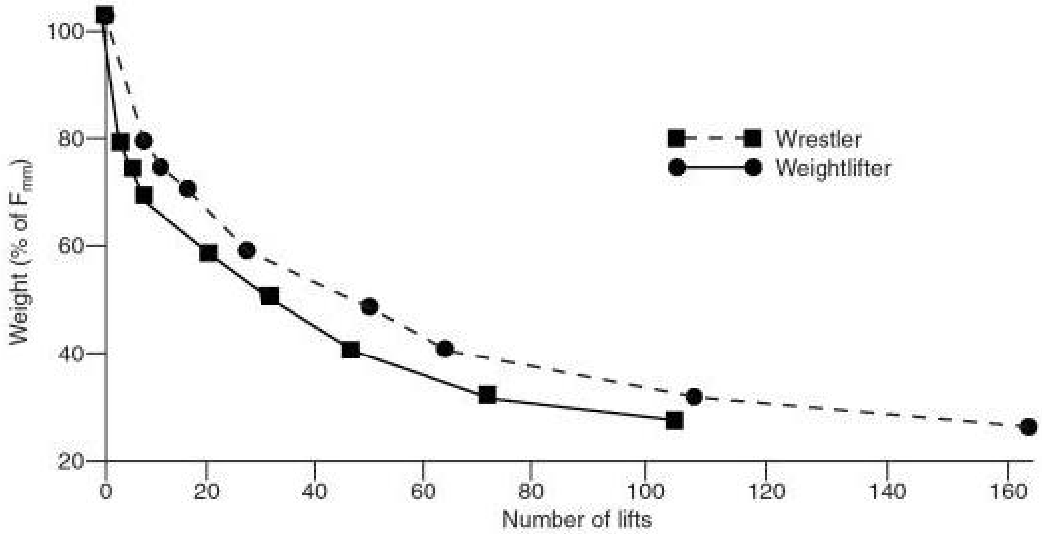


Figure 4.1 Dependence of the maximal number of repetitions to failure (RM, abscissa) on weight lifted (% F_{mm}, ordinate). The results for two qualified athletes, a weightlifter and a wrestler, are shown for the bench press. The pace of lifts was 1 lift in 2.5 s. Both athletes were highly motivated.

Reprinted, by permission, from V.M. Zatsiorsky, N.G. Kulik, and Yu. I. Smirnov, 1968, "Relations between the motor abilities," *Theory and Practice of Physical Culture* 31(12): 35-48, 32(1): 2-8, 32(2): 28-33.

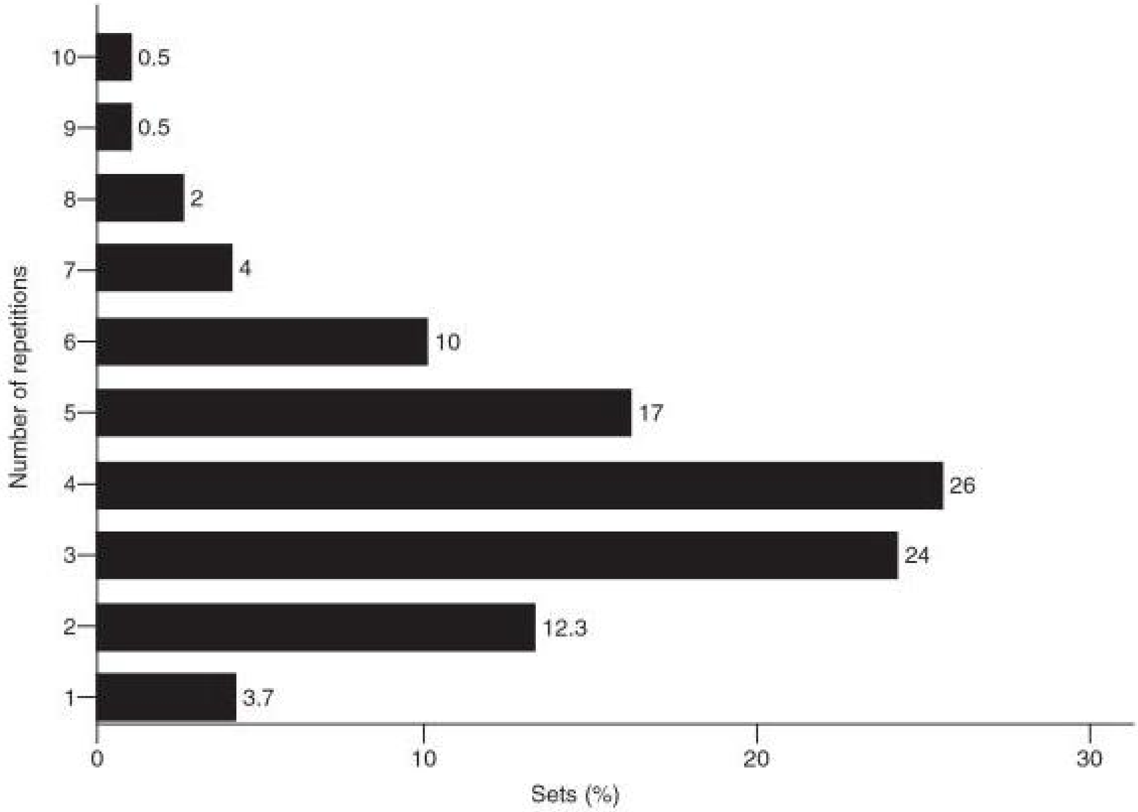


Figure 4.2 Number of repetitions per set in squatting with a barbell. (One year of observations in the training of eight world and Olympic champions in the clean and jerk.)

From *Preparation of the National Olympic Team in weight lifting to the 1988 Olympic Games in Seoul*, 1989, (Moscow, Russia: Russian State Academy of Physical Education and Sport), 79. Technical report #1988-67. By permission of Russian State Academy of Physical Education and Sport.

Determination of Training Intensity

A conditioning coach wants to prescribe a training intensity in barbell squats for two athletes, A and B. Athlete A is a competitive weightlifter from a lightweight class; athlete B is a football player. Recently during a modeled competition, athlete A managed to lift a 150-kg barbell (his CF_{mm}). To prepare for the competition, athlete A excluded barbell squats from his training program for 10 days before the contest and had a complete 2-day rest. He considered the competition very important and psychologically prepared himself to set his best personal achievement in squatting. During the competition, athlete A performed squats in a fresh condition, immediately after a warm-up. Because of high emotional stress, his heart rate before the lifts was approximately 180 beats/min.

For this athlete, the maximal training weight must be around 135 kg—his TF_{mm}. To define this weight more precisely, the coach monitored the athlete's heart rate during rest intervals and found that before he lifted a 135-kg barbell his heart rate was not elevated. Therefore this weight did not elicit high emotional stress. The coach recommended that the athlete use the 135-kg weight as maximal load in the majority of training sessions during the next training cycle. This was exactly 90% of his maximal achievement attained during the competition.

Without experiencing emotional stress and using a special competition-like warm-up, athlete A was able to lift a 135-kg barbell one to two times in a set. Since the advice was to perform three to four squats in a set, athlete A exercised mainly with the 125- to 130-kg barbell. Periodically, he also used higher loads, including some greater than 135 kg. These lifts were counted and their numbers used as an additional measure of training intensity.

Athlete B also squatted with a 150-kg barbell. But unlike athlete A, he did this during a regular session within his usual training routine. Additional rest before the test was not provided and no special measures were taken. For this athlete, the 150-kg achievement can be regarded as a maximum training weight *(TF_{mm})*. He can exercise with such a load regularly.

The number of repetitions with maximal resistance is an additional, very useful measure of the intensity of strength training. By definition, all lifts with a barbell above 90% of CF_{mm} are included in this category. These loads are above TF_{mm} for almost all athletes.

EXERCISING WITH DIFFERENT RESISTANCE

Different levels of resistance have different physiological effects. Varied resistance levels cause different metabolic reactions involving the breakdown and synthesis of proteins. The resistance level or intensity of exercise also influences intramuscular and intermuscular coordination.

Metabolic Reactions

According to the energetic hypothesis of muscle cell hypertrophy described in chapter 3, the crucial factor determining the balance between protein catabolism and anabolism is the amount of energy available for protein synthesis during exercise. If the resistance is relatively small, the energy available in the muscle cell is conveyed for muscle action and, at the same time, for anabolism of muscle proteins. Thus, the energy supply satisfies both requirements. During heavy weightlifting, a larger amount of energy is provided to the contractile muscle elements and spent on muscular work. Energy transfer for the synthesis of proteins decreases, while the rate of protein breakdown (the amount of degraded protein per lift) increases. The rate of protein degradation is a function of the weight lifted: The heavier the weight, the higher the rate of protein degradation.

The total amount of degraded protein, however, is a function of both the rate of protein catabolism and the mechanical work performed (or the total weight lifted). Mechanical work is greater when resistance is moderate and several consecutive lifts are performed in one set. For instance, if an athlete presses a 100-kg barbell 1 time (this athlete's RM), the total weight lifted is also 100 kg. However, the same athlete should be able to lift a 75-kg barbell (to failure) about 10 times; here the total weight lifted equals 750 kg.

The mass of proteins catabolized during heavy resistive exercise can be presented as a product of the rate of protein breakdown and the number of lifts. If the resistance is very large (e.g., 1RM), the rate of protein breakdown is high but the number of repetitions is small. At the other extreme, if the resistance is small (50RM), the number of lifts and amount of mechanical work are great, but the rate of protein degradation is low. So the total amount of the degraded protein is small in both cases, but for different reasons (table 4.1).

An additional feature of such training, and an important one from a practical standpoint, is the very high training volume or total amount of weight lifted during a workout. This amount is up to five or six times greater than the amount lifted during a conventional training routine. Athletes who train over a

Table 4.1 Amount of Degraded Protein During Strength Training With Different Levels of Resistance

Resistance (RM)	Rate of protein degradation	Mechanical work (number of repetitions)	Total amount of degraded protein
1	High	Small	Small
5-10	Average	Average	Large
>25	Low	Large	Small

Exercising With Various Weights: Mechanical Work and Metabolic Response

An athlete whose best achievement in barbell squatting is 150 kg performs squats with 150-, 120-, and 90-kg barbells. His body weight is 77.5 kg and the weight of body parts above the knee joints is 70 kg (only this part of the body is lifted during squatting; the feet and shanks are almost motionless). Thus, the weights lifted (the barbell plus the body) are 220, 290, and 160 kg. The distance that the center of gravity is raised (the difference between the lowest and the highest position of the center of gravity) is 1 m. The athlete lifts the 150-kg barbell 1 repetition, the 120-kg barbell 10 repetitions, and the 90-kg barbell 25 repetitions. The mechanical work produced equals 220 kg·m for the heaviest barbell (220 kg multiplied by 1 rep and 1 m), 1,900 kg·m for the 120-kg barbell, and 4,000 kg·m for the lightest one (160 kg multiplied by 25 reps and 1 m). Exercising with a light barbell, the athlete produces mechanical work 18 times greater than with the heaviest.

The metabolic energy expenditures are many times larger during exercise with the light barbell. However, protein degradation is maximized when squats are performed with the 120-kg (average) barbell. During squatting with the 160-kg barbell, the intensity of protein catabolism (the amount of degraded proteins per repetition) is very high. This barbell, however, is lifted one time only. When the athlete executes the squats with the light (90-kg) barbell, the intensity of protein degradation is low. So the amount of degraded protein is low in spite of the huge value of mechanical work produced. Thus, the 120-kg load provides this particular athlete with the best combination of training intensity and volume (total load lifted).

This example illustrates what happens in a single set of lifts. Total metabolic stress from an exercise session depends also on the rest allowed between the sets (see chapter 5).

certain period of time in this manner (to gain body weight and induce muscle cell hypertrophy in order to compete in a heavier weight class) amass a training volume in one workout of over 20 to 30 tons and, in some cases, above 50 tons a day. Such volume hinders an athlete's capacity to perform other exercises during this period of training.

Intramuscular Coordination

Lifting maximal weight has a number of effects on motor units (MUs): A maximum number of MUs are activated, the fastest MUs are recruited, the discharge frequency of motoneurons is at its highest, and the activity of MUs is synchronous.

MUs do exist, however, that many athletes cannot recruit or activate to the optimal firing rate in spite of sincere efforts to develop maximal force. It is well known that high-threshold (fast) units possess a higher maximal discharge frequency. However, investigators have shown that, in untrained people during maximal voluntary contractions, many high-threshold MUs may exhibit a lower firing frequency than low-threshold MUs. This is so because the fast MUs are not fully activated even though the individual is attempting to attain maximal forces.

The "hidden potential" of a human muscle to develop higher forces can also be demonstrated by electrostimulation. During maximum voluntary contraction, the muscle is stimulated with electrical current. The stimulus induces an increase in force production above the maximal voluntary level. The ratio

100(Force during electrostimulation – Maximal voluntary force) / Maximal voluntary force

is called the **muscle strength deficit (MSD).** The MSD typically falls in the range of 5 to 35%. The MSD is smaller for elite athletes; it is smaller also when a person is anxious or when only small muscles are activated. The very existence of the MSD indicates that human muscles typically have hidden reserves for maximal force production that are not used during voluntary efforts.

One objective of heavy resistance training is to teach an athlete to recruit all the necessary MUs at a firing rate that is optimal for producing a fused tetanus in each motor fiber. When submaximal weights are lifted, an intermediate number of MUs are activated; the fastest MUs are not recruited; the discharge frequency of the motoneurons is submaximal; and MU activity is asynchronous (see figure 3.10 on page 62). It is easy to see differences in intramuscular coordination between exercises with maximal versus submaximal weightlifting. Accordingly, exercises with moderate resistance are not an effective means of training for strength development, particularly when improved intramuscular coordination is desired.

Many experts believe that, in the preparation of elite weightlifters, optimal intramuscular coordination is realized when weights equal to or above TF_{mm} are used in workouts. It is not mandatory from this standpoint to lift CF_{mm} during training sessions. Differences in the best performances attained during training sessions (i.e., TF_{mm}) and during important competition (i.e., CF_{mm}) are explained by psychological factors such as the level of arousal and by increased rest before a contest (recall the two-factor theory of training in chapter 1). Differences in coordination (intra- and intermuscular), however, are small and do not affect performance. Weights above TF_{mm} are used only sporadically in training (for approximately 3.5-7.0% of all the lifts).

What Happens When a Nonmaximal Load Is Lifted?

A person curls a 30-kg dumbbell, causing the following to occur: (a) the maximal number of MUs are recruited; (b) the fast MUs, which are also the strongest, are activated; (c) the discharge frequency of motoneurons is optimal; and (d) motoneuron activity is (maybe) synchronous.

However, when a 15-kg dumbbell is lifted, (a) only a portion of the total MUs are recruited, (b) the fastest (and strongest) MUs are not activated, (c) the frequency of neural stimulation is not optimal, and (d) MU activity is (surely) asynchronous.

Intramuscular coordination in the two activities is substantially different. Thus, lifting a 15-kg load cannot improve the intramuscular coordination required to overcome a 30-kg resistance.

Biomechanical Variables and Intermuscular Coordination

When an athlete lifts maximal weights, movement velocity reaches its ultimate value and then remains nearly constant. Acceleration of the barbell varies near the zero level and the force is more or less equal to the weight of the object lifted.

In the lifting of moderate weights, there can be two variations. In figure 4.3*a*, efforts are maximally applied. Acceleration increases in the initial phase of the lift, then falls to zero and becomes negative in the second phase of the motion. At the beginning the force applied to the barbell is greater than the weight lifted and then decreases. The second part of the motion is partially fulfilled via the barbell's kinetic energy. In this type of lifting, muscular coordination differs from that used in the lifting of maximal or near-maximal weights. That is, muscular efforts are concentrated (accentuated) only in the first half of the movement.

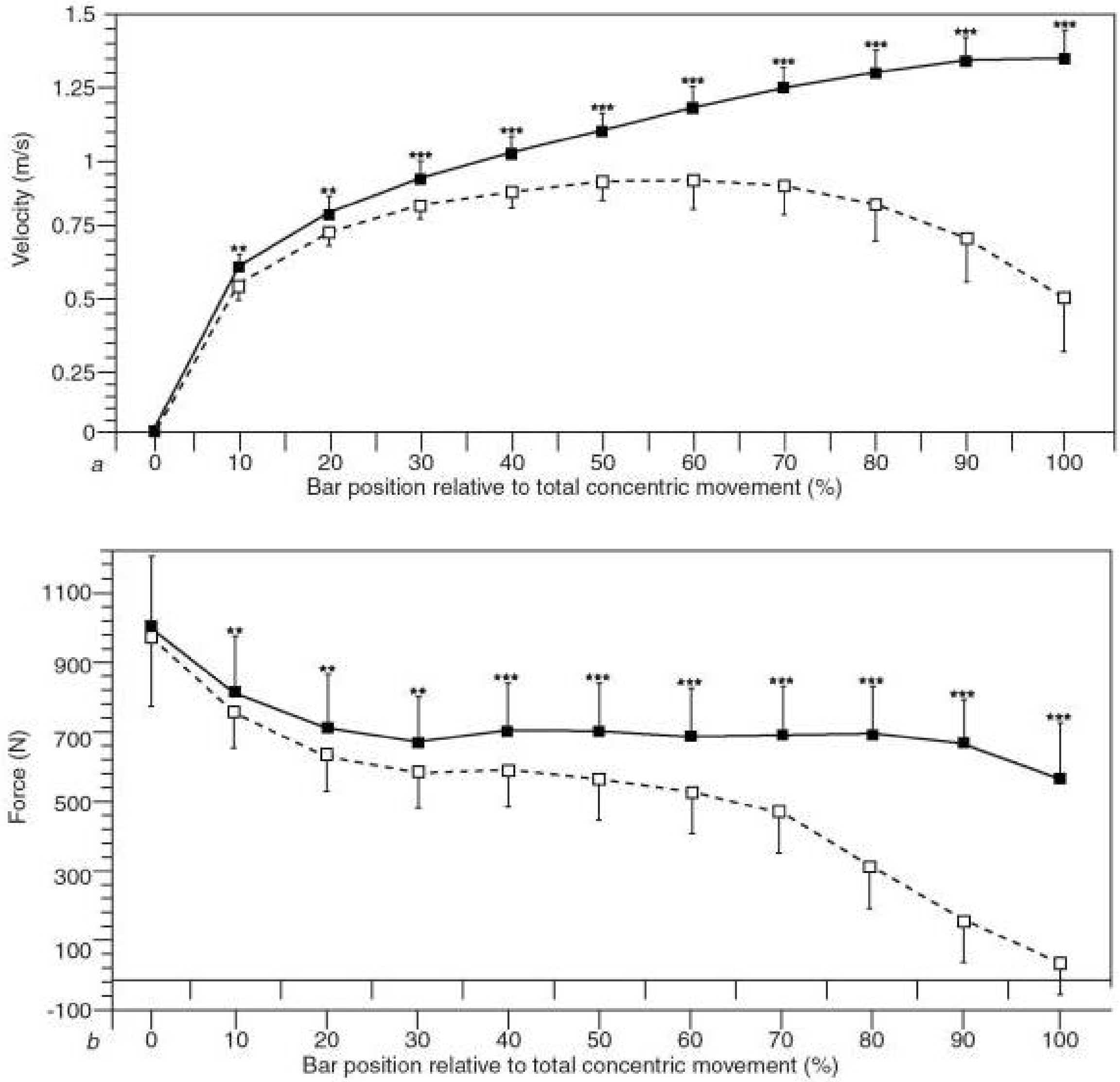


Figure 4.3 Bar velocity *(a)* and force exerted on the bar *(b)* during explosive bench press (dotted lines) and explosive bench throw (solid lines). Mean values and standard deviations (17 subjects); a bar weight is 45% of the individual 1RM. Stars indicate statistically significant differences between the press and throw values, $^{**}p < .01$; $^{***}p < .001$. In the final stages of the movement, the values of velocity and force during rapid press movements are smaller than during the throws. The same is valid for the level of muscle activity (not shown in the figure). The authors concluded that because during weightlifting the load must stop at the end of the lift, attempting to perform the lifts in an explosive manner while holding on to the bar with a light load will result in reduced velocity, force output, and muscle activation compared to the throw movements. The throws are also more specific to the explosive movements typically used in sport performance.

Reprinted, by permission, from R.U. Newton et al., 1996, "Kinematics, kinetics, and muscle activation during explosive upper body movements," *Journal of Applied Biomechanics* 12(1): 32-43.

In the second instance, kinematic variables of the movement (velocity, acceleration) are similar to those observed when a person does a maximal lift. Acceleration, and the corresponding external force applied to the barbell, is almost constant. However, this motion pattern—the intentionally slow lift—involves the coactivation of **antagonistic muscle groups.** Such intermuscular coordination hampers the manifestation of maximum strength values (figure 4.3*b*).

Differences in underlying physiological mechanisms, experienced when exercising with various loads, explain why muscular strength increases only when exercises requiring high forces are used in training. In principle, workloads must be above those normally encountered. The resistance against which the muscle groups work must continually be increased as strength gains are made (this is called the principle of progressive resistance exercises).

In untrained individuals, the measured strength levels fall when resistance is below 20% of their F_{mm}. In athletes accustomed to great muscular efforts, this drop in strength can begin even with loads that are relatively heavy, but below their usual level. For instance, if qualified weightlifters train with weights of 60 to 85% TF_{mm} and do not lift these loads in 1 set to failure (to fatigue), the strength level is kept constant over the first month of such training and drops 5 to 7% during the second month. Athletes in seasonal sports, such as rowing, lose strength levels previously attained in the preseason training if they do not use high-resistance training during a season period, regardless of intense specific workouts.

Qualified athletes retain only muscle size, not muscular strength, when they use exclusively moderate (nonmaximal) resistances and moderate (nonmaximal) repetitions over a period of several months.

TRAINING INTENSITY OF ELITE ATHLETES

The training experience of elite athletes is a useful source of information in sport science. This experience, although it does not provide sound scientific proof of the optimality of the training routines employed, reflects the most efficient training pattern known at the present time. In the future, gains in knowledge will certainly influence training protocols. Currently, however, we do not know precisely what the best approaches are.

The distribution of training weights in the conditioning of elite weightlifters is shown in figure 4.4. Notice that elite athletes use a broad spectrum of loads. They use loads below 60% of CF_{mm} mainly for warming up and restitution (these loads account for 8% of all the lifts). The highest proportion of weights lifted (35%) consists of those 70 to 80% of the CF_{mm}. In agreement with these data and

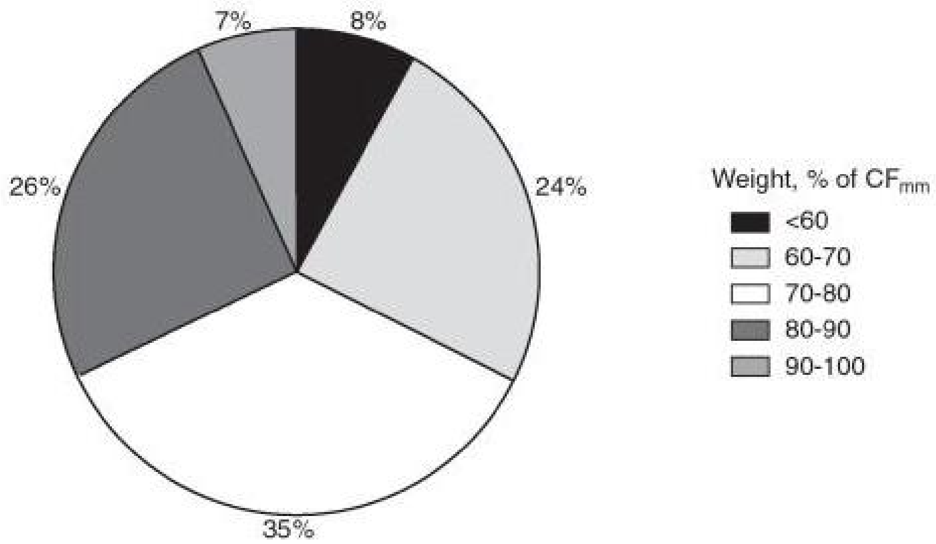


Figure 4.4 The distribution of weights lifted by members of the USSR Olympic team during preparation for the 1988 Olympic Games. The exercises were divided into two groups: snatch related and clean related. The weight lifted is expressed as a percentage of CF_{mm} in main sport exercises (either in snatch or clean and jerk). Squatting with the barbell is not included in this analysis. One year of direct observations.

Adapted, by permission, from V.M. Zatsiorsky, 1991, *Training load in strength training of elite athletes.* Paper presented at the Second OIC World Congress on Sport Sciences, Barcelona, October.

as observed over many years, the average weight lifted by superior athletes is equal to 75.0 ± 2.0% of CF_{mm}. Loads above 90% of CF_{mm} account for only 7% of all lifts.

The number of repetitions per set varies by exercise. In both the snatch and the clean and jerk lifts (figure 4.5), the majority of all sets are performed with 1 to 3 repetitions. In the snatch, only 1.8% of the sets are done with 4 or 5 repetitions; in the clean and jerk, the percentage of sets with 4 to 6 lifts is no more than 5.4%. The majority of sets, roughly 55 to 60%, consist of 2 repetitions.

In auxiliary strength exercises such as squatting with a barbell, where motor coordination only partially resembles the coordination in the snatch and clean and jerk, the number of repetitions in one set increases. In barbell squats, for instance, the number of lifts varies from 1 to 10, with the average range being 3 to 6 (recall figure 4.2).

Generally speaking, as the intermuscular coordination in an exercise becomes simpler and as the technique of the exercise deviates from the technique of the main sport event (in this example, from the technique of both

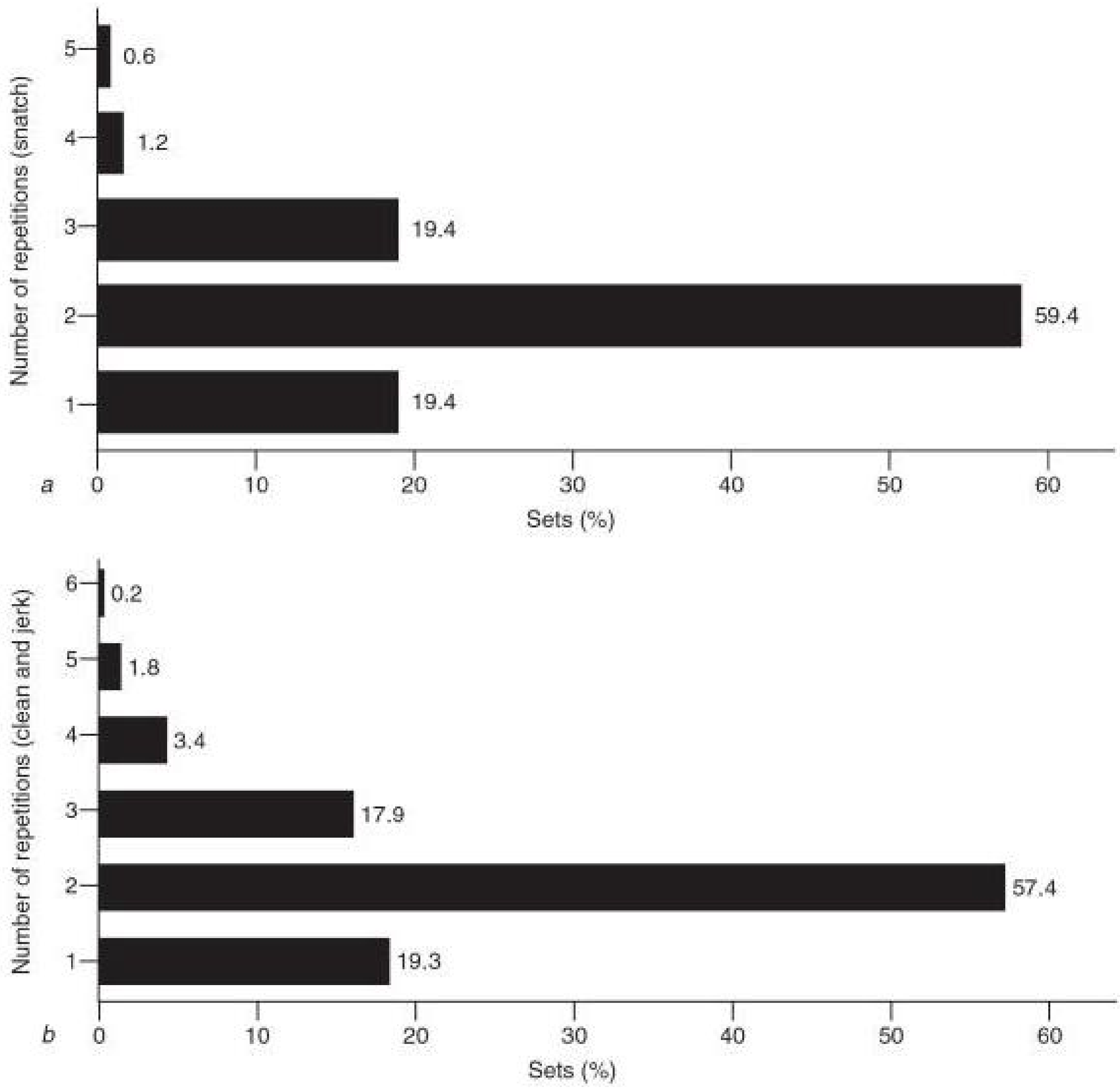


Figure 4.5 The percentage of sets with various numbers of lifts in *(a)* the snatch and *(b)* the clean and jerk in the training of superior athletes.

Adapted, by permission, from V.M. Zatsiorsky, 1991, *Training load in strength training of elite athletes.* Paper presented at the Second OIC World Congress on Sport Sciences, Barcelona, October.

the snatch and clean and jerk), the number of repetitions increases. In the clean and jerk, the number of repetitions is 1 to 3 (57.4% of sets contain 2 lifts only); the typical number of repetitions in squatting is 3 to 5, and in the inverse curl the average number of lifts is around 5 to 7 per set (figure 4.6).

The number of repetitions with maximal resistance (near CF_{mm}) is relatively low. During the 1984 to 1988 Olympic training cycle, elite Soviet athletes lifted a barbell of such weight in main sport exercises (snatch, clean and jerk) 300 to 600 times a year. This amount comprised 1.5 to 3.0% of all performed lifts. The weights were further distributed as follows:

Weight of barbell, % of CF_{mm}	***Number of lifts, %***
90-92.5	65
92.6-97.5	20
97.6-100	15

In the 1-month period before important competitions, weights above 90% of CF_{mm} are lifted in the snatch or clean and jerk, or a combination of the two, 40 to 60 times.

During the 1970s and 1980s, the Soviet and Bulgarian weightlifting teams won almost all gold medals at the world and Olympic competitions. It has often been reported that

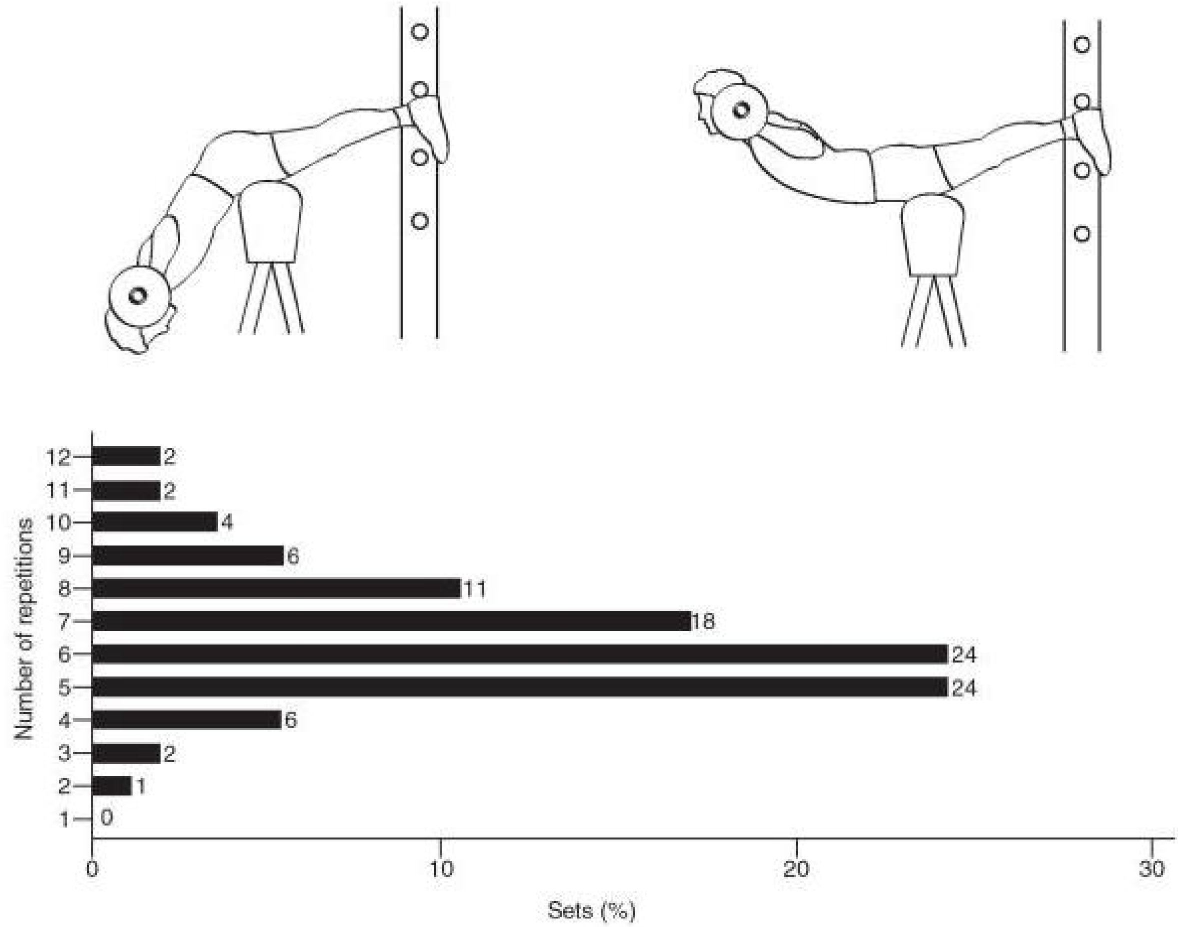


Figure 4.6 Inverse curl and the percentages of sets with different numbers of lifts in this exercise. Results of direct observations in the training of V. Alexeev, 1972 and 1976 Olympic champion in weightlifting (superheavyweight category) in a total of 130 sets.

From *Preparation of the National Olympic Team in weight lifting to the 1980 Olympic Games in Moscow,* 1981, (Moscow, Russia: Russian State Aademy of Physical Education and Sport). Technical report #1981-34. By permission of Russian State Academy of Physical Education and Sport.

Bulgarian weightlifters lift barbells of maximal weight more than 4,000 times a year. The training intensity of Bulgarian athletes was actually higher than that for athletes of the former Soviet Union. However, the real source of such a huge discrepancy (600 versus 4,000 lifts a year) is not the training itself, but the method of determining maximal weight. In their plans and logs athletes of the former Soviet Union used CF_{mm}, while Bulgarians stuck to the TF_{mm} designation (1RM in a given training session).

OPTIMAL TRAINING INTENSITIES FROM COMPARATIVE RESEARCH

Elite athletes do not perform all drills at the same intensity. For instance, the exercise intensity in main Olympic weightlifting exercises—the snatch and the clean and jerk—is much larger than in the inverse curl (see figures 4.5 and 4.6). Such a training pattern is difficult to model in experiments.

To determine optimal exercise intensity for strength training, researchers have conducted many experiments. The idea was to train athletes differently and at different RMs, and then determine the intensity that yielded on average the best performance improvement (the optimal intensity). Unfortunately, the results from different studies are difficult to compare, mainly because of the abundance of confounding factors such as differences among the subjects (gender, age, training experience) as well as among the training routines employed in various studies (number of sets, training frequency, trained muscle groups, exercises). Nevertheless, when the results of many studies are compared—such a quantitative analysis of the published data is called **meta-analysis**—it seems that for the athletes with more than 1 year of training experience the intensity of 80% of 1RM is close to optimal (figure 4.7). Untrained individuals experienced maximal gains by training with an intensity of 60% of 1RM, 3 days a week, employing 4 sets per muscle group.

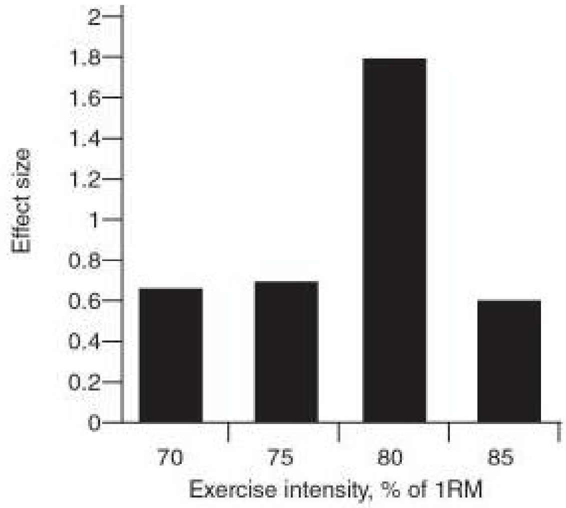


Figure 4.7 Performance improvement as a function of training intensity, average data. The effect size = (Posttraining mean – Pretraining mean) / Pretraining standard deviation. The figure is based on the meta-analysis of 140 studies with a total of 1,433 effect sizes. Note that in each experimental group the subjects trained at the same intensity in all exercises (% of 1 F_{mm}) while elite athletes use different intensities in different exercises.

Data from M.R. Rhea et al., 2003, "A meta-analysis to determine the dose response for strength development," *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise* 35(3): 456-464.

Returning to the training routines of elite athletes described previously, it should be noted that these repetition levels should not be mechanically copied. Rather, coaches and athletes need to understand the ideas underlying such training (the training conception) and, if they accept this conception, thoughtfully implement it. The training conception described in the ensuing text includes understanding specific features of different training methods, proper exercise selection, and timing of training.

METHODS OF STRENGTH TRAINING

It is useful to classify strength training according to methods of attaining maximal muscular tension. In the literature, methods of strength training are sometimes classified according to the exercises used (i.e., isometric, isotonic, eccentric). We prefer to use this classification as a taxonomy of strength exercises rather than training methods. There are three ways to achieve maximal muscular tension:

1. Lifting a maximum load (exercising against maximal resistance)—that is, the **maximal effort method**
2. Lifting a nonmaximal load to failure; during the final repetitions the muscles develop the maximum force possible in a fatigued state—that is, the **repeated effort method**
3. Lifting (throwing) a nonmaximal load with the highest attainable speed—that is, the **dynamic effort method**

In addition, the lifting of nonmaximal loads an intermediate number of times (not to failure) is used as a supplementary training method (the **submaximal effort method**).

Maximal Effort Method

The method of maximal effort is considered superior for improving both intramuscular and intermuscular coordination; the muscles and central nervous system (CNS) adapt only to the load placed on them. This method should be used to bring forth the greatest strength increments. CNS inhibition, if it exists, is reduced with this approach; thus, the maximal number of MUs is activated with optimal discharge frequency and the biomechanical parameters of movement and intermuscular coordination are similar to the analogous values in a main sport exercise. A trainee then learns to enhance and memorize these changes in motor coordination (on a subconscious level).

We saw earlier that with this method the magnitude of resistance should be close to TF_{mm}. To avoid high emotional stress, CF_{mm} must be included only intermittently in the training routine. If the aim of a training drill is to train movement (i.e., both intramuscular and intermuscular coordination are the object of training), the recommended number of repetitions per set is 1 to 3. Exercises such as the snatch or the clean and jerk are examples (see figure 4.5 on page 78). When the training of muscles rather than movement training is the objective of the drill (i.e., the biomechanical parameters of the exercise and intermuscular coordination are not of primary importance since the drill is not specific and is different in technique from the main exercise), the number of repetitions increases. One example is the inverse curl (figure 4.6 on page 79), where the typical number of repetitions is 4 to 8. The number of repetitions in squatting, on the other hand, usually falls in the range of 2 to 6 (figure 4.2 on page 72).

Although the method of maximum efforts is popular among superior athletes, it has several limitations and cannot be recommended for beginners. The primary limitation is the high risk of injury. Only after the proper technique for the exercise (e.g., barbell squat) is acquired and the relevant muscles (spinal erectors and abdomen) are adequately developed is it permissible to lift maximal weights. In some exercises, such as sit-ups, this method is rarely used. Another limitation is that maximum effort, when employed with a small number of repetitions (1 or 2), has relatively little ability to induce muscle hypertrophy. This is the case because only a minor amount of mechanical work is performed and the amount of degraded contractile proteins is in turn limited.

Finally, because of the high motivational level needed to lift maximal weights, athletes using this method can easily become burned out. The staleness syndrome is characterized by

- decreased vigor,
- elevated anxiety and depression,
- sensation of fatigue in the morning hours,
- increased perception of effort while lifting a fixed weight, and
- high blood pressure at rest.

This response is typical if CF_{mm} rather than TF_{mm} is used too frequently in workouts. Staleness depends not only on the weight lifted but also on the type of exercise used. It is easier to lift maximal weights in the bench

Strength Training Methods

An athlete's best performance in a front barbell squat is 100 kg. He is able to lift this weight one time only in a given set (1RM).

The athlete has the following variants from which to choose for strength training:

- Lift 100 kg (maximal effort method).
- Lift a load smaller than 100 kg, perhaps 75 kg, either a submaximal number of times (submaximal effort method) or to failure (repeated effort method).
- Lift (move) a submaximal load at maximal velocity, for example, jump for height with a heavy waist belt (dynamic effort method).

press (where the barbell can be simply fixed and where the leg and trunk muscles are not activated) than in the clean and jerk, where demands for the activation of leg and trunk muscles, and for balance and arousal, are much higher.

Submaximal Effort Method and Repeated Effort Method

Methods using submaximal versus repeated efforts differ only in the number of repetitions per set—intermediate in the first case and maximal (to failure) in the second. The stimulation of muscle hypertrophy is similar for the two methods. According to the energetic hypothesis described in chapter 3, two factors are of primary importance for inducing a discrepancy in the amount of degraded and newly synthesized proteins. These are the rate of protein degradation and the total value of performed mechanical work. If the number of lifts is not maximal, mechanical work diminishes somewhat. However, if the amount of work is relatively close to maximal values (e.g., if 10 lifts are performed instead of the 12 maximum possible), then the difference is not really crucial. It may be compensated for in various ways, for instance by shortening time intervals between sequential sets. It is a common belief that the maximal number of repetitions in a set is desirable, but not necessary, to induce muscle hypertrophy.

The situation is different, though, if the main objective of a heavy resistance drill is to learn a proper muscle coordination pattern. The explanation is based on the size principle of MU recruitment and can be called the size principle theory of strength training. The theory has three main postulates:

1. Recruitment order of the MUs is determined by the size principle.
2. Only recruited MUs are trained.
3. The recruited MUs should experience fatigue (or at least, they should be highly activated, meaning the discharge frequency of their motoneurons should be sufficiently large).

We will explain the theory with an example. Suppose an athlete is lifting a 12RM barbell at a given rate of 1 lift per second. The muscle subjected to training consists of MUs having different endurance times from 1 to perhaps 100 s (in reality, some slow MUs have a much greater endurance time; they may be active for dozens of minutes without any sign of fatigue). The maximal number of lifts to fatigue among MUs varies, naturally, from 1 to 100. If the athlete lifts the barbell only 1 time, one division of the MUs is recruited and the second is not (see again figure 3.10 on page 62). According to the size principle, the slow, fatigue-resistant MUs are recruited first. After several lifts, some of the recruited MUs become fatigued. Obviously, MUs possessing the shortest endurance time become exhausted. After 10 repetitions, for instance, only MUs with an endurance time under 10 s are exhausted. Since the exhausted MUs cannot now develop the same tension as at the beginning, new MUs are recruited. These newly recruited high-threshold MUs are fast and nonresistant to fatigue. Thus they become exhausted very quickly. If only 10 lifts of the 12 maximum possible are performed, the entire

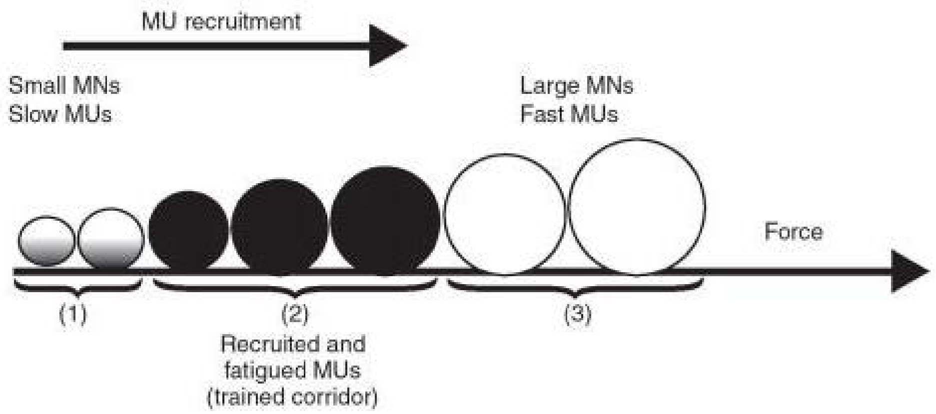


Figure 4.8 Subpopulations of motor units (MU) utilized during strength exercises when nonmaximal weights are lifted. (1) MUs that are recruited but not fatigued. (2) MUs that are recruited and fatigued. (3) MUs that are not recruited.

population of MUs is distributed into three divisions (figure 4.8).

1. **MUs that are recruited but not fatigued.** If they are not fatigued, they are not trained. All MUs having an endurance time above 10 s are in this category. It is evident that this subpopulation consists of slow MUs. The slow MUs are recruited at a low level of the required force and thus are activated regularly during everyday activities. Nevertheless, without special training their force does not increase. The conclusion that seems warranted from this finding is that it is very difficult to increase the maximal force of slow, fatigue-resistant MUs. Thus, a positive correlation exists between strength enhancement and the percentage of fast-twitch muscle fibers. Individuals with a high percentage of fast MUs not only tend to be stronger but also gain strength faster as a result of strength training (figure 4.9).

2. **MUs that are recruited and exhausted.** These are the only MUs subjected to a training stimulus in this set. These MUs possess intermediate features. In this subpopulation, there are no slowest MUs (that are recruited but not fatigued) or fastest MUs (not recruited). The **corridor** of MUs subjected to a training stimulus may be relatively narrow or broad depending on the weight lifted and the number of repetitions in a set. One objective of a strength program can be to increase the subpopulation of MUs influenced by training, or to broaden the corridor.

3. **MUs that are not recruited.** Since they are not recruited they are not trained. Note that this subpopulation includes the fastest and strongest high-threshold MUs.

If the exercise is performed to failure or close to it (repeated effort method), the picture is changed in the final lifts. A maximal number of available MUs are now recruited. All recruited MUs are divided now into two subpopulations: exhausted (fatigued) and nonexhausted (nonfatigued). The training effect is substantial on the first group only. If the total number of repetitions is below 12, all MUs with endurance times above 12 s fall into the second group. In spite of their early recruitment, these MUs are not exhausted (because of their high endurance).

When maximal weights are lifted (maximal effort method), the MU corridor includes a smaller number of MUs (figure 4.10) than is the case when a submaximal weight is lifted a maximum possible number of repetitions. This is certainly a disadvantage for the method of maximal efforts. Only fast MUs are subjected to the training effect in this case. However, the advantages of the method outweigh any drawbacks.

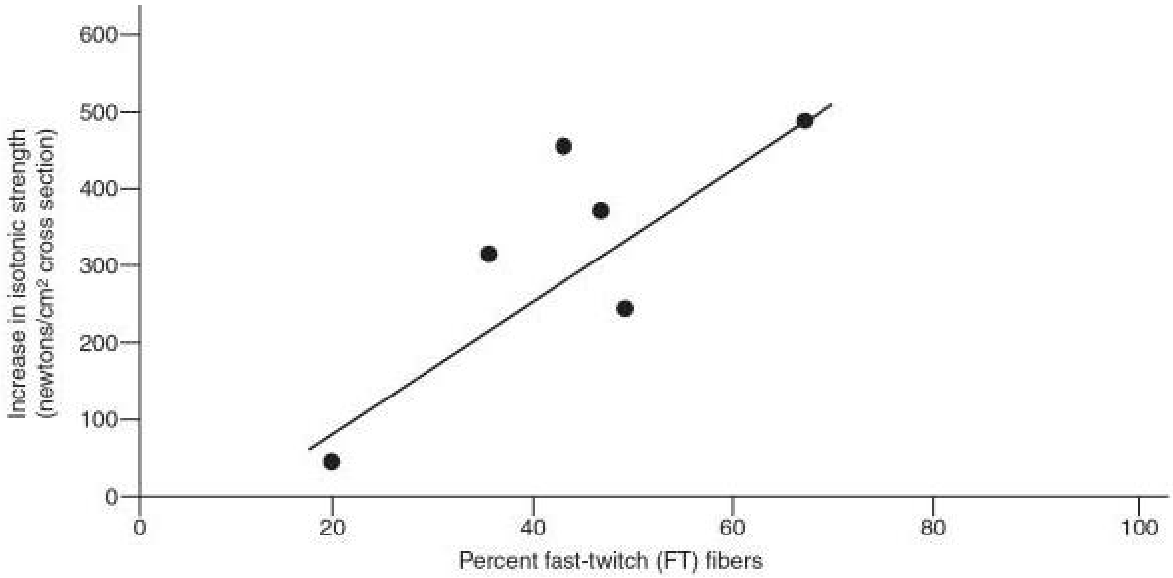


Figure 4.9 The increase in strength per unit of muscle cross-sectional area versus the percentage of fast-twitch muscle fiber distribution.

Reprinted, by permission, from B. Dons et al., 1979, "The effects of weight-lifting exercise related to muscle fiber composition and muscle cross-sectional area in humans," *European Journal of Applied Physiology* 40: 95-106.

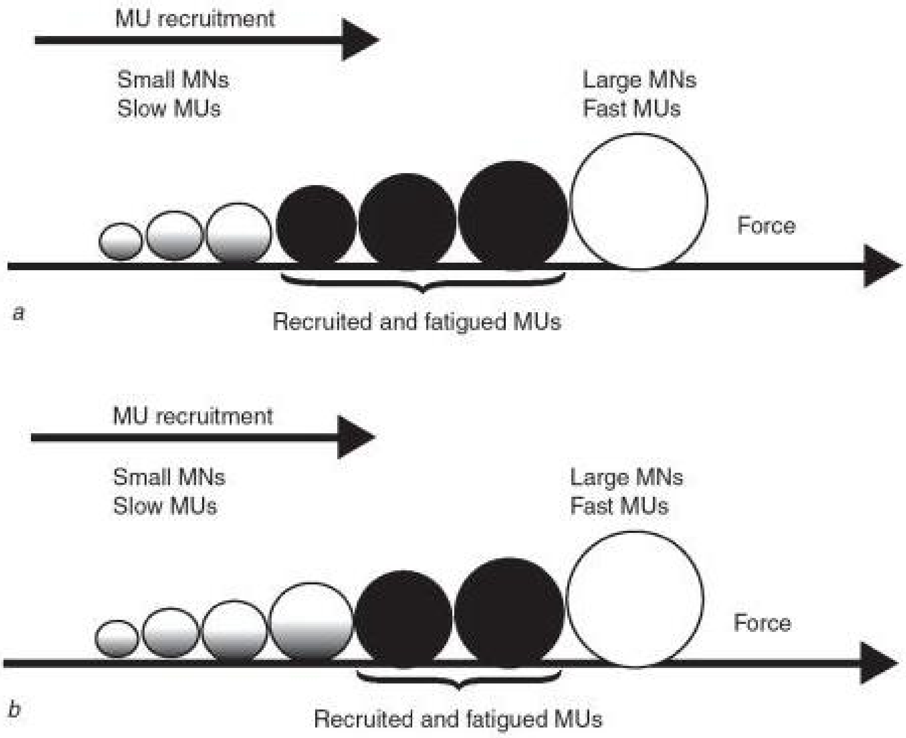


Figure 4.10 Subpopulations of motor units during the *(a)* repeated and *(b)* maximal effort methods. In both methods, almost all MUs are recruited (although, if you are not an elite strength athlete, probably some fast MUs are still not activated), and fast MUs are primarily trained. On the contrary, some slow MUs are not trained or trained not much.

Avoid Overexertion

Be reasonable. Using a muscle too much, too soon, too often may induce **rhabdomyolysis,** the breakdown of muscle fibers resulting in the release of muscle fiber contents into circulation. Some of these contents are toxic and may result in kidney damage. The symptoms of rhabdomyolysis are abnormal urine color (dark, red, or cola colored), muscle pain, and weakness. People at risk include inexperienced exercisers, such as military recruits in basic training; dehydrated or heat-stressed performers; and individuals under severe exertion such as marathon or triathlon participants. In the medical literature, several cases of exertional rhabdomyolysis in experienced athletes have been reported. In some cases the overexertion was encouraged by personal trainers (e.g., the instructors assisted the exhausted athletes in walking from one exercise machine to another). Such extreme overexertion is potentially dangerous and should be avoided. If rhabdomyolysis is suspected (e.g., if the urine is dark), medical diagnosis and treatment should be sought.

When the repeated effort method is used with a specific aim to train the MUs that are highest in recruitment order (i.e., those MUs that are innervated by the largest motoneurons; the strongest and fastest high-threshold MUs), the athlete should lift the weight with sincere exertions to failure (maximum number of times). This requirement is important. Popular sayings among coaches—"Do it as many times as you can and *after that* three more times" and "No gain without pain"—reflect the demand very well. With this method, the final lifts in which a maximal number of MUs are recruited are considered most useful. If an athlete can lift a barbell 12 times but lifts only 10, the exercise set is worthless for the training of the MUs that are highest in the recruitment order: These MUs were not activated in this set, as they would be recruited only during the last 2 lifts that were not performed. However, the set can still be useful for training the MUs that are lower in the recruitment order.

Compared to the maximal effort method, the repeated effort method has pros and cons. There are three important advantages to the repeated effort approach. It has a greater influence on muscle metabolism and consequently on the inducement of muscle hypertrophy. In addition, it involves a greater subpopulation of trained MUs (see figure 4.10) and poses a relatively low injury risk. This method also has limitations. The final lifts in a set are executed when the muscles are tired; thus, this training is less effective than lifting with maximal weights. Moreover, the very large training volume (the total amount of weight lifted) restricts the application of this method in the training of qualified athletes. Note, however, that the large amount of mechanical work performed can be considered an advantage if the objective of the exercise is general health and fitness rather than specific strength enhancement.

All the methods described are, and should be, used together in the strength training of qualified athletes. Many have attempted to answer the question: What kind of training is more effective—lifting of maximal or intermediate weights? This is similar to the question of whether 800-m runners should run in training distances shorter or longer than 800 m. They should run both. The same holds true for athletes training strength: They should employ exercises with different RMs.

Dynamic Effort Method

Because of the existence of the explosive-strength deficit (see chapter 2), it is impossible to attain F_{mm} in fast movements against intermediate resistance. Therefore the method of dynamic effort is used not for increasing maximal strength but only to improve the rate of force development and explosive strength.

In conclusion, these combinations of methods can increase the maximum strength F_{mm}:

Method	Immediate purpose
Maximal efforts (use repeated efforts as a second choice)	Improve neuromuscular coordination • MU recruitment • Rate coding • MU synchronization • Coordination pattern
Repeated efforts (and submaximal efforts or both)	Stimulate muscle hypertrophy
Repeated efforts	Increase the corridor of recruited and trained MUs

SUMMARY

Training intensity can be estimated by the

- magnitude of resistance (i.e., weight lifted) expressed as a percentage of the best achievement attained during a competition (CF_{mm}) or in training (TF_{mm});
- the number of repetitions (lifts) per set; and
- the number (or percentage) of repetitions with maximal resistance (weight).

Exercising at varying levels of resistance causes differences in (a) metabolic reactions, (b) intramuscular coordination, and (c) biomechanical variables and intermuscular coordination. The produced mechanical work as well as the metabolic energy expenditures increase as the weight lifted decreases.

According to the energetic hypothesis, the rate of protein degradation is a function of the weight lifted: The heavier the weight, the higher the rate of protein degradation. The total amount of degraded protein, however, is the function of both the mechanical work performed (or the total weight lifted) and the rate of protein catabolism. The mass of proteins catabolized during heavy resistive exercise is a product of the rate of protein breakdown and the number of lifts. The mass is maximized when training intensity is between 5- to 6RM and 10- to 12RM.

The physiological size principle of MU recruitment serves as a background of the size principle theory of strength training. The theory is based on three main postulates: (a) The size principle is valid, (b) only recruited MUs are trained, and (c) to be trained the recruited MUs should experience fatigue (or at least, they should be highly activated, meaning the discharge frequency of their motoneurons should be sufficiently large). When an athlete lifts maximal weight, a maximum number of MUs are activated; the fastest MUs are recruited; the discharge frequency of motoneurons is at its highest; and MU activity is synchronous. One objective of heavy resistance training is to teach an athlete to recruit all the necessary MUs at a firing rate that is optimal for producing a fused tetanus in each motor fiber.

Elite weightlifters use a broad spectrum of loads, but the largest proportion of weights lifted is composed of those 70 to 80% of the CF_{mm}. The average weight these athletes lift is 75.0 ± 2.0% of CF_{mm}. These repetition levels should not be mechanically copied, but rather, thoughtfully implemented.

Strength training can be accomplished in three ways: (a) lifting a maximum load (exercising against maximal resistance)—the maximal effort method; (b) lifting a nonmaximal (but sufficiently large) load to fatigue, with the muscles developing the maximum force possible in a fatigued state during the final repetitions—the repeated effort method; and (c) lifting (or throwing) a nonmaximal load with the highest attainable speed—the dynamic effort method. In addition, the lifting of nonmaximal loads an intermediate number of times (not to failure) is used as a supplementary training method (the submaximal effort method).

The maximal effort approach is considered superior for improving both intramuscular and intermuscular coordination: The maximal number of MUs is activated with optimal discharge frequency. When you use this training method, the magnitude of resistance should be close to TF_{mm}. If the aim of a training drill is to train movement, the recommended number of repetitions per set is 1 to 3. When the aim is to train muscles, on the other hand, the number of repetitions increases. The maximal effort method, while popular among superior athletes, has several limitations (i.e., high risk of injury, staleness). It also has a relatively small potential to stimulate muscle hypertrophy.

The submaximal effort and the repeated effort methods are similar in their ability to induce muscle hypertrophy. They are, however, rather different with respect to training muscular strength, especially improving the neuromuscular coordination required for maximal force production. The submaximal effort method (the lifting of nonmaximal loads, but not to failure) does not seem to be effective for training MUs that are highest in the recruitment order and improving specific intramuscular coordination. When the repeated effort method is used to train high-threshold MUs (i.e., those MUs that are innervated by the largest motoneurons; the strongest and fastest MUs), the athlete should lift the weight with sincere exertions to failure (maximum number of times). Only final lifts, in which a maximal number of MUs are recruited, are actually useful in this case. The saying, "No pain, no gain" reflects this demand.

chapter 5

Timing in Strength Training

The distribution of exercises and a training load over certain time periods, or the **timing of training,** is a matter of primary importance for the outcome of an athlete's preparation. Two main problems in this area are how to space work and rest intervals and how to sequence exercises.

STRUCTURAL UNITS OF TRAINING

Training can be divided into structural units. It is customary to identify these structural units as training session (workout), training day, microcycle, mesocycle, macrocycle, Olympic cycle (quadrennial cycle), and long-lasting, or multiyear, training.

The **training session** (workout) is generally viewed as a lesson comprising rest periods not longer than 30 min. The reason for such a definition, which initially appears too formal, is the need to describe training in sports in which a daily portion of exercises is distributed among several workouts. An example of such a training routine is given in table 5.1. According to the definition, athletes in this instance have only two workouts a day. Training drills separated by 30-min rest intervals are considered part of one training session. This all-day schedule is a good example of the training day of world-class athletes. One renowned athlete once joked, "My life is very rich and diversified. It consists of five parts—training, competitions, flights, sleep, and meals." This is very close to reality.

To appraise the training load of different workouts, the time needed to recover from one training session is used, according to the following classification:

Training Load of One Workout	*Restoration Time (hr)*
Extreme	72
Large	48-72
Substantial	24-48
Medium	12-24
Small	<12

A **microcycle,** the third category, is the grouping of several training days. The run of a microcycle in the preparation period is usually 1 week. In the competition period, the length of a microcycle is typically adjusted to the duration of the main competition. For instance, if a competition in wrestling lasts 3 days, it is advisable to employ microcycles of the same duration. Usually, a general framework of microcycles is routinely reproduced over a relatively long period of time (that is why it is called a cycle).

A **mesocycle** is a system of several microcycles. Typically, the duration is 4 weeks with a possible range of 2 to 6 weeks. The duration and even the existence of mesocycles in the training of Eastern European athletes were influenced by the practice of centralized preparation. The best athletes were once prepared in training camps throughout the year, mainly for logistical reasons; shortages in food and other important goods at home made it impossible to create normal training conditions. Such training management has its pros and cons, however. The enhanced competitiveness and increased possibilities for obtaining and sharing information are positive features. On the other hand, the standard environment, life without one's family, and the necessity of living and communicating with a single group of people, who are often rivals in the same sport, impose additional psychological burdens on the athlete. To reduce this psychological stress and to diversify the environment, training camp locations were regularly changed. Interviews of the athletes showed that they preferred 4-week training camps interspersed with 1- or 2-week visits home.

There is no reason to reproduce in full this pattern in the West; however, some elements

Table 5.1 Everyday Training Schedule of the Bulgarian Olympic Weightlifting Team

Time	Mon, Wed, Fri	Tues, Thurs, Sat
9:00-10:00	Snatch	Snatch
10:00-10:30	Rest	Rest
10:30-11:30	Clean and jerk	Clean and jerk
11:30-12:30	Exercise	Exercise
12:30-1:00	Rest	Exercise
1:00-5:00	Rest	Rest
5:00-5:30	Exercise	Exercise
5:30-6:00	Exercise	Rest
6:00-6:30	Rest	Exercise
6:30-8:30	Exercise	Rest
Total exercise time	6 h	4.5 h

of the described training timing, mesocycles included, are undoubtedly useful. Mesocycles may be classified according to the objective of training as accumulative, transmutative, and realizational. The aim of **accumulative mesocycles** is to enhance the athlete's potential, that is, to improve basic motor abilities (conditioning) as well as sport technique (motor learning). The outcome of an accumulative mesocycle is evaluated on the basis of tests (e.g., measures of strength or aerobic capacity), the athlete's performance in auxiliary exercises, and the quality of technical skill. In these mesocycles, various exercises, including nonspecific ones, may be used for conditioning.

The **transmutative mesocycles** are employed to transform the increased nonspecific fitness into specific athlete preparedness. Throughout this period, specific exercises are mainly used for conditioning and polishing sport technique. The performance during unofficial or nonimportant contests is used primarily to estimate training progress. The **realizational mesocycles,** also known as precompetitive mesocycles, are planned to put on the best sport performance attainable within a given range of fitness. Performance during an important competition is the only measure of success or failure during this period.

At the next structural level, **macrocycle** refers to one entire competition season and includes preseason, in-season, and postseason periods. In Europe these periods are commonly called the **preparation, competition,** and **transition periods.** Each **period of training** consists of several mesocycles. The typical duration of a macrocycle is a year (for winter sports) or half a year (for track and field events in which both indoor and outdoor competitions are held). In wrestling and swimming, there are three macrocycles in a year. The organization of training programs into macrocycles and periods of training is called **periodization.** Still more long-range views are helpful as well.

The **Olympic cycle** is quadrennial, 4 years in length, from one Olympic Games to another. And longstanding, or multiyear, training embraces the career of the athlete, from beginning to end.

Planning workouts, training days, microcycles, and mesocycles comprises **short-term planning.** Planning macrocycles is **medium-term planning. Long-term planning** deals with training intervals of many years.

SHORT-TERM PLANNING

In short-term planning, the effects of fatigue are the primary influencing factor. For instance, a training session should be designed so that exercises (such as strength, speed, or technique exercises) directed toward improving fine motor coordination (central factors), rather than peripheral factors, are performed in a fresh, nonfatigued state, preferably immediately after warm-up. In endurance sports, however, when the aim is to improve velocity at the finish of a distance rather than the maximal speed attainable in a fresh state, speed exercises may be performed after endurance work.

Paradigm of Timing Short-Term Training

A general principle of short-term training design is that fatigue effects from different types of muscular work are specific. This means that an athlete who is too tired to repeat the same exercise in an acceptable manner may still be able to perform another exercise to satisfaction. Changing or sequencing a drill appropriately makes it possible to assign more labor and to suitably increase the training load. For instance, if a trainee performs a leg exercise, such as squatting, and an arm exercise, such as the bench press, the total number of lifts will be greater when the exercise sequence is bench press, squatting, bench press, squatting, and so on than when the sequence is squatting, squatting, bench press, bench press. The same principle is valid for exercises of different directions, for instance, strength and sprint exercises. The fatigue effect from a heavy resistance exercise routine mainly affects the possibility of performing or repeating an exercise of this type.

Thus, one's ability to execute drills of another type is restored more quickly than one's ability to repeat the same routine (figure 5.1).

You will find that if two similar training workouts are executed in a row, the traces of fatigue from the two sessions are **superposed** (figure 5.2). If the training load is large (i.e., the restoration time takes from 48 to 72 h), several training sessions of this type performed sequentially may lead to severe exhaustion of the athlete.

If exercises with different targets could be trained all the time, it would be easy to distribute these exercises among training sessions to avoid the superimposition of fatigue traces. However, fitness gain decreases if several motor abilities are trained simultaneously during one workout, microcycle, or mesocycle. Therefore, it is not a good idea to have more than two or three main targets in one micro- or mesocycle. For instance, there is no reason to train, in one microcycle, maximal

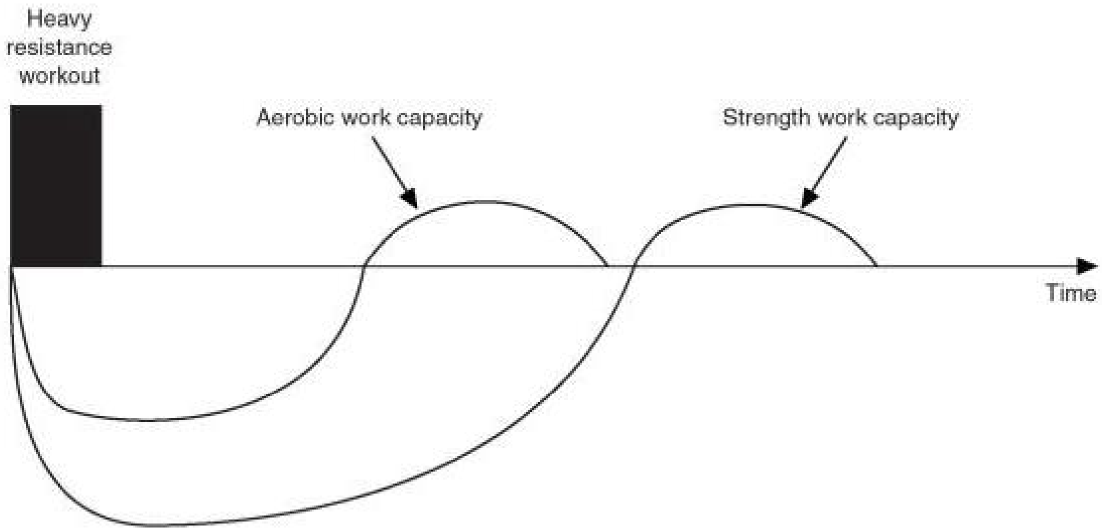


Figure 5.1 The time course of athlete restoration after a heavy resistance training session.

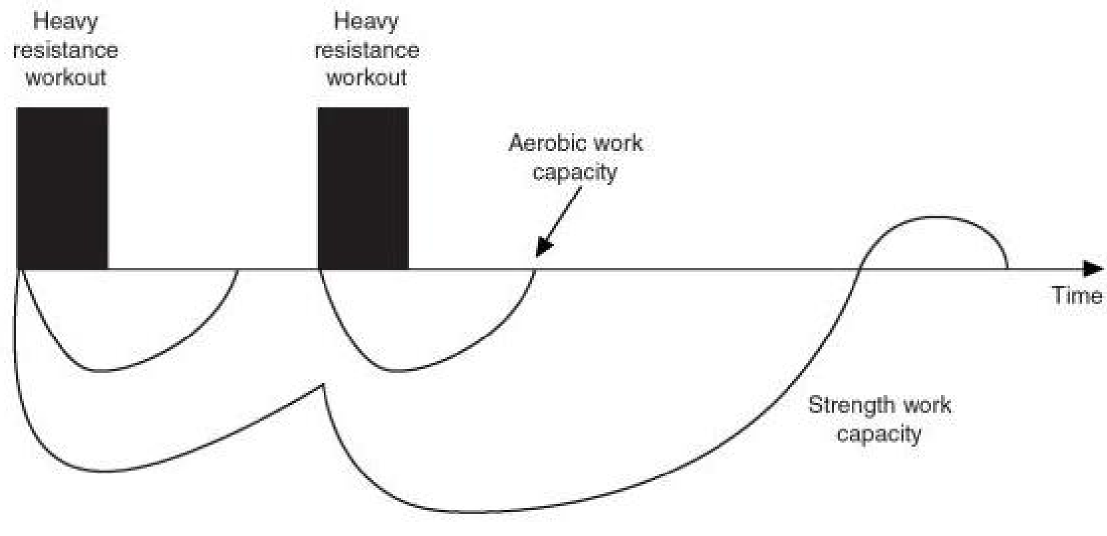


Figure 5.2 The superposition of two resistance workouts and their effects.

strength, explosive strength, aerobic capacity, anaerobic lactacid and alactacid capacities, maximal speed, flexibility, and sport technique. The organism cannot adapt to so many different requirements at the same time. The gains in all these motor abilities would be insignificant compared with the gain from development of only one physical quality. When the training targets are distributed over several mesocycles in sequence, the fitness gain increases. Clearly, a conflict exists between the tendency to decrease the number of training targets and the tendency to increase the range of targets in a training program.

To enhance performance growth, coaches or athletes decrease the number of targets in micro- and mesocycles—in other words, they use specialty programs. In contrast, they increase this number, using combined programs, in order to have more freedom in planning the training schedule to avoid the superimposition of fatigue traces from individual workouts and the hazard of staleness.

Similar contradictions are, in general, typical for the planning of various training programs. The problem is to find a proper balance between the conflicting demands. Some world-class athletes have found that two is the optimal number of motor abilities or targets that can be improved in one mesocycle. In addition, only one essential feature of sport technique (such as tolerance to fatigue, stability) can be trained within this interval. Up to 70 to 80% of total work within the mesocycle should be addressed to the development of the targeted motor abilities (about 35-40% per target).

Workouts and Training Days

The general idea in planning strength training sessions is to have the athlete do as much work as possible while being as fresh as possible. Unlike the situation for endurance training, it is not necessary for the athlete to become exhausted in a heavy resistance workout (do not confuse this with exercise set). Strength gains are greater if trainees exercise when they are not tired. This is especially true when the target of the resistance exercise is neural coordination, both intra- and intermuscular. Broadly speaking, a trainee should "learn" to either decrease inhibitory output or enhance excitatory output from the central nervous system (CNS) while exercising and thereby gain strength. This learning is more successful if the trainee is fully recovered from previous activity, not fatigued. To have athletes exercise while they are as fresh as possible, the training workouts should be carefully planned.

The timing of workouts has three facets: rest–exercise alternation, exercise sequence, and intensity variation.

Rest–Exercise Alternation

In general, large interbout rest intervals are usually employed in heavy resistance training aimed at increasing muscular strength.

The total number of sets per day has not changed in the preparation of elite weightlifters over the last 50 years (most average 32-45 sets, but some athletes manage 50-52). However, the duration of a workout has changed; in 1955 to 1956 it was only 2 to 2.5 h, and in 1963 to 1964 it was 3 to 3.5 h (one training workout a day was used). Since 1970, 2 and more training sessions a day have been the rule. The same number of sets is distributed now among 2 or more daily workouts.

Both sport practice and scientific investigations have demonstrated that distribution of the training volume into smaller units produces effective adaptation stimuli, especially for the nervous system, provided that the time intervals between workouts are sufficient for restitution.

To prevent early fatigue, rest intervals between sets by elite athletes, especially when working with large weights, are approximately 4 to 5 min. Since the duration of a strength exercise bout is short, the exercise–rest ratio (i.e., the duration of the bout relative to rest) is very small for this type of physical activity. However, even long rest periods of 4 to 5 min are not sufficient for complete recovery, which after the lifting of a maximum training weight (TF_{mm}) requires 10 to 15 min. If the duration of a strength training workout is limited, one possible solution

Training With Several Workouts a Day: An Example

Bulgarian athletes have several workouts a day with a total duration of up to 6 h (see table 5.1). To the best of our knowledge, the weightlifters from Greece and Turkey who were very successful at the 2000 and 2004 Olympic Games train similarly. The exercise sessions are limited to 60-min, or even 45-min, periods. Two sessions in the morning and two in the afternoon are separated by 30-min rest intervals. The underlying assumption is that the elevated blood testosterone level can be maintained for 45 to 60 min only and that a 30-min rest is needed to restore the testosterone level. (This assumption has not been proven; the precise nature of the elevated testosterone level during a strength exercise workout is not well understood. In general, the elevation may be induced either by increased testosterone production or by a decreased amount of testosterone acceptors in muscles and other tissues.) During the 30-min rest intervals the athletes may choose to lie down and listen to music. To avoid cooldown, they are warmly dressed; their relaxed legs are slightly raised, supported by a small bench.

is to combine sets into series and schedule long (10-12 min) rest intervals between them. Since working periods are short and rest periods are long during sessions, workout density (the number of sets per hour of a workout) is not considered an informative measure of strength training intensity.

Exercise Sequence

The idea in sequencing exercises is to perform the most valuable exercises requiring fine motor coordination and maximal neuronal output in a rested state. To avoid premature fatigue, which is detrimental to a subsequent exercise, the following advice is usually given:

- Include main sport exercises before assistance exercises.
- Use dynamic, power-type drills before slow exercises, such as squats.
- Exercise larger muscle groups before smaller ones.

If the target of a workout is to increase muscular strength (not induce muscle hypertrophy; see chapter 8), successive exercises should minimally involve the same muscle groups. A sequence such as (a) arm abduction with dumbbells (only deltoid muscles are active), (b) bench press (same muscles are involved), (c) front squat (assistance exercise, performed with relatively slow speed), and (d) snatch (competition lift; requires maximal power production and complex technique) would prove incorrect. The proper series would look like this:

1. Snatch
2. Bench press
3. Squat
4. Arm abduction

Intensity Variation

Because lifting a maximum training weight (maximum effort method) is recognized as the most efficient way to train, this should be practiced at the beginning of a training workout, following the warm-up. Then athletes perform a few (2 or 3) single lifts toward the training weight expected for the date and several (up to 6) sets with this weight. Bulgarian athletes use a trial-and-error approach to achieve TF_{mm} every day. Russian coaches typically plan the exercise intensity in advance, considering a load 90% of CF_{mm} as TF_{mm}. A complex of combined exercise sets, for instance in snatch lifts, lasts a maximum of 30 min (6 sets × 5 min for rest intervals).

Pyramid training, popular many years ago, involves gradually changing the load in a series of sets in an ascending and then a descending manner. This has been virtually abandoned by Olympic-caliber athletes. The ascending part of such a routine induces premature fatigue, while the descending portion is not efficient since it is performed in a fatigued state. For contemporary training, fast progression to the main training load is typical.

A couple of other points about intensity variation are useful in specific circumstances. Athletes who are feeling fatigue may take single lifts at 10 to 15 kg below TF_{mm} between

Past and Present

From the training log of the Olympic (1960) champion Victor Bushuev. Drills in military (standing) press.

- **Year 1958.** TF_{mm} was 90 kg. The conventional pyramid protocol was executed. The following weights were lifted: 60, 65, 70, 75, 80, 85, 90, 90, 85, 80, 75, 70 kg. Each weight, except in the beginning sets using 60- and 65-kg barbells, was lifted until failure. The initial part of this protocol (60-85 kg), which was not very useful, induced substantial fatigue and decreased the effect of lifting the highest loads.
- **Year 1960.** TF_{mm} was 110 kg. The barbell weight varied in the following sequence: 70, 90, 100 (all three weights were lifted only one time in a set), and then 110 kg. The maximal weight was lifted in 5 sets, 1 to 2 times in each set.

Since 1964, pyramids have been virtually excluded from the training of elite strength athletes.

maximum lifts. This is also helpful for the purpose of recalling a proper technique pattern. Finally, if both the maximum effort and the repeated effort methods are used in the same workout, maximal lifts should be included first.

Advice about exercise sequence and intensity variation may be extended to the planning of a training day. Thus, exercises requiring maximal neural output (e.g., competitive lifts, power drills, lifting TF_{mm} or CF_{mm}) should be performed in a fresh state when the athlete has recovered from previous activity (i.e., during morning training workouts).

Contrasting Exercises

It is advisable to schedule flexibility and relaxation exercises between heavy resistance drills to speed up recovery and prevent loss of flexibility. The preferred area for flexibility exercises is the shoulder joints.

Mixed Training Sessions

Sessions that include the strength routine as a section are less effective than special heavy resistance workouts. In sports in which muscular strength is the ability of primary importance (e.g., field events in track and field, American football), it is especially advisable to set apart heavy resistance drills in a separate workout. If there is not enough time to do this, strength exercises may be included in mixed workouts. To prevent negative effects, they are usually performed at the end of workouts (this practice is accepted in gymnastics and other sports). However, a coach should be aware that the same strength training complex is more effective when used at the beginning of the training session when the athletes are not fatigued.

Circuit Training

The idea of circuit training is to train several motor abilities (especially strength and endurance) at the same time. Such programs consist of several (up to 10 or 12) stations with a given exercise to be performed at each one.

The basic philosophy of circuit training (to stimulate strength and endurance simultaneously) appears dubious. It is well known that the mechanisms of biological adaptation to

Are Special Strength Training Sessions Necessary?

Muscular strength is only one of several abilities athletes should build up; they have many other things to develop besides strength. It is up to the coach to decide whether or not to spend time on special strength training sessions. In many sports, such as tennis and even men's gymnastics, it is possible to attain the required level of strength fitness by performing strength exercises immediately after main workout drills. However, if low strength levels actually limit athletic performance, special strength workouts are useful. For example, in countries that were once part of the USSR, the junior team for men's gymnastics employs separate strength workouts; the men's team does not. In many sports, such as track and field, rowing, and kayaking, heavy resistance workouts are part of the routine. In others, such as swimming and wrestling, workouts are for specific strength exercises rather than for heavy resistance training (dryland training in swimming, imitation of takedowns with simulated or added resistance in wrestling).

strength and endurance types of physical activity are different (this issue will be discussed in chapter 8). The muscles are not able to optimally adapt to both types of exercise at the same time. Combining strength and endurance exercises interferes with the ability to gain strength. Vigorous endurance activity inhibits strength development (figure 5.3).

Because of the low strength gains (in comparison with those obtained from regular strength training routines), circuit training is not recommended and is hardly ever used in strength and power sports. It may, however, be employed in sports having a high demand for both strength and endurance (rowing, kayaking) and also for conditioning in sports in which strength is not the dominating motor ability (volleyball, tennis). Circuit training is mainly used by athletes primarily concerned with enhancing or maintaining general fitness rather than specific muscular strength.

Microcycles and Mesocycles

The timing of heavy resistance protocols in micro- and mesocycles is dominated by two main ideas. One is to allow adequate recovery between exercise periods, and the other is to find a proper balance between the steadiness of a training stimulus (to call forth an adaptation) and its variability (to avoid premature accommodation and staleness).

Adequate Recovery

During a microcycle, rest–exercise alternation and proper exercise sequencing alleviate fatigue. The greatest training adaptation to a standard stimulus occurs when muscles are recovered from previous training periods and best prepared to tolerate the greatest overload. Keeping in mind that qualified athletes have 5 to 6 training days a week, one may conclude that the restoration time after a workout should be about 24 h—that athletes should train with small (restoration time less than 12 h) and medium (12-24 h) training loads. In this case, however, the total training load is not great enough to stimulate strength development. The solution is the proper exercise alternation in consecutive workouts. Since fatigue effects from different resistance exercises are specific, it is possible to increase training loads up to an optimal level by properly rotating the exercises in sequential sessions. Exercises in consecutive training sessions should minimally involve the same muscle groups and thus repeat the same pattern of muscle coordination. It would not

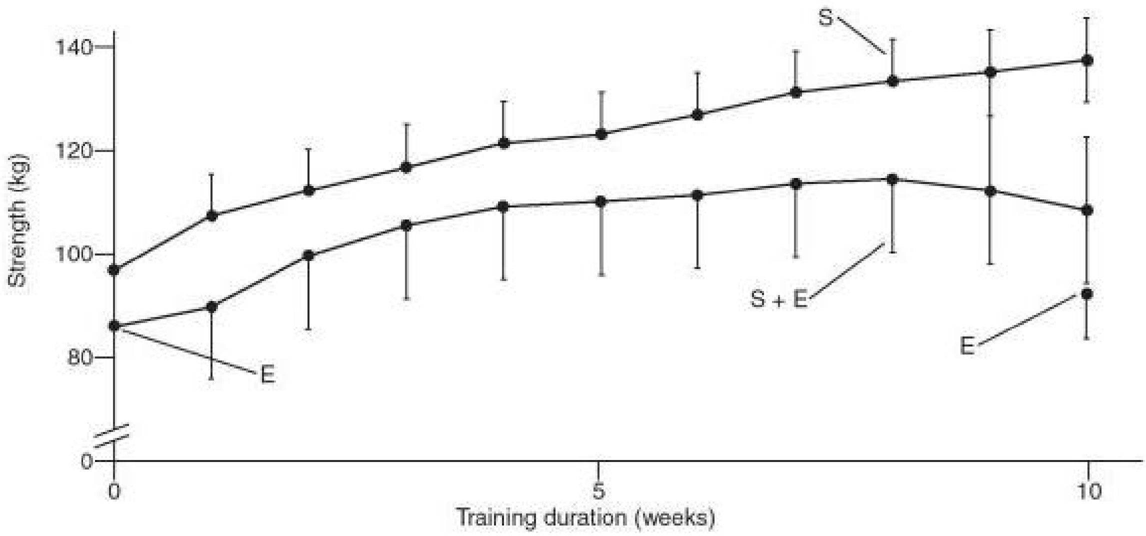


Figure 5.3 Simultaneous training for endurance (E) and strength (S) inhibits strength gain.

Adapted, by permission, from R.C. Hickson, 1980, "Interference of strength development by simultaneously training for strength and endurance," *European Journal of Applied Physiology* 45: 255-263.

make sense, for instance, to plan two consecutive workouts with the snatch lift.

Recovery time from heavy resistance exercises varies with muscle size. For small muscle groups, like the calf muscles, the restitution time is typically less than 12 h. (Remember that we are concerned here with the training of experienced athletes only.) Small muscle groups (such as ankle plantar **flexors** and muscles of the forearm) may be trained several times a day. Intermediate muscle groups require more time for restitution; these can be exercised every day. Finally, it is advisable to exercise the large muscle groups with rest periods of at least 48 h. For instance, barbell squats are performed usually only two times a week with 72 or 96 h between training sessions (Olympic-caliber weightlifters perform front and back squats up to two times per week). The squats are excluded from training programs 1 week (in weightlifting) or 10 to 12 days (track and field) before an important competition begins.

To increase muscular strength, the schedule should include at least 3 heavy resistance workouts per week. It is better to distribute the same training volume into several workouts than to concentrate it into a small number of sessions. Athletes who increase the number of training sessions per week, while keeping the training volume (number of repetitions, total weight lifted) constant, usually experience visible strength gains. For instance, when the volume is distributed into 2 daily training sessions, the strength development is greater than it is with 1 session a day.

To retain strength gains, at least 2 training sessions per week should be scheduled.

Variability

The variability of training programs during micro- and mesocycles is realized through changes in training load (not exercise complexes). One stable complex of exercises should be performed through a mesocycle (to elicit an adaptation). This complex, consisting of perhaps 10 exercises, is distributed among the training days and workouts of one microcycle provided that each exercise is performed at least twice a week. The time order of exercises is kept constant from one microcycle to another. For example, the snatch and front squat are routinely performed during the morning workout of the first day of each microcycle.

To avoid premature accommodation, training loads should vary from day to day and from microcycle to microcycle. The empirical **rule of 60%** has stood the test of time: The training volume of a day (microcycle) with minimal loading should be around 60% of the volume of a maximal day (microcycle) load.

Stress (Impact) Microcycles

Some experienced athletes use **stress microcycles** (figure 1.6 on page 121), in which fatigue is accumulated from day to day (due to high training loads and short rest intervals that are insufficient for restitution), if a routine training program does not bring about strength gains. The microcycle after a stress microcycle should involve small training loads. Elite athletes may tolerate up to two stress microcycles in a row **(doubled stress microcycle);** however, coaches and athletes should exercise extreme caution with this approach. Stress microcycles should not be used more than three to four times per year. Doubled stress microcycles are used only once a year.

The training volume per 4-week mesocycle is approximately 1,700 lifts for elite weight lifters from the former Soviet Union; 1,306 ± 99 repetitions for qualified athletes having a Master of Sport title; and 986 ± 99 lifts for athletes with 1 year of experience in weightlifting training.

MEDIUM-TERM PLANNING (PERIODIZATION)

The term *periodization* refers to a division of the training season, typically 1 year long, into smaller and more manageable intervals (periods of training, mesocycles, and microcycles) with the ultimate goal of reaching the best performance results during the primary competitions of the season. To do this the athlete changes exercises, loads, and methods during preseason and in-season training. When the same training routine is applied over the entire season from the early preparatory phase (preseason) to the in-season training, improvement occurs only in the early phase and there is a subsequent leveling off. Early staleness is almost unavoidable with such a protocol.

The Issue of Periodization

Periodization is regarded as one of the most complex problems in athlete training. The proper balance between opposing demands is difficult to achieve in medium-term planning because so many factors are involved.

The efficacy of planning in macrocycles is determined for groups of athletes, not for individuals. The **efficacy coefficient** is calculated as follows:

Efficacy coefficient, % = 100
(Number of athletes who achieved their best performances during a most important competition of the season / Total number of athletes).

For national Olympic teams, such competitions as the Olympic Games and world championships are regarded as the most important. An efficacy coefficient of about 75% is considered excellent, 60% is considered good, and 50% is considered acceptable.

In medium-term planning, four issues have primary importance:

1. **Delayed transformation** of training loads (into fitness development)
2. **Delayed transmutation** of nonspecific fitness acquired in assistance exercises (relative to a main sport skill) to a specific fitness
3. Training residuals
4. The superposition of training effects

Delayed Transformation

To conceptualize delayed transformation, imagine a group of athletes trained in the following manner. They perform the same exercise (e.g., deadlift) with a constant intensity (2-5RM) and volume (5 sets) during each workout (3 times a week). At the beginning, maximal strength increases relatively fast; however, after 2 to 3 months of this standard training, the rate of strength enhancement decreases as a result of accommodation. To overcome the accommodation, the coach decides to increase the training load (the number of training sessions per week, sets in workouts). But after several weeks, the performance fails to improve again. This time the coach decides to decrease the training load. After a certain period, the athletic performance again begins to improve.

In general, during periods of strenuous training, athletes cannot achieve the best performance results for two main reasons. First, it takes time to adapt to the training stimulus. Second, hard training work induces fatigue that accumulates over time. So a period of relatively easy exercise is needed to realize the effect of the previous hard training sessions—to reveal the delayed training effect. This period is called the **period of delayed transformation** (of the training work into performance growth). Adaptation occurs mainly when a retaining or detraining load is used after a stimulating load.

The time of delayed transformation lengthens as the total training load and accumulated fatigue increase. Typically, the delayed transformation lasts from 2 to 6 weeks with the average time of 4 weeks—exactly 1 mesocycle. This mesocycle, we recall, is known as the realization, or precompetition, mesocycle. Its objective is to prepare the athlete for immediate competition. The training load is low at this time. The main training work has been performed in preceding mesocycles (accumulation and transmutation). Because the effects are delayed, the adaptation occurs (or is manifested) during unloading rather than loading periods.

Delayed Transmutation

To continue the above example, when the athletes' achievements stop improving, the coach modifies the strategy and decides to change the exercises rather than the training load. Now, instead of performing the deadlift (which was the final training activity), the athletes begin to perform several assistance exercises such as leg and spine extensions and arm curls. After a couple of months of this training, the athletes' performances improve in all the drills except perhaps the only one—the deadlift—that was not trained. The athletes' potentials are now better than before; however, performance results in the deadlift are the same.

Now a special training routine must be advanced to transmute the acquired motor potential into athletic performance. Both special efforts and time are needed to attain this goal, which is realized during the transmutation mesocycles. Training in such mesocycles is highly specific. The number and total duration of transmutation mesocycles in one season depend on the total duration of preceding accumulation mesocycles. Transmutation and realization mesocycles, when considered together as one unit, are often called the tapering (or peaking) period.

Analysis of our example shows that both the training content (exercises used) and the training load should vary over an entire training season. The accumulation, transmutation, and realization (tapering) mesocycles follow one another in a certain order. To effectively plan these mesocycles (their duration, content, and training load), the coach or athlete must take into account training residuals and the superposition of training effects.

Training Residuals

The reduction or cessation of training brings about substantial losses in adaptation effects. However, athletes to a certain extent can sustain the acquired training benefits over time without extensively training them continually. De-adaptation, as well as adaptation, takes time. If athletes exclude a given group of exercises (e.g., maximal strength load) from training protocols, they gradually lose the adaptations. A positive correlation exists between the time spent to elicit adaptational effects, on the one hand, and the time of detraining, on the other (figure 5.4).

Four factors mainly determine the time course of detraining: (1) duration of the immediately preceding period of training (the period of accumulation), (2) training experience of the athletes, (3) targeted motor abilities, and (4) amount of specific training loads during detraining (or retaining) mesocycles.

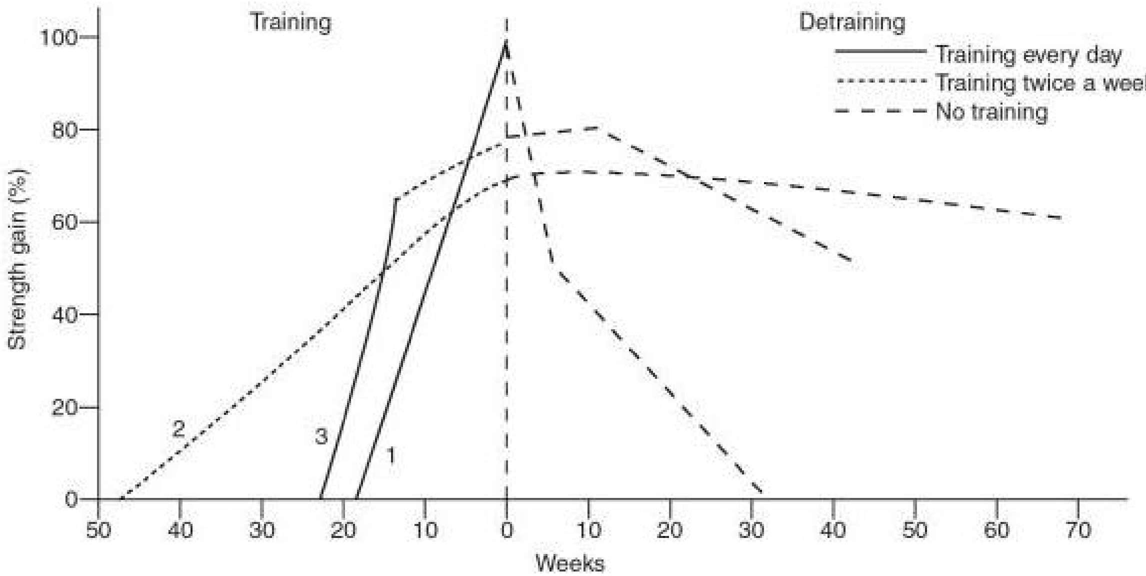


Figure 5.4 Time of training and detraining in three groups of subjects. Group 1 trained daily; group 2 trained twice a week; group 3 trained daily at the beginning and then twice a week.

Reprinted, by permission, from T. Hettinger, 1966, *Isometrische muskeltraining* (Stuttgart, Germany: Fischer Verlag).

1. The general rule is that the longer the period of training, the longer the period of detraining, in other words, "Soon ripe, soon rotten." When a preparatory period (preseason) is long, for instance several months, and a competition period is short (several weeks), as in many Olympic sports, it is permissible to eliminate certain exercises (like heavy resistance training) during the in-season period. Strength adaptation is not lost in this case, mainly because the detraining period is short. However, in sports with a brief preseason period and many competitions in a row (as with games in ice hockey or tournaments in tennis), strength gains elicited during the short preseason period (weeks) are lost almost completely during the period of competition (months) if maximal strength loads are not used.

2. Mature athletes with continuous and extensive training backgrounds find that the residual effects of training are relatively stable. These athletes have slow rates of detraining and are able to achieve good results after relatively short periods of retraining. This is a result of both what they have done in the past and what they are presently accomplishing. Elite athletes with training backgrounds that span many years regain motor abilities much more quickly than less experienced athletes.

3. Once special training ceases, different training benefits are lost at various rates. Anaerobic capacities are lost very quickly whereas adaptations to aerobic or maximal strength loads are relatively long lasting. The most stable benefits are training residuals based on morphological changes in skeletal muscles. Muscle size, for instance, changes slowly during both training and detraining. Because of this it is possible to use specialty mesocycles in which motor abilities are developed in sequence. The attained level of the motor ability (e.g., maximal strength) that was the primary target in one mesocycle is maintained in subsequent mesocycles with small loads.

4. If special training loads (e.g., heavy resistance exercises) are preserved at a certain level, it is possible to either retain the acquired level of the specific motor ability or lose it at a relatively low rate. A coach may prescribe specific retaining or detraining loads for a given period during which training residuals are conserved at appropriate levels (but not improved).

Superposition of Training Effects

Various training methods do not bring the same gross beneficial effect to all physiological systems. Training effects are specialized and they affect separate systems in different ways. Methods that induce beneficial adaptation in one motor ability or physiological system may produce negative effects on another ability or system. For example, excessive strength gains associated with muscle hypertrophy may have negative effects on aerobic endurance as a result of reduced capillary density in the working muscles.

The transfer of either positive or negative effects between two types of training is not necessarily symmetrical. In other words, the effect of training activity X on ability Y is often different from the effect of training activity Y on ability X. Usually, hard strength training affects aerobic endurance negatively. The counterproductive effect of aerobic endurance training on maximal strength, if it exists, is smaller. Because of this, the strength–aerobic endurance sequence in two consecutive mesocycles provides a definite advantage; strength gains achieved during the first mesocycle are not minimized by aerobic training during the second. The opposite sequence, aerobic endurance–strength, is less efficient. In this sequence, aerobic capacity is initially enhanced but then deteriorates during the ensuing mesocycle.

Periodization As a Trade-Off

Though most people understand the necessity of varying both training loads and training content over an entire season, being able to prescribe the optimal training plan for a given athlete and predict its effect on sport performance is not easy. This area of planning is contentious. In reality, a good periodization plan is a subtle trade-off between conflicting demands.

On the one hand, an athlete cannot develop maximum strength, anaerobic endurance, and aerobic endurance all at the same time. The greatest gains in any one direction (for instance, strength training or aerobic training) can be achieved only if an athlete concentrates on this type of training for a reasonably long time—at least 1 or 2 mesocycles. In this case, the improvement in strength or aerobic capacity will be more substantial than that achieved with a more varied program. This leads to the recommendation that one should train sequentially—one target after the other. Such pattern of training is called **linear periodization** (figure 5.5*a*). Elite athletes have favored this widely used approach for many years.

In the 1960s, for instance, middle-distance runners used a preparation period of 7 months consisting of the following sequence: (a) aerobic training, called at that time *marathon training* or *road training*—2.5 to 3 months; (b) hill training or uphill running, mostly anaerobic with an increased resistance component—2.5 months; and (c) short-track training in a stadium—about 1.5 months. This training plan corresponds to the saying that athletes should begin a workout from the short end and a season from the long one. Similarly, throwers began the preparation period with strength exercises and, only after 2.5 to 3 months of such training, began more specific routines.

But with this approach, because of the great amount of time and effort spent in a specific direction, an athlete has little opportunity to perform other drills or exercises. As a result of the long periods of detraining, the level of nontargeted motor abilities decreases substantially. In addition, great physical potential (for instance, strength, aerobic capacity) acquired in periods of accentuated training does not directly involve the sport movement. That is, the strength level is improved (for instance, dryland training in swimmers), but athletic results are not. Much time and effort are needed to fuse all the partial improvements into an athlete's preparedness for high-level competition.

Another training strategy (nonlinear periodization) has been developed in the last 20 years. The strategy is based on two ideas:

- Sequential, or even simultaneous, development of specific motor factors with frequent, intermittent changes in training targets (figure 5.5*b*)
- Maintenance of the nontargeted motor abilities with retaining loads

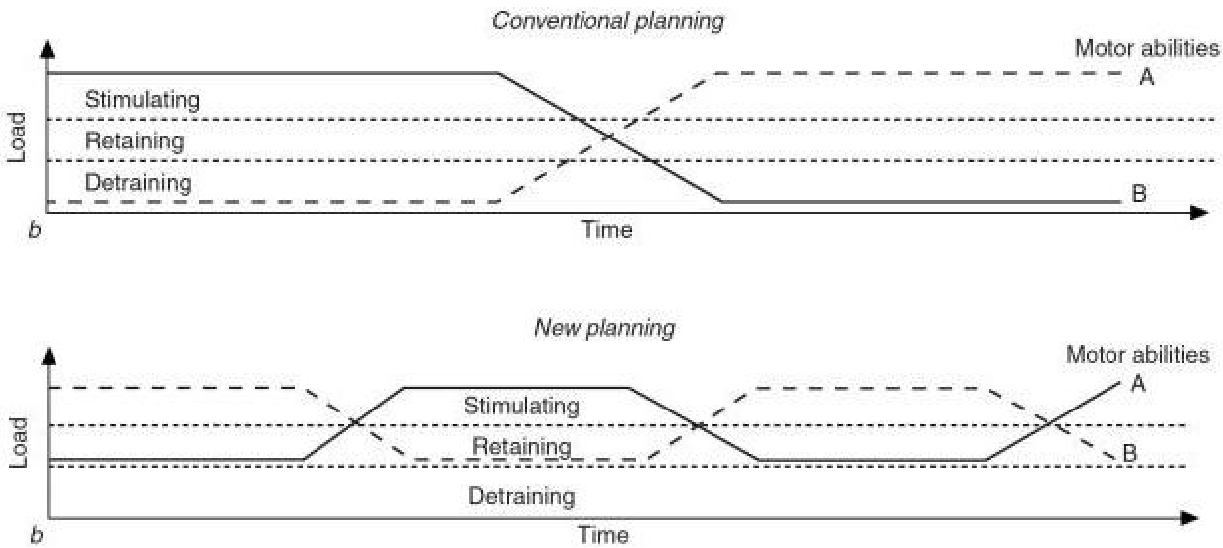


Figure 5.5 Two variations of timing training loads during a preseason period. Two motor abilities, A and B, are the training targets. *(a)* Long intervals of accentuated (targeted) training with stimulating and detraining loads, the linear periodization. *(b)* Short intervals of the targeted training with stimulating and retaining loads.

This approach (training various motor abilities sequentially with frequent intermittent changes of targets) is used typically with 2-week intervals, or half-mesocycles. Training targets are changed intermittently every 2 weeks. This strategy is used, for instance, by athletes participating in Nordic combined competitions (cross-country skiing 15 km plus ski jumping). The skiers train in 2-week phases. During the first 2-week period, cross-country skiing is the main object of training with ski jumping loads only at the retaining level; this is followed by 2 weeks of training ski jumping (at a stimulating load) with low retaining loads in cross-country skiing, and so on.

The term *simultaneous training* means, in this case, as close in time as possible: either on the same training day, in the same microcycle, or in intermittent microcycles (but not in the same training workout). The saying is, "All as close together as possible." This strategy has been successfully used in several power sports, for instance with hammer throwers from the former Soviet Union. The contributing motor abilities (maximal strength, rate of force development, power) are trained during the same microcycle with this approach.

The ideas for periodization that we have been looking at are realized in training programs in a multitude of ways.

Nonlinear Periodized Program: An Example

Conditioning training of the women's basketball team, University of Connecticut

This nonlinear program attempts to train both the hypertrophy and neural aspects of strength within the same week. Thus, athletes are working at two different physiological adaptations together within the same 7- to 10-day period of the 16-week mesocycle. This appears possible and may be more conducive to many individual's schedules, especially when competitions, travel, or other schedule conflicts can make the traditional linear method difficult to follow. The intensity and volume of training varies within the week over the course of the entire training period (e.g., 16 weeks). This protocol uses a 4-day rotation with a 1- or 2-day rest period between workouts.

- Monday: 4 sets of 12-15RM
- Tuesday: Rest
- Wednesday: 4 sets of 8-10RM
- Thursday: Rest
- Friday: 3-4 sets of 4-6RM
- Saturday: Rest
- Sunday: Rest
- Monday: 4-5 sets of 1-3RM

In the program, the intensity spans over a 14RM range (possible 1RM sets versus 15RM sets in the week cycle). The workout rotates between very heavy, heavy, moderate, and light training sessions. If you miss the Monday workout, the rotation order is simply pushed forward, meaning you perform the rotated workout scheduled. For example, if the light 12-15RM workout was scheduled for Monday and you miss it, you just perform it on Wednesday and continue with the rotation sequence. In this way no workout stimulus is missed in the training program. You can also say that a mesocycle will be completed when a certain number of workouts are completed (e.g., 48) instead of using training weeks to set the program length.

A power training day can be added if necessary. In the power training, loads that are 30 to 45% of 1RM are used; the exercises allow release of the mass (i.e., throwing, jumping); fast lifts with substantial deceleration of the implement during the last part of the movement are not used (see figure 4.3 on page 76). The primary exercises are typically periodized, but you can also use a 2-cycle program to vary the small muscle group exercises. For example, in the triceps push-down you could rotate between the moderate (8-10RM) and the heavy (4-6RM) cycle intensities. This would provide the hypertrophy needed for such isolated muscles of a joint but also provide the strength needed to support heavier workouts of the large muscle groups.

Strength Training in Macrocycles

Proper timing is vital for effective strength training. The timing of strength training in macrocycles, that is, in periods that are relatively long (several months), is only indirectly influenced by the exercise–rest paradigm and by the desire to avoid premature fatigue. Other facets of training become more important. In macrocycles these typically are the following:

- Demand for variability of training stimuli
- Delayed transformation of a training load (into fitness development)
- Delayed transmutation of nonspecific fitness into specific fitness
- Training residuals

Variability of Training Stimuli

Demands for variability in macrocycles are met by changing exercise programs and training methods. Exercises themselves, not just the quantitative parameters of training routines (training load, volume, intensity), must be periodically changed to avoid accommodation. The general idea is simple. As a result of accommodation, a standard training program (same exercises, similar training load) very quickly leads to slow, or no, strength gains. To activate new steps in an adaptation, the program must be changed in one or both of two ways: increasing the training load or changing the exercise complex. There are limits to increasing the training load (because of staleness and time constraints), so changing exercises is preferable. This strategy has proven its effectiveness in the preparation of many international-caliber athletes.

The training of the best hammer throwers from the countries of the former Soviet Union, who have dominated world, Olympic, and European competitions over the last 30 years, is a good example of this strategy. A total of nearly 120 specific exercises were selected or invented for training and were distributed into 12 complexes with 10 exercises per complex. Each complex was used, depending on the individual peculiarities of an athlete, for 2 to 4 months and after that was replaced by another complex. The same complex was performed only once in the 2- to 4-year period. The most efficient exercises (for a given athlete) were used in the year of the most important competition (e.g., Olympic Games). The athletes performed hammer throws with maximal effort almost every training day. When a strength complex was changed, performance results in hammer throwing slightly deteriorated. They began to improve, however, after a period of initial adaptation to the new load (figure 5.6).

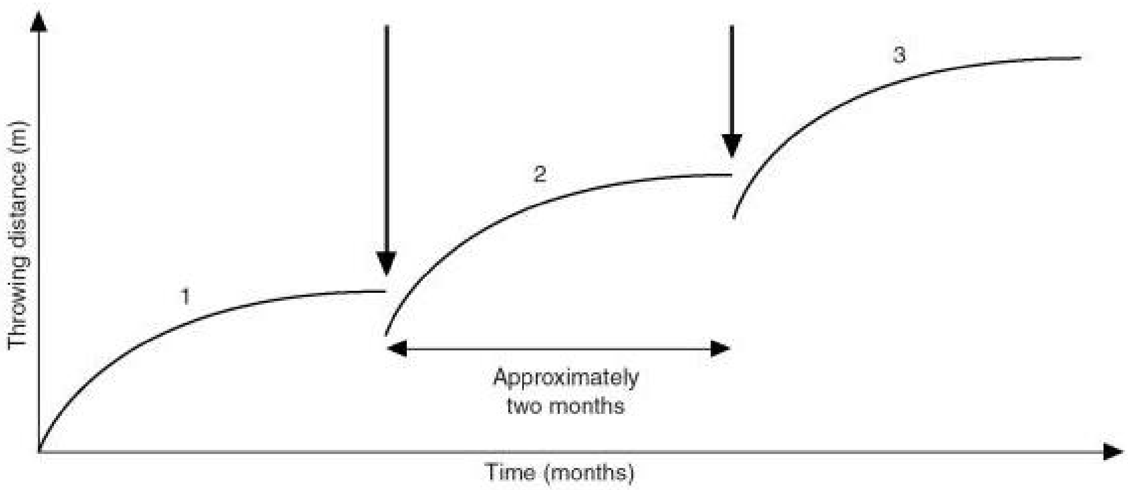


Figure 5.6 The effects of periodic changes in exercise complexes (vertical arrows) on the performance of hammer throwers.

Based on concept developed by the USSR National Olympic team head coach, A.P. Bondarchuk, 1980.

Strength training methods (submaximal effort, repeated effort, maximal effort) are used in different proportions within a macrocycle. Conventionally, a preseason period begins from a mesocycle centered mainly on the submaximal effort method (the lifting of nonmaximal loads an intermediate number of times, not to failure) and the repeated effort method (maximal number of repetitions in a set). Then the athlete shifts into the maximal effort method, increasing the lifted weight and decreasing the number of repetitions per set. The strategy is to initially prepare and develop the musculoskeletal system (peripheral factors) and then improve neural coordination. This conventional paradigm has been substantially unchanged since 1980. A new tendency is to alternate or vary the training methods several times during the macrocycle. Mesocycles (4 weeks) or half-mesocycles (2 weeks), during which the methods of repeated or maximal efforts are emphasized, follow each other in sequence.

Delayed Transformation

Because of the time delay between an increase in training load and improvement in performance, the training load should be decreased before an important competition (the period of delayed transformation). In essence, this is the time the body needs for rest and adaptation.

The length of the transformation period is positively correlated with the amount of the training load, especially with the increment of the training load over the load previously employed. The higher the training load increment, the greater the time needed to adapt and the longer the period of transformation. The duration of the precompetition phase, when loads are relatively low, is typically 1 mesocycle or approximately 4 weeks. However, if the training load is sharply increased with the use of several stress microcycles, the precompetition phase may last up to 6 and even 7 weeks. Conversely, when the training load is mildly enhanced, the duration of the precompetition phase is around 2 weeks.

In comparison with the preparatory phase, a precompetition phase for elite weightlifters contains fewer training sessions per week (5-10 instead of 8-15), fewer exercises per workout (1-4 instead of 3-6), and fewer sets per exercise (3-5 instead of 4-8). A primary issue during this period is good rest and full restoration between workouts.

Delayed Transmutation

As the time leading up to an important competition decreases, the strength exercises should become more specific. This refers to the delayed transmutation of nonspecific fitness acquired in assistance exercises (relative to a main sport skill) into specific fitness.

Training Residuals and Retaining Loads

The level of strength an athlete has achieved can be maintained during the season (the competition period of a macrocycle) by retaining loads. Two short (30-40 min) heavy resistance workouts per week usually provide a load of sufficient magnitude. Exercising twice a week makes it possible to preserve, but not improve, the athlete's strength during the whole season.

The total training load per macrocycle is high for elite athletes and has shown a general trend toward growth (figure 5.7 shows training loads of the Bulgarian national team). The best weightlifters of the 1960s lifted a barbell fewer than 10,000 times during a 1-year period:

- Yuri Vlasov, 1960 Olympic champion in the super-heavyweight category—5,715 repetitions a year
- Leonid Zhabotinsky, 1964 Olympic champion in the super-heavyweight category—5,757 repetitions
- Yan Talts, 1972 Olympic champion—8,452 lifts

In the 1973 to 1976 Olympic cycle, the average number of repetitions a year for a member of the USSR national Olympic weightlifting team was 10,600. During the 1985 to 1988 quadrennial cycle, it was 20,500.

For elite athletes, the training load, expressed in tons, varies substantially during

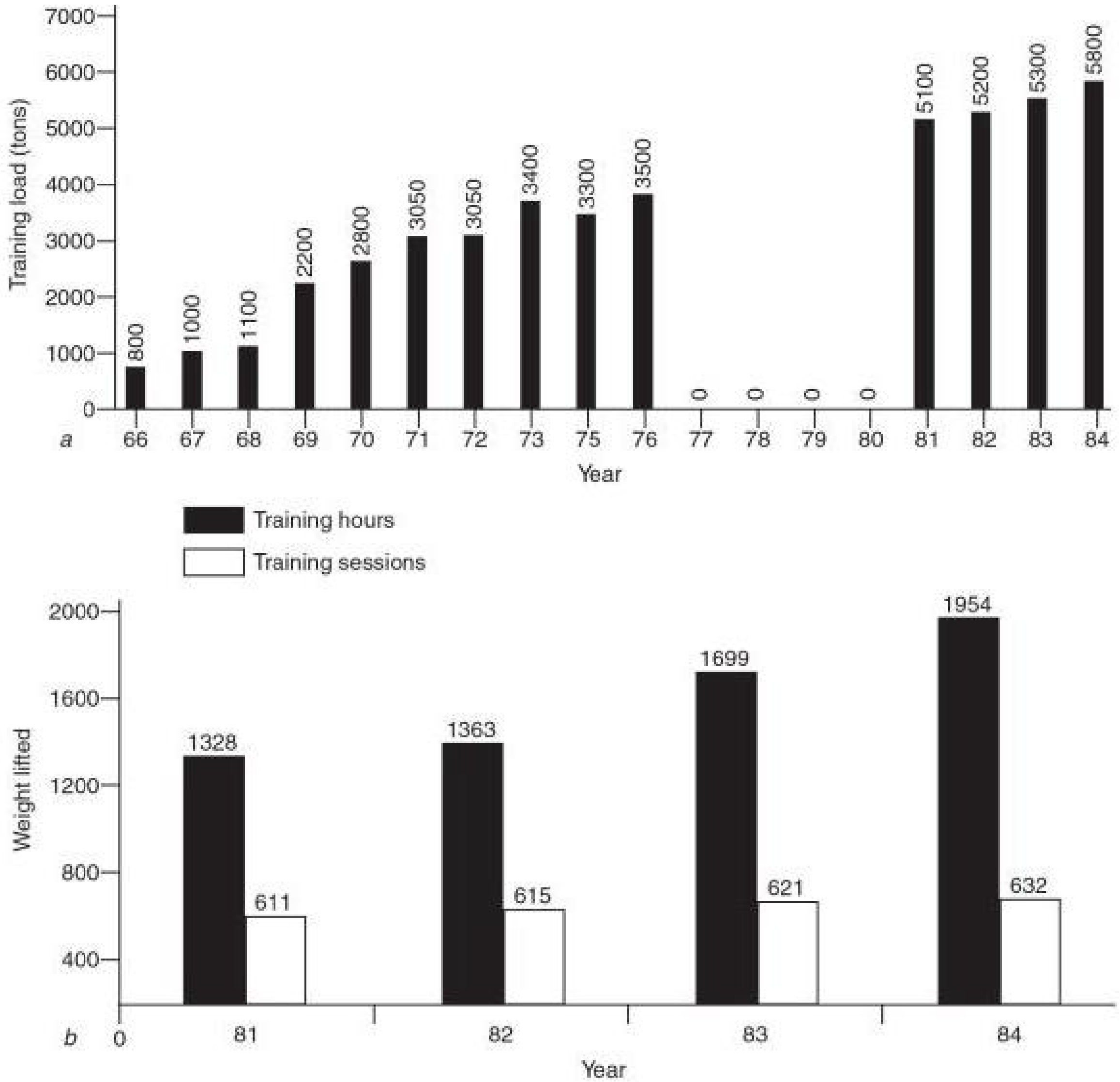


Figure 5.7 Training loads of the members of the Bulgarian national weightlifting team. *(a)* Total weight lifted. *(b)* Number of training hours and workouts.

Data from I. Abadjiev and B. Faradjiev, 1986, *Training of weight lifters* (Sofia, Bulgaris: Medicina i Fizkultura).

year-round preparation (figure 5.8). However, contrary to common belief, the average weight lifted (the total weight divided by the number of lifts) is rather constant. Why? Because changes in the exercises used correlate with changes in the methods of strength training. Recall that loads of 1- to 2RM are lifted primarily in main sport exercises while a greater number of repetitions is typical for assistance exercises (see chapter 4). If an athlete during an accumulated mesocycle decreases the weight lifted in the clean and jerk and performs many barbell squats, the average weight may not change; the decrease of load in one exercise (the clean and jerk) is outweighed by the high load lifted in squats.

The rule of 60% is recommended for use in planning a macrocycle. The load in a mesocycle with minimal load is approximately 60% of a maximal mesocycle load, provided that the mesocycles are equal in duration.

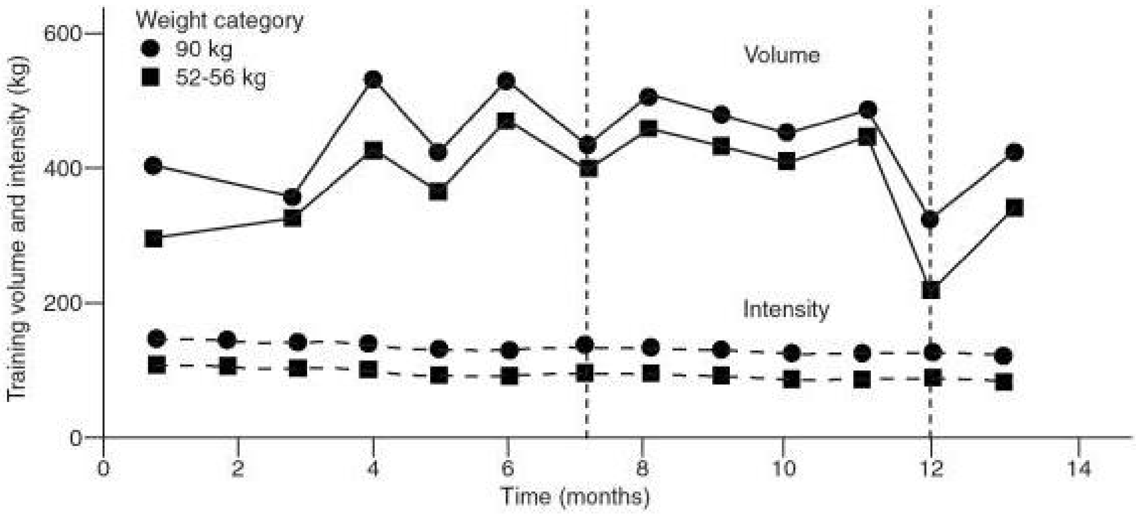


Figure 5.8 The distribution of training volume (tons, two top curves) and average weight lifted (kg, two bottom curves) by the USSR national Olympic team during year-round training. Average data of athletes in weight categories 52 to 56 kg ($n = 4$) and 90 kg ($n = 3$). Vertical dotted lines show the times of important competitions.

Data from *Preparation of the National Olympic Team Weight Lifting*, 1984, annual report #85-012 (Moscow, Russia: All-Union Research Institute of Physical Culture).

Continuous Training Is a Must

Long breaks are customary in education. Vacations don't harm students' acquisition of knowledge or impair their intellectual abilities. After a break, they are able to study hard and learn at a faster pace.

A human body, however, behaves differently. Long breaks in training ruin physical fitness and athletic performance. De-adaptation inevitably takes place. Detraining occurs. After a prolonged period of inactivity, an athlete has to start from a decreased level of physical fitness. Time and effort are unnecessarily spent on recovering the prebreak level of fitness. If not for the break, the same efforts would be spent on increasing, not restoring, fitness. As in mountaineering, if you want to scale the summit of a high mountain, why get halfway up the mountain, go back down, and then climb the whole mountain?

Prolonged interruptions in training are not good for an athlete's health. It takes time to become accustomed to regular physical exercise and also to become unaccustomed to habitual activity. Sharp decreases in an athlete's activity level offer no benefit. In fact, there is an added risk of injury, for two reasons. Various motor abilities are retained differently. Some are lost quickly and some are more stable. The new imbalance of motor abilities, for instance between high strength and decreased flexibility and relaxation, may provoke trauma. In addition, athletes are often not psychologically attuned to their new condition. They are likely to overestimate their current potential. If they try to perform as before, they may get injured.

The National Collegiate Athletic Association (NCAA) rules do not take full account of these natural requirements. The rules limit organized practice activities to 22 to 24 weeks a year (or 144 days) and encourage intermittent rather than continuous year-round training. Voluntary individual workouts initiated by the student-athletes and not supervised by coaches are important to maintain the previously attained fitness level. A coach is only permitted to design a general individual workout program for a student-athlete (not a specific workout program for specific days).

A better plan to educate student-athletes would be to emphasize the harm to their athletic preparedness and health of sudden changes in activity level. The athletes should be familiar with the main principles of training and should understand the personal training philosophies of their coaches.

In addition, the coach needs to design the individual workout program for each student who requires such guidance, make sure that the program is understood, and advise students about safety measures during voluntary individual workouts.

If the objective of the individual training program is limited to retaining a general fitness level, student-athletes should take several steps. They need to monitor body weight, maintaining a proper balance between overall energy expenditure and the number of **calories** supplied with food. The body weight must be kept constant; only a 2- to 3-kg gain is permitted. These athletes should also do calisthenics (strengthening and stretching exercises) and perform an aerobic activity to provide the minimal combined load required to retain fitness. Muscular strength, flexibility, aerobic capacities, and stable body weight must be maintained.

The laws of physical training must be obeyed if one wants to be successful in sport. The need for continuous training is one such law. If student-athletes seek to become elite athletes, possess the proper experience and knowledge, have access to practice facilities, and take safety precautions against trauma, their individual workout programs may be designed to enhance preparedness rather than only maintain it. In this case, the training should continue to follow the standard schedule with adjustments made to accommodate the athlete's responsibilities, for instance an exam schedule.

SUMMARY

The timing of training includes the spacing of work and rest intervals as well as the sequencing of exercises. Training can be divided into structural units of various durations, in particular in the (a) training session (workout), (b) training day, (c) microcycle, (d) mesocycle, (e) macrocycle, (f) Olympic cycle (quadrennial cycle), and (g) long-lasting, or multiyear, training.

Short-term planning refers to the planning of workouts, training days, microcycles, and mesocycles (typically 2-6 weeks). A general principle of short-term training design is that the effects of fatigue from different types of muscular work are specific. Thus an athlete who is too tired to repeat one exercise in an acceptable manner may still be able to perform another exercise to satisfaction. Training too many motor abilities during the same workout, microcycle, or mesocycle lessens effectiveness. Two or three main targets are plenty. Try to balance the number of training targets in these cycles to enhance performance growth while also planning the schedule to avoid the superposition of fatigue traces from individual workouts and the hazard of staleness.

The general idea in planning workouts and training days is to have athletes do as much work as possible while they are as fresh as possible. Unlike the situation with endurance training, it isn't necessary that the athletes become exhausted in a heavy resistance workout. To prevent early fatigue, rest intervals between sets, especially when trainees are working with heavy weights, should be long (about 4-5 min). During training days, distributing the training volume into smaller units has a definite advantage, provided that the time intervals between workouts is sufficient for restoration.

In properly sequenced exercise, the athlete performs the most valuable exercises—those requiring fine motor coordination and maximal neuronal output—in a rested state. To prevent premature fatigue, include main sport exercises before assistance exercises; use dynamic, power-type drills before slow exercises (such as squats); and exercise larger muscle groups before smaller ones.

The method of maximum efforts is recognized as the most efficient training method and should be practiced at the beginning of a training workout, following warm-up. Pyramid training is ineffective and even detrimental. Mixed training sessions that include a strength routine section are less effective for strength development than special heavy resistance workouts. The same holds true for circuit training.

In planning heavy resistance protocols in micro- and mesocycles it is important to assign adequate rest between exercise periods and to balance the stability of a training stimulus (to call forth an adaptation) and its variation (to avoid premature accommodation and staleness).

Adequate recovery during a microcycle is achieved by rest–exercise alternation and proper exercise sequencing. To retain the attained strength gains, schedule at least two training sessions per week. The variability of training programs during micro- and mesocycles is realized through changes in training load (not exercise complexes). One stable complex of exercises should be performed through a mesocycle (to elicit an adaptation). The empirical rule of 60% has stood the test of time: The training volume of a day (microcycle) with minimal loading should be about 60% of the volume of a maximal day (microcycle) load.

Medium-term planning (periodization) deals with macrocycles. When you periodize, you divide the training season, typically 1 year long, into smaller and more manageable intervals (periods of training, mesocycles, and microcycles), with the goal of getting the best performance results during the primary competitions of the season.

In periodizing, allow for delayed transformation. During periods of strenuous training, athletes cannot achieve the best performance results. They need an interval of relatively easy exercise to realize the effect of previous difficult training sessions. The adaptation occurs (or is manifested) during unloading, rather than loading, periods. Another phenomenon that you need to consider is delayed transmutation. A special training routine is needed to transmute the acquired motor potential into athletic performance. This goal is realized during highly specific training in transformation mesocycles. Finally, it is important to take training residuals into account when you plan for the medium term. De-adaptation, as well as adaptation, takes time. The time course of training should be based on the duration of the immediately preceding period of training, the training experience of the athletes, the motor abilities being targeted, and the training volumes during training mesocycles.

A good periodization plan is a subtle trade-off among conflicting demands. The conventional approach has been to solve the problem sequentially, for instance to begin off-season preparation with nonspecific strength training and after that change to a highly specific technique routine. A more recent strategy is to sequentially develop specific motor abilities with frequent intermittent changes in training targets and to maintain the nontargeted motor abilities with retaining loads.

The timing of strength training in macrocycles is only indirectly influenced by the exercise–rest paradigm and by the desire to avoid premature fatigue. Other training facets also influence timing, including the demand for variability of training stimuli, delayed transformation of training load (into fitness development), delayed transmutation of a nonspecific fitness acquired in assistance exercises (relative to a main sport skill) to specific fitness, and training residuals.

chapter 6

Strength Exercises

The first problem a coach encounters in planning a training program is exercise selection. The alternatives seem innumerable: free weights, exercise machines, isometrics, uphill ambulation with an additional load, dropping jumps, self-resistance exercises, and so on. In this chapter you will read about various classes of exercises used for strength enhancement.

CLASSIFICATION

Strength exercises typically are classified according to the change in muscle length. They may be static, or **isometric,** which literally means "constant length," or **dynamic,** a category further divided into exercises with concentric, eccentric, or **reversible** muscle action. Dynamic exercises are also sometimes labeled **isotonic** (from *iso*, meaning "constant," and *tonic*, meaning "tension"). The underlying assumption is that the muscle produces an unvarying amount of tension while shortening as it overcomes a constant resistance. This is not the case for intact muscles. If external resistance (weight lifted) is constant, the tension exerted by a muscle varies during shortening because of factors such as the change in muscle moment arm.

Among dynamic exercises, one special class is termed isokinetic *(kinetic* means "speed"). During **isokinetic action,** the speed of movement is constant, regardless of muscle tension. (The term *isokinetic*, unfortunately, is not strictly defined. Speed of movement may refer to rate of change in muscle length, velocity of the load being lifted, or angular velocity of the joint.) Special equipment, usually expensive, is necessary for proper isokinetic training.

Because dynamic exercises with concentric muscle action are much more popular in athletic training than other types of exercise, these will be our focal point.

Strength exercises can also be grouped according to the muscles involved in the action (e.g., abdominal exercises, leg exercises). The strength of different muscle groups often varies greatly in one person. An athlete can have high strength in one movement, for instance in the leg extension, but be relatively weak in another, such as pull-ups. The comparative strength of different muscle groups is called **strength topography.**

In addition, strength exercises are often classified according to their specificity as (a) nonspecific (e.g., barbell squats for javelin throwers or baseball pitchers); (b) specific (e.g., exercises for muscles specifically involved in a throwing task, as in figure 6.1); and (c) sport exercise with added resistance (e.g., overhand throwing of heavy objects).

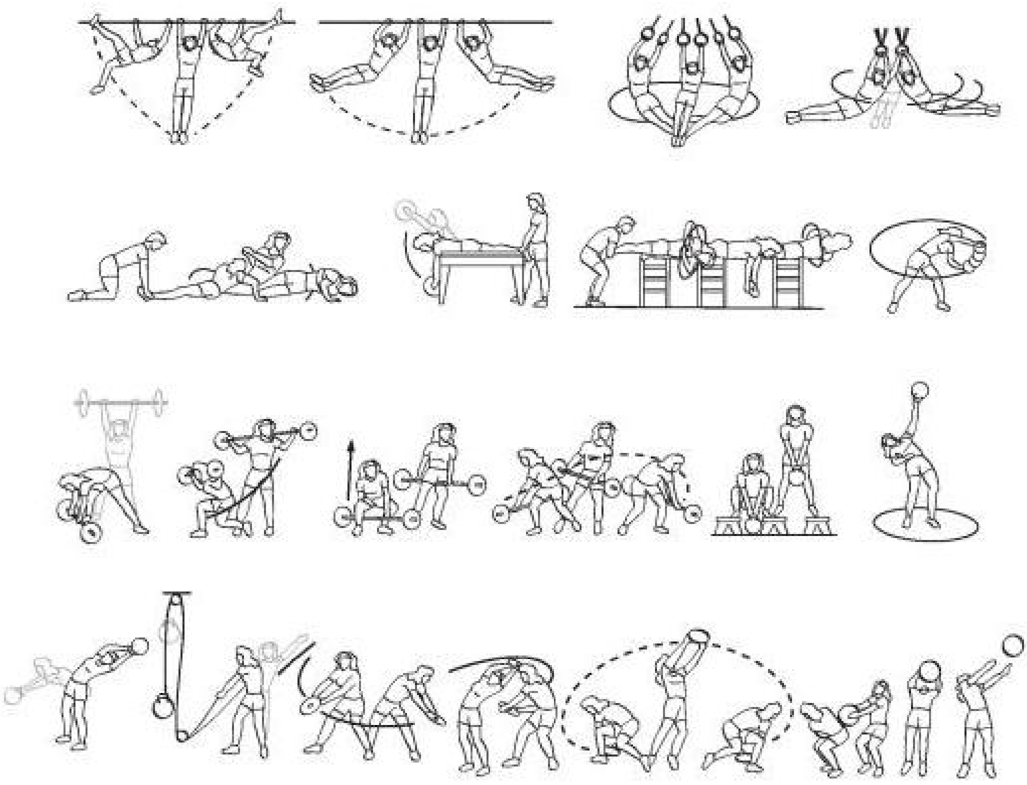


Figure 6.1 An exercise set of specific strength drills for strength training of female hammer throwers. In hammer throwing, the main efforts are exerted not in a vertical but in an oblique direction. The exercises included in the set are designed to respond to these requirements. Note in particular the techniques of the barbell lifts. They are quite different from the classic techniques of weight training, which are usually symmetric barbell lifts with equal loading of the right and left extremities.

Which Muscle Groups Are Most Important? How Do We Evaluate General Strength Development?

For more than a century, hand grip strength was commonly used to estimate the strength development level of various subjects and populations. Is grip strength a valid test for whole-body strength? In the grip test, the thumb produces force against the force generated by the other four fingers. Since the four fingers together can generate greater force values than the thumb alone, in reality the strength of only the thumb is measured in the test. Is the strength of the thumb so important in athletics and everyday life that it should be considered a valid, or even a unique measure of strength development? Certainly not. Which muscle groups are, then, the most important?

This question has been addressed in several investigations. Ideally, a small number of muscle groups or exercises could be found that would represent with maximal precision the achievements in a large test battery. To find such a set of muscles, groups of subjects were given many (up to 100) strength tests. Statistical analyses were employed to find the most representative (important, valid) muscle groups and tests. The results led to the recommendations for choosing the following most important muscle groups that should be specifically targeted when working with beginning athletes: the abdominal muscles, spine erectors, leg extensors, arm extensors, and pectoralis major. When you are limited to two tests, use measures of strength lift on a high bar with overturn and forcible leg extension (e.g., squatting on one leg).

EXERCISE SELECTION FOR BEGINNING ATHLETES

With beginning athletes, especially young people, strength topography is the main focus in the proper selection of strength training exercises. The most important muscle groups should be chosen and trained. The following recommendations are offered as a rule of thumb:

1. Strengthen the muscle group that, if weak, can increase the risk of trauma (for instance, neck muscles in wrestling and tackle football).
2. Train large, proximally located muscles, especially in the trunk area, with the abdominal wall muscles and spine erectors as a primary choice.
3. Increase strength in sport-related movements to a level that permits sport technique acquisition without technical mistakes.
4. Have athletes perform movements through the entire range of angular joint motion. The submaximal effort and repeated effort methods only, not singular maximal efforts, should be employed.
5. The so-called **3-year rule** is popular among experienced coaches. According to this rule, an athlete should use strength-specific exercises and exercises with a barbell, such as barbell squats, only after 3 years of preliminary general preparation.

EXERCISE SELECTION FOR QUALIFIED ATHLETES

Selecting strength exercises for qualified athletes is substantially more complex than for beginners. The general idea is simple: Strength exercises must be *specific*. This means that training drills must be relevant to the demands of the event an athlete is training for. Strength training drills must mimic the movement pattern that the pertinent sport skill actually entails.

However, the practical realization of this general idea is not easy. Coaches and athletes have made many efforts to find the most effective strength training drills for various sports. The main requirements of this task

Exercise Machines Versus Free Weights

Strength exercise machines are presently in broad use. When exercising on the machines, there is no need to balance or control the weight: the movement trajectory is prescribed (scientists would say that the system has only one degree of freedom). This is different from many real-life situations where objects must be stabilized. For instance, when lifting a barbell above the head the athlete must control the barbell position. If the barbell is displaced forward or backward the equilibrium is lost, which may result in unsuccessful attempt and injury. In contrast, exercise machines constrain movement in certain directions. Other examples of mechanically constrained movements include opening a door, pushing a bobsled, and pedaling on a bicycle. When performers must stabilize an object in addition to exerting force on it in space, the force production drops. The force loss is a price we pay to stabilize the object.

When the movement is constrained, the performer may exert force in a direction different from the direction of motion and still perform the task. The actual constraints—the tangible physical obstacles to movement—may completely change joint torques. Consequently, different muscle groups may act when body motion is free or is actually (physically) constrained. In particular, when working on strength exercise machines, the direction of the end-point force and the joint torques may be quite distinct from what is observed in lifting or holding free weights. This may be not very important for recreational athletes, but it may be detrimental for experienced athletes whose immediate goal is the performance improvement.

Training with exercise machines as compared with free weights has certain pros and cons. The advantages include the following:

- The initial weight can be applied at low level and increased in small increments (1 kg or less);
- the risk of injury is smaller (provided that overexertion is avoided);
- there is no need to study the performance technique—it is simple; and
- less time is consumed.

However, free weights are more specific for athletes. The general conclusion is that exercise machines are recommended for recreational and beginning athletes (free weights can also be used), while training with free weights—even though it requires studying lifting techniques—is advantageous for experienced athletes striving for performance improvement.

are described in the following section. We will consider yielding strength and strength in reversible muscle action as separate motor abilities and discuss them later.

Working Muscles

The requirement regarding working muscles is most evident and simple. The same muscle groups must be involved in both the main sport event and in the training drill. For instance, heavy resistance exercises for the improvement of paddling in canoeing should focus on the muscles utilized in the motion patterns associated with the paddle stroke.

Unfortunately, this obvious requirement very often is not satisfied in athletic practice. Coaches and athletes often employ exercises and training equipment that are not specific—that do not involve the muscle groups active in the main sport movement. For instance, in swimming, the athlete's hand moves along a complex curvilinear trajectory that includes inward and outward motions (see figure 6.2). The resistance vector occurs in a three-dimensional space (figure 6.2*a*). During dryland training, however, swimmers typically use exercise devices with linear, straight-back pulls (figure 6.2*b*). Muscle activity patterns during such training are distinctly different from those experienced while swimming. It is preferable to mimic the three-dimensional hand resistance that occurs in swimming by using two- and three-dimensional exercise devices (figure 6.2*c*).

Muscle activity in the same exercise can vary if the performance technique, such as the body posture, is changed. This is illustrated in figure 6.3. An athlete performs shoulder

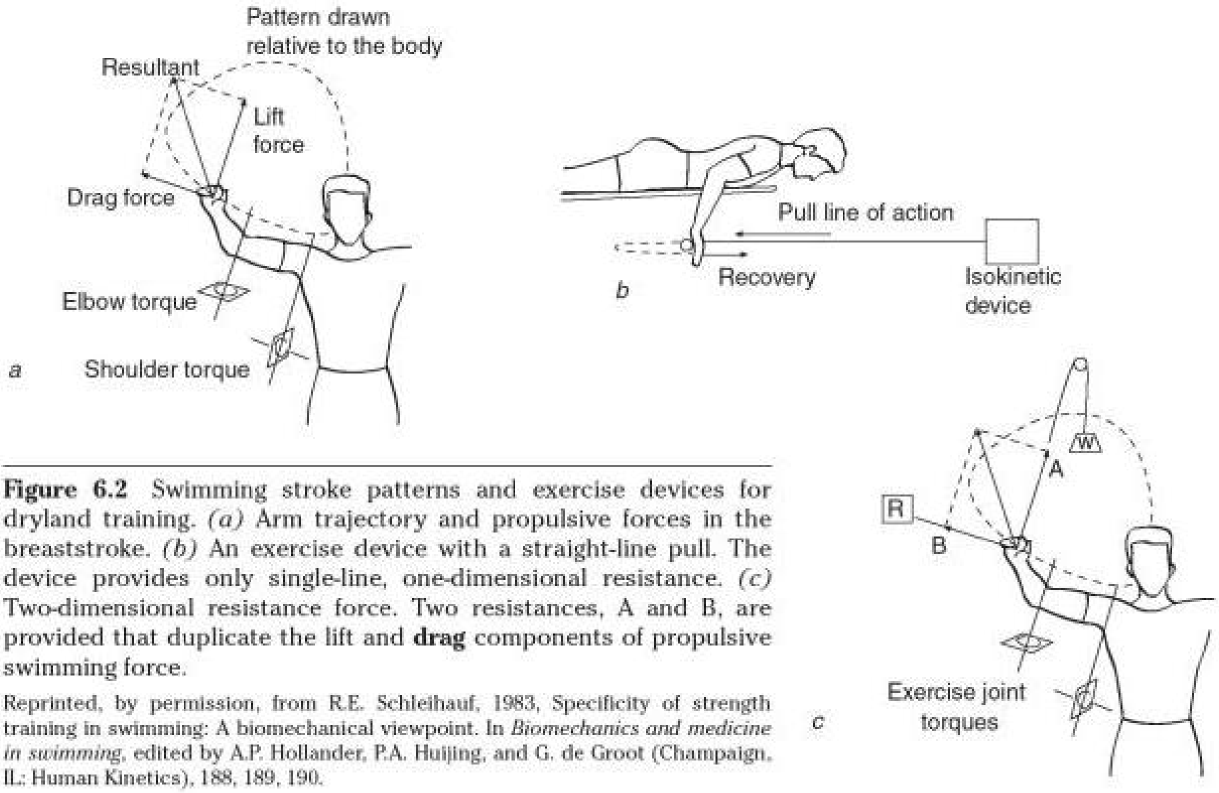


Figure 6.2 Swimming stroke patterns and exercise devices for dryland training. *(a)* Arm trajectory and propulsive forces in the breaststroke. *(b)* An exercise device with a straight-line pull. The device provides only single-line, one-dimensional resistance. *(c)* Two-dimensional resistance force. Two resistances, A and B, are provided that duplicate the lift and **drag** components of propulsive swimming force.

Reprinted, by permission, from R.E. Schleihauf, 1983, Specificity of strength training in swimming: A biomechanical viewpoint. In *Biomechanics and medicine in swimming*, edited by A.P. Hollander, P.A. Huijing, and G. de Groot (Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics), 188, 189, 190.

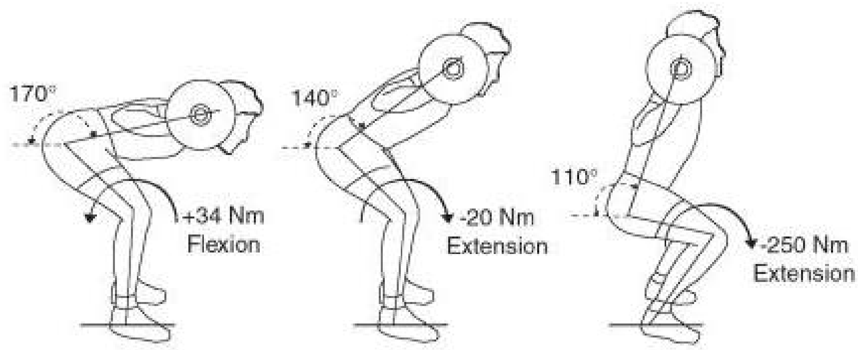


Figure 6.3 Net muscle moments in the knee joints (Nm) during squatting with an 80-kg barbell. Both the magnitude and direction (flexion or extension) of the moment are altered when the athlete's posture is changed.

From V.M. Zatsiorsky and L.M. Raitsin, 1973, *Force-posture relations in athletic movements* (Moscow, Russia: Russian State Academy of Physical Education and Sport). Technical report. By permission of Russian State Academy of Physical Education and Sport.

squats with a barbell using different lifting techniques. Not only does the level of muscle activity change, but also the involvement of specific muscle groups; the knee extensors are used in some instances and the knee flexors in others.

Four techniques are employed to identify the working muscle groups:

1. Muscle palpation. Muscles that become tense are the involved muscles and these should be trained with heavy resistance.
2. Intentional inducing of **delayed muscle soreness** (i.e., the pain and soreness that occur 24 to 48 h after training workouts). To this end, a coach intentionally

overdoses the training load during the first workout with new drills. The painful muscles are then identified as the working muscles.

3. Biomechanical analysis of the joint torques similar to that presented in figure 6.2. The method is good but in many cases too complex for practical use.
4. Registering muscle electric activity, or **electromyography (EMG).** This method is superior, but special equipment and technical personnel are needed for this type of analysis.

Other requirements for exercise selection, described later in this chapter, are less obvious. These are based mostly on factors determining the amount of muscular strength available in various motor tasks (see chapter 2).

Type of Resistance

In terrestrial movements, the weight or mass of an object (an implement, a barbell, one's own body)—or a combination of weight and mass—usually serves as resistance. In aquatic sports, such as swimming, rowing, kayaking, and canoeing, the resistance is determined by principles of hydrodynamics. If the training drill resistance is different from the resistance in the sport event the athlete is training for, both the force production (recall figure 2.3) and the pattern of muscle activity are also different.

In terrestrial movements, when an object of given mass (a throwing implement or an athlete's extremity) is accelerated, the burst of muscle action is concentrated both in time and in space. Thus, the muscle action is of short duration and the maximal force is developed in a specific body position. If other types of external resistance are used in training, such as devices with hydraulic resistance, rubber cords, and isokinetic machines, the maximal force is developed either throughout the whole range of the angular motion or in a body position different from the position used in the sport event. The muscle action is not concentrated in time but instead tends toward protracted activation. Such exercises are not specific for on-land athletic events. The first choice for these sports is exercises that use free weights, the body mass, or both as resistance.

In aquatic sports, water resistance (while pulling through the water) increases with velocity (an example of mechanical feedback; see chapter 2). The relationship is quadratic, meaning that external force applied by the athlete is proportional to the squared velocity of the arm or paddle relative to the water. Athletes contract their muscles in a protracted way. This type of activity must be simulated during dryland training. The best choice here is training equipment in which the resistance is proportional to the velocity squared. This equipment is rather expensive and impractical, though.

There are also machines in which the resistance *(F)* is either proportional to the velocity of movement or constant through the whole range of the motion. In the first type of device, oil viscosity is used as a resistant force. In an apparatus based on hydraulics, the oil is squeezed from one chamber to another through an adjustable orifice. The greater the velocity of the forced oil displacement, the greater the resistance offered by the training device. Such devices usually provide resistance only in the concentric phase of the

Are Chin-Ups and Dips Equally Effective for Various Sports?

A conditioning coach is working with several varsity teams: football players (running backs and wide receivers), volleyball players, swimmers, and rowers. She has been asked by the head coaches to pay special attention to the enhancement of arm strength. Her general philosophy is to use strength exercises that are specific to relevant sports. In addition, the time available for strength training is limited. Thus, she must recommend only the most efficient exercises. The following variants of chinning (on a horizontal bar) versus dipping (on a parallel bar) distribution are considered (%): (a) 100/0, (b) 70/30, (c) 50/50, (d) 30/70, and (e) 0/100.

What is your choice? Please substantiate it.

movement. In pneumatic devices where resistance is due to air pressure, resistance can be provided on both eccentric (positive) and concentric (negative) movements. Again, however, equipment can be expensive and multiple stations are needed to exercise all of the different muscle groups in the body. In devices of the other type, dry (Coulomb's) friction serves as resistance. The force *(F)* is constant if the velocity *(V)* is not equal to 0 (F = constant, if $V > 0$). The force may be changed from 0 to F at zero velocity. These types of devices should be used as a second choice.

Time (and Rate) of Force Development

Because of the explosive strength deficit (ESD; see chapter 2), maximal force F_{mm} cannot be attained in the **time-deficit zone.** If the training objective is to increase maximal force production (F_{mm}), there is no reason to use exercises in the time deficit zone, where F_{mm} cannot be developed. Furthermore, heavy resistance exercises are not very useful for enhancing the rate of force development in qualified athletes (figure 6.4).

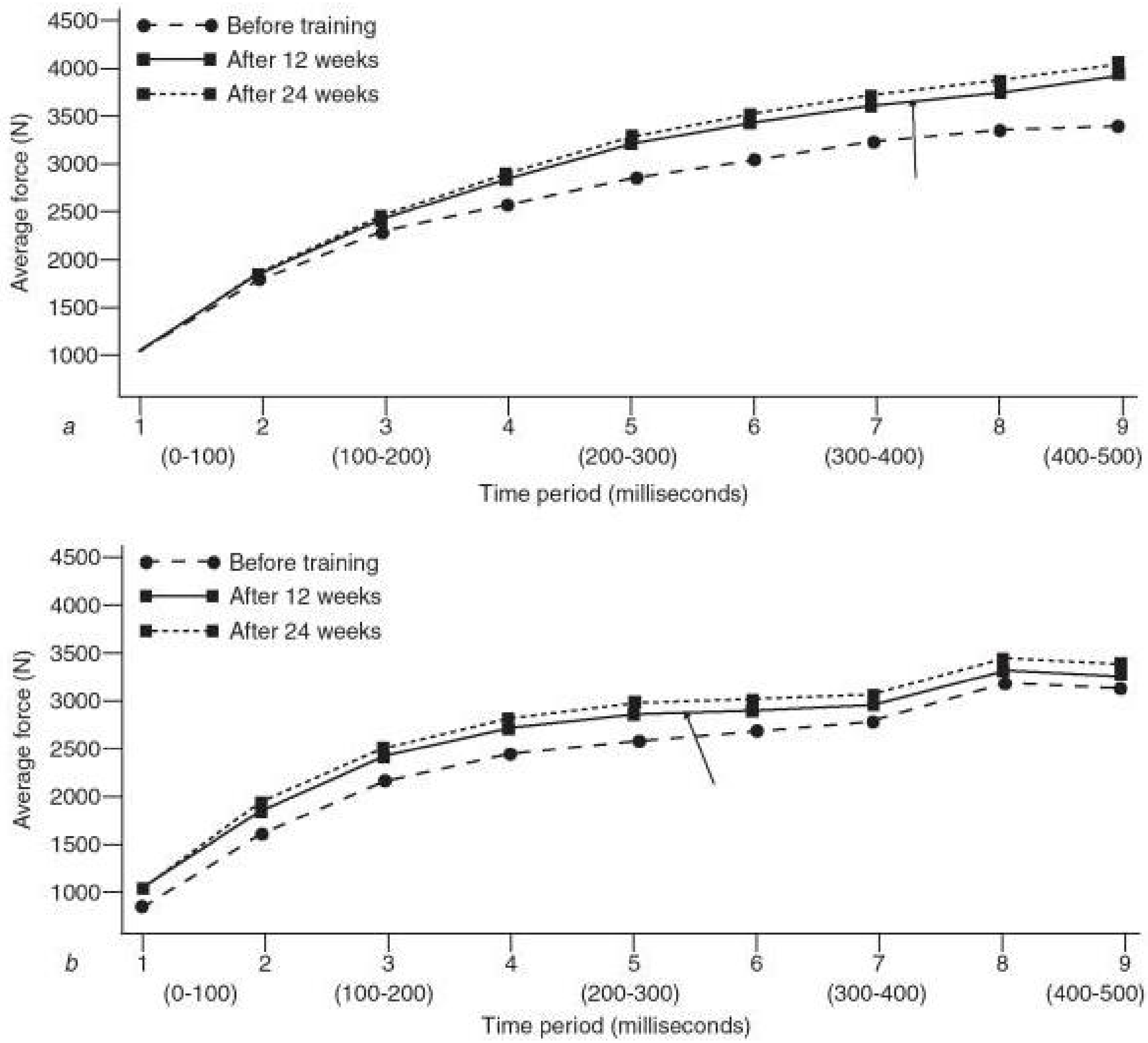


Figure 6.4 The influence of heavy resistance training *(a)* and dynamic (explosive, power) resistance training *(b)* on maximum strength and the rate of force development during an explosive maximal bilateral leg extension. As a result of heavy resistance training, only F_{mm}, not the initial part of the force–time curve, is enhanced. The rate of force development, especially the S-gradient, is unchanged.

Adapted, by permission, from K. Håkkinen and P.V. Komi, 1985, "Changes in electrical and mechanical behavior of leg extensor muscles during heavy resistance strength training," *Scandinavian Journal of Sports Sciences* 7: 65-75. By permission from author.

If the general objective of training is to increase force production in explosive types of movement, in principle this can be done in one of two ways. One option is to increase maximal force F_{mm}. This strategy, however, brings good results only when the ESD is substantially less than 50%. As an example, imagine two athletes who put a shot with a force of 500 N. The first athlete can bench press a 120-kg barbell (roughly 600 N per arm). The ESD for this athlete is $[(600 - 500) / 600] \cdot 100 = 16.6\%$. This is an extremely low value for a shot-putter. The athlete has a great potential to improve performance by increasing F_{mm}. Lifting a 200-kg barbell in the bench press will surely lead to improvement in this individual's performance. For the other athlete, 1RM in the bench press is 250 kg. The ESD is $[(1250 - 500) / 1250] \cdot 100 = 60\%$. Further improvement of this athlete's maximal bench press, say to 300 kg, will not result in improvement in shot-putting performance.

The second option for training to enhance force production is to increase the rate of force development. Heavy resistance exercises are not the best choice in this instance, especially for elite athletes. Special exercises and training methods are a better alternative.

Velocity of Movement

The effects of a strength exercise depend on movement velocity. If exercises are performed in the high-force, low-velocity range of the **force–velocity curve** (figure 6.5*a*), the maximal force F_m increases mainly in the trained range. On the other hand, if exercise is done in the low-force, high-velocity range, performance improves primarily in this area (figure 6.5*b*).

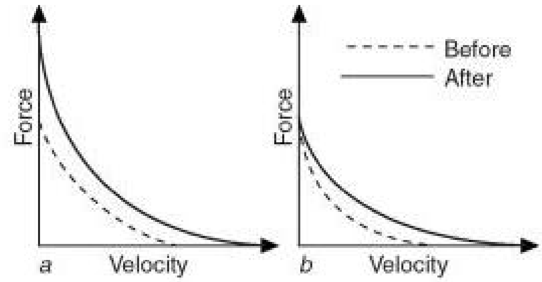


Figure 6.5 Force–velocity relations before and after muscle power training with different loads. *(a)* High resistance (around 100% F_{mm}); *(b)* low resistance (around 0% F_{mm}).

These findings serve as a basis for the recommendation to develop dynamic force at speeds that approximate the athletic motion. It is recommended to choose the resistance magnitude that will produce a movement in the same velocity range as the relevant sport event. However, if an exercise is performed in the low-force, high-velocity range, the time available for movement may be too short to develop the maximal force during the movement. The situation we looked at earlier, with training either F_{mm} or rate of force development, occurs. Hence, dynamic strength training should be complemented by training of the rate of force development and F_{mm} (see the preceding section on time and rate of force development).

Do not misinterpret the suggestion to perform strength exercises with maximum velocity as advice to execute these exercises with high frequency (high number of repetitions per minute). Too high a frequency has been shown in several experiments to impede strength gain. If movement frequency is in the medium range, its precise value is of no importance. In one experiment, for instance, strength gain in the bench press was similar when a barbell was lifted 5, 10, or 15 times a minute but was much smaller for athletes who performed the lifts with the maximum possible frequency.

Are Strength Exercises Equally Useful for All Athletes?

Two athletes of similar body dimensions possess equal achievements in the standing vertical jump. Their performances in barbell squats, however, are different. Athlete P squats a barbell equaling his body weight (BW). Athlete Q can squat a 1.5-BW barbell. For which of these athletes will barbell squatting be more beneficial? Why?

Force–Posture Relations

By selecting a proper body position in strength exercise, an athlete can (a) vary the amount of resistance, (b) load particular muscle groups to different degrees, and (c) fine-tune the resistance to the joint strength curves. For instance, in push-ups the amount of resistance can be changed by placing the hands or legs at various elevations (figure 6.6). In bench presses, the different loading of the shoulder and elbow extensor muscles can be achieved by varying the grip width: the wider the grip, the larger the load on the muscles serving the shoulder joints.

In the ensuing paragraphs, we will discuss fine-tuning resistance to the joint strength curves. The idea behind these adjustments is to train the muscular strength at different muscle lengths. Effects of strength training are posture specific and hence muscle-length specific (figure 6.7). In strength training of experienced athletes, this fact should be taken into account.

What Is the Optimal Weight of Medicine Balls?

Medicine balls are popular implements for training throwing tasks. In one study, the optimal weight of medicine balls for dryland training of water polo players was determined. The ball velocity in natural conditions (in the water) served as a criterion. The results showed that the optimal medicine ball weight for dryland training is approximately 2.0 kg. Both the correlation with throwing velocity in water conditions and the gain in velocity due to training were highest with medicine balls of this weight.

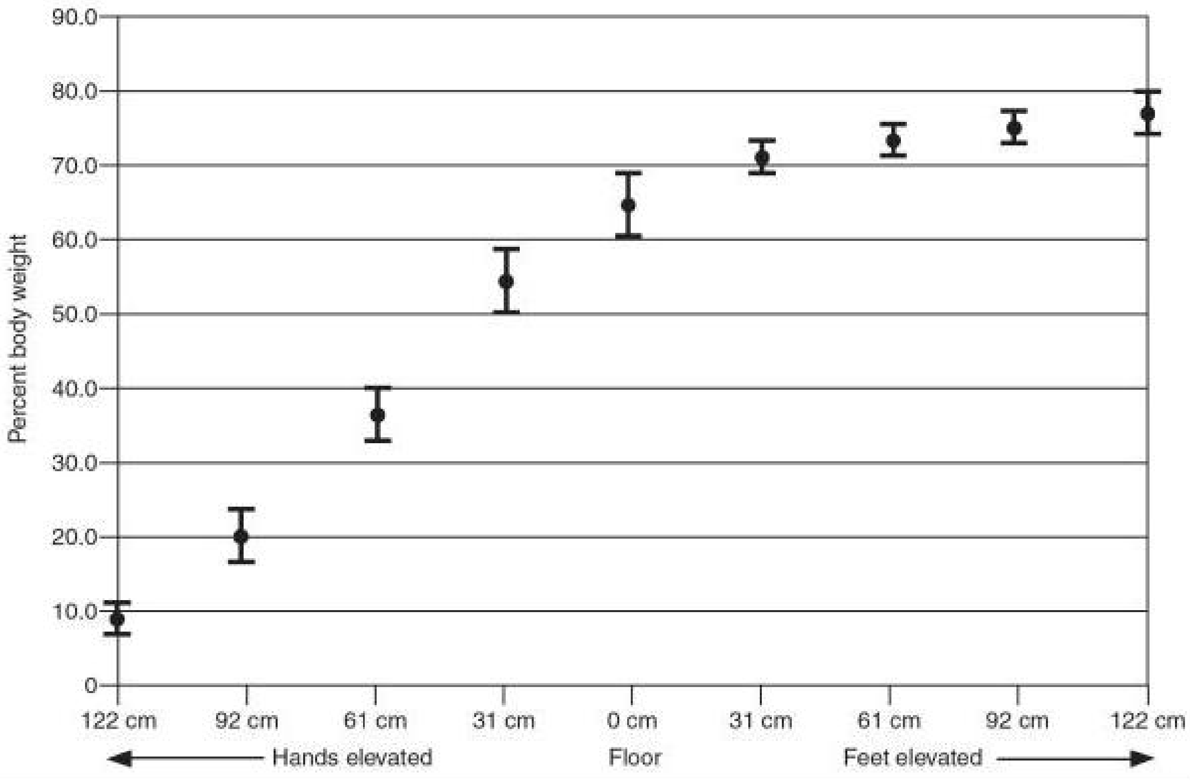


Figure 6.6 Percent body weight supported by the hands during push-ups at various body postures. Depending on the elevation levels of the hands and arms, the resistance changes from approximately 10% to 75% of the body weight. With the hands and the legs on the floor, the hands support approximately 65% of the body weight.

Data from research by M. Duffey, V.M. Zatsiorsky (2002).

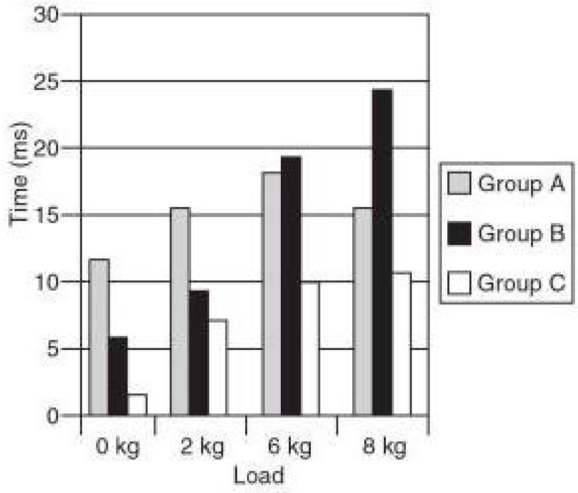


Figure 6.7 Effects of isometric training at the different joint positions on the time of the maximally fast arm movement (the difference between the movement time before and after the training). Starting from the dependent posture, the subjects (n = 32) performed a maximally fast shoulder flexion with a barbell in the hand. The mass of the barbells was 2, 6, and 8 kg. The subjects were beginning weightlifters (age 17 ± 1.2 years). In addition to the main training routine that was the same for all the subjects, group A (11 subjects) performed isometric training of the shoulder flexors at an angle of 0 to 5°. Group B trained at a shoulder angle of 90°. Group C (10 subjects) served as a control. The isometric training consisted of 3 sets of 3 maximal efforts in a session, 3 times a week, for 24 weeks. The rest intervals equaled 10 s between the trials and 60 s between the sets. Training at an angle of 90° was beneficial for lifting a heavy 8-kg barbell, while training at the starting position was advantageous for lifting a 2-kg barbell and moving the unloaded arm.

Reprinted, by permission, from V.M. Zatsiorsky, 2003, Biomechanics of strength and strength training. In *Strength and power in sport,* 2nd ed., edited by P.V. Komi (Oxford, UK: Blackwell Science), 467.

The magnitude of weight that an athlete can lift in a given motion is limited by the strength attainable at the *weakest point* of the full range of joint motion. In other words, the weakest point of a muscle group determines the heaviest constant weight that can be lifted. If the constant external resistance (such as a barbell of a given weight) is used in heavy resistance training, the muscles are maximally activated at only the weakest point of the motion. For instance, there is a threefold difference in the maximal force that can be developed at different angles of hip flexion (figure 6.8). If someone lifts the maximal weight that is equal to 100% of F_m at the weakest point of movement (at a 70° hip-joint angle), the hip flexor muscles are taxed to only 33% of maximal strength at the strongest point (at a 150° angle). The muscles are not required to exert maximal force in this region.

Three approaches are used in contemporary strength training to manage the force–angle paradigm (the fourth "solution" is to not pay attention to this issue at all). They are the peak-contraction principle, accommodating resistance, and accentuation.

The Peak-Contraction Principle

The idea behind the **peak-contraction principle** is to focus efforts on increasing muscular strength primarily at the *weakest points* of the human strength curve. Thus the entire performance, for instance 1RM, is enhanced. In practice, the peak-contraction principle is realized in one of three ways:

1. **Selection of a proper body position.** The resistance offered by the lifted load is not, in reality, constant over a full range of joint motion. The resistance is determined by the moment of gravitational force (i.e., by the product of weight and horizontal distance to the axis of rotation) rather than by the weight of the implement or the body part itself. The moment of gravitational force is maximal when the center of gravity of the lifted load is on the same horizontal line as the axis of rotation. In this case, the lever arm of the gravitational force is greatest. By varying body posture, it is possible to an extent to superimpose the human strength curve on the resistance curve in a desirable manner.

The peak-contraction principle is realized, if worse comes to worst, when the external resistance (moment of gravity force) is maximal at the point where muscular strength is minimal. The corresponding body position is called the minimax position. The term *minimax* literally means "minimum among

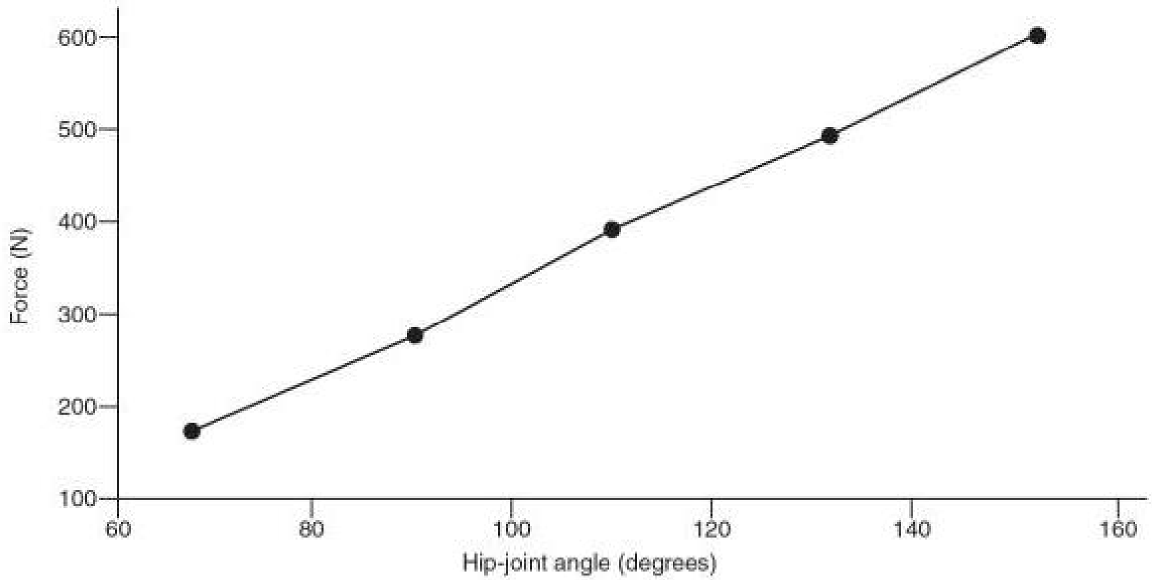


Figure 6.8 Strength curve in hip flexion. Isometric force, men. Angle of 180° is in anatomical position.
From M. Williams and L. Stutzmann, 1959, 39: 145-152. Adapted from *Physical Therapy* with permission of the American Physical Therapy Association.

maximums." At each of the joint angles, the strength that is maximal for this position, F_m, is developed. The minimum F_m from this set is the minimax value.

To visualize this concept, compare an exercise such as leg raising from two starting body positions: lying supine and hanging on a horizontal bar (figure 6.9). The second exercise imposes a much greater demand than the first.

The resistance (moment of gravity force) is nearly equal in the two exercises and reaches its maximum when the legs are placed horizontally. However, when the legs are raised in the recumbent position, the maximal resistance coincides with the strongest points of the force–angle curve (the hip flexor muscles are not shortened). When the same leg raising is performed on the horizontal bar, the hip flexor muscles are shortened at the instant the legs cross the horizontal line. Thus, the position of maximal resistance coincides with the minimal (weakest) point on the force–angle curve ("worse comes to worst").

2. **Use of special training devices.** An example of a special device is shown in figure

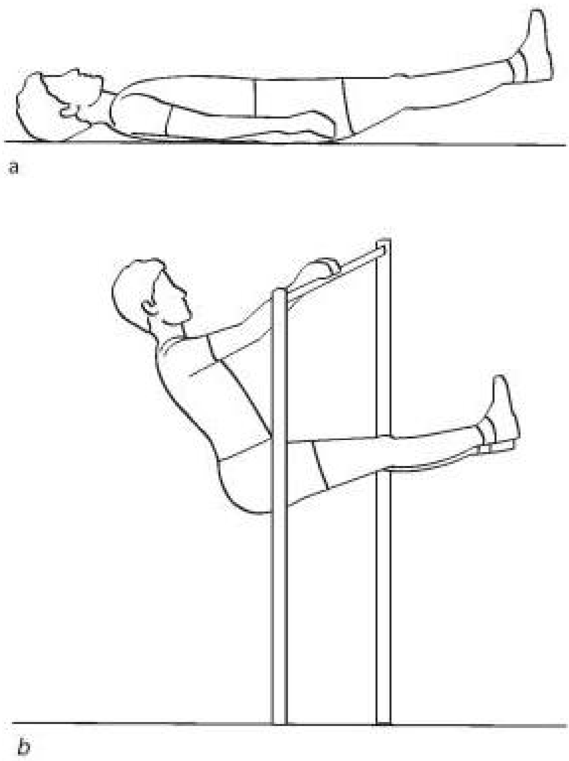


Figure 6.9 Leg raising from two starting positions, *(a)* a supine position and *(b)* on a horizontal bar. The exercise is more difficult to perform when it is performed on a horizontal bar.

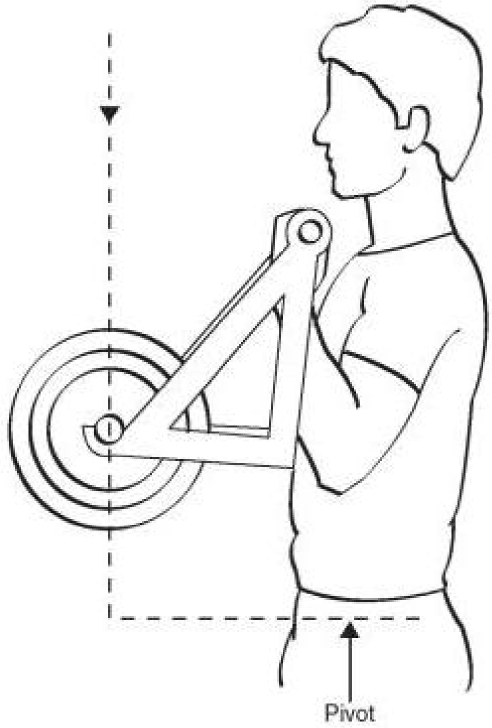


Figure 6.10 A device used to implement the peak-contraction principle. The device is employed to perform the arm curl. With this device, the highest resistance is provided at the end of the movement. When the elbow is maximally flexed, the athlete's strength (i.e., the force magnitude) is minimal (see figure 2.22) and the resistance is the greatest ("worse comes to worst").

6.10. If a barbell were used in the arm curl, the maximal resistance would be at the horizontal position of the forearms. In contrast to the situation with the peak-contraction principle, the strength of forearm flexion at the elbow joint is maximal, not minimal, at this position. With the device shown in figure 6.10, maximal resistance coincides with the weakest point on the human strength curve.

3. **The slow beginning motion.** A slow start can be used in strength drills such as the inverse curl shown earlier (figure 4.6). The maximal resistance in this exercise is offered while the trunk is in the horizontal position. If the movement begins too fast, the lift in the intermediate range of motion is performed at the expense of the kinetic energy acquired in the first part of the movement. The erector spinae muscles, then, are not fully activated. Experienced athletes and coaches advocate a slow start for this drill.

Studies of maximal external resistance (moment of force) exerted against different points along the human strength curve (strong points or weak points) have shown that when the peak-contraction principle is employed, strength gains are higher. Thus, this training protocol has a definite advantage. Another merit is the relatively small amount of mechanical work performed (the total weight lifted). A disadvantage, however, is that the transfer of training to other body positions is relatively low (see figure 1.3 on page 8). A coach should consider the pros and cons of this principle before implementing it.

Accommodating Resistance

The main idea of **accommodating resistance** is to develop maximal tension throughout the *complete range of motion* rather than at a particular (e.g., weakest) point. The idea was first suggested in the 19th century by Zander (1879) who developed many strength exercise machines based on this principle. The accommodating resistance was the cornerstone of the **medico-mechanical gymnastics** popular before World War I. Today, some of the Zander equipment can be seen at the Smithsonian Institution in Washington, DC. Accommodating resistance can be achieved in two ways. One type of system offers *high resistance without mechanical feedback*. In this case, the speed of motion is constant no matter how much force is developed. This principle is realized in isokinetic equipment. The movement speed on such devices can be preset and maintained (kept constant) during a motion regardless of the amount of force applied against the machine. The working muscles are maximally loaded throughout the complete range of motion. (Isometric exercises at different joint angles, in which velocity is zero, can be considered an extreme example of this approach.) Because the velocity of muscle shortening is predetermined, the training of different types of muscle fibers (fast or slow) can potentially be stressed within the framework of the isokinetic protocol.

Isokinetic training, while very popular in physical therapy, is rarely used by elite athletes. It has shortcomings besides the high cost of the equipment, which may be prohibitive. The angular velocity of movement is typically relatively low—below 360°/s (it may be above 5,000°/s in athletic movements). Most training devices are designed to exclusively perform one-joint movements that are only used sporadically in athletic training.

Another type of system provides *variable resistance* that is accommodated to either the human strength curve or movement speed. In some machines, resistance is applied in concert with the human strength curve (Nautilus-type equipment). Because of the special odd-shaped cams on these machines, the lever arm of the resistance force or applied force is variable so that the load varies accordingly (figure 6.11). The resistance (moment of force) varies in accordance with an athlete's capabilities. This variation provides greater resistance at the joint configurations where the athlete is stronger and lower resistance at weaker positions. The user must exert maximum effort throughout the range of movement.

Unfortunately, the cams of many machines are incorrectly designed and the offered resistance, contrary to claims, does not match average strength curves. A simple way to vary (increase) resistance while lifting a barbell is to use lifting chains: One end of a heavy chain is fixed to the barbell while the second end remains on the floor during the entire lift. While the bar is being lifted some links of the chain are lifted from the floor and, hence, the lifted weight increases. In such movements as barbell squats, bench presses, and military presses, lifting chains help adjust the resistance to the strength curve (see figure 2.26 on page 44). However, in some lifts that involve many body parts, the shapes of the strength curves are rather complex (see figure 2.21 on page 40), and using chains in such exercises would not be useful.

Another type of exercise apparatus accommodates resistance to movement velocity. The higher the velocity, the greater the resistance offered by the system. These devices are typically based on hydraulic principles.

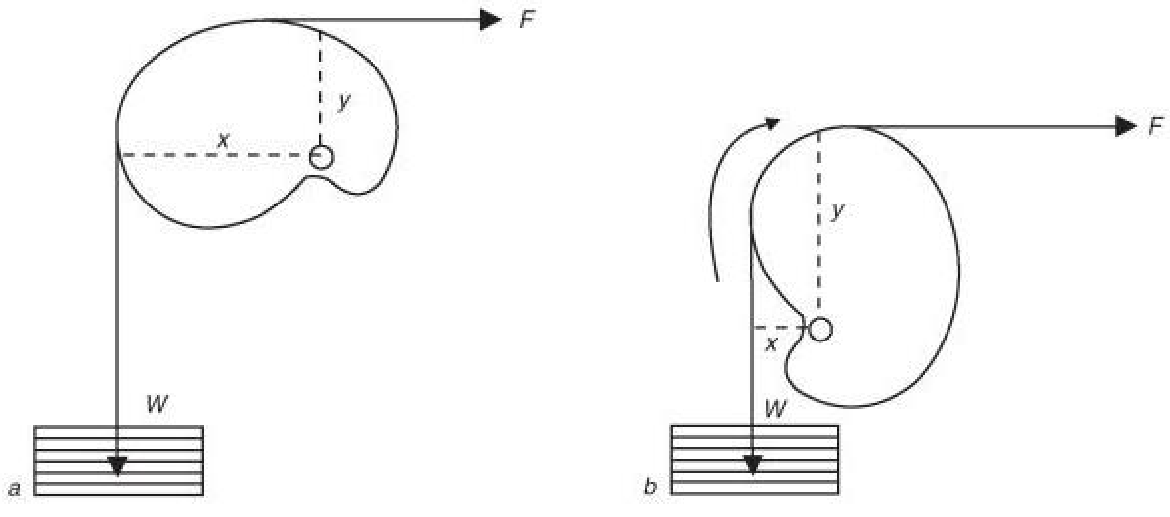


Figure 6.11 A cam with variable lever arms. In this arrangement, the moment arms of both applied force *(F)* and weight force *(W)* are variable. *(a)* The moment arm of the applied force *(y)* is smaller than the lever arm of the weight force *(x)*, $y < x$; this ratio is used at points of the strength curve where a larger F can be exerted; *(b)* $y > x$; this ratio is used at the weakest points of the strength curve.

Adapted, by permission, from M.H. Stone and H.S. O'Bryant, 1987, *Weight training: A scientific approach* (Minneapolis, MN: Bellwether Press), 84.

The velocity of movements with hydraulic machines, in contrast to isokinetic devices, may vary depending on the strength of the trainee.

Scientific experts have often questioned the validity of claims for high exercise efficiency with accommodating resistance. Exercises performed with strength training machines are biomechanically different from natural movements and traditional exercises. Most notably, the number of degrees of freedom (permissible movement directions) is limited from 6 in natural movements to only 1 with exercise machines; the typical acceleration–deceleration pattern is also different. Though isokinetic training may have certain advantages in clinical rehabilitation settings, studies have repeatedly failed to demonstrate that accommodating resistance exercises (e.g., isotonic, variable cams) hold an advantage over free-weight exercises for increasing muscular strength and inducing muscle hypertrophy.

Accentuation

In **accentuation** the main idea is to train strength only in the range of the main sport movement where the demand for high force production is maximal. In natural movements, at least on land, muscles are active over a relatively narrow range of motion. Usually, maximal muscle activity occurs near the extreme points of angular motion. The movement of body parts is first decelerated and then accelerated by virtue of muscular forces. For instance, during the swing movement of a leg (e.g., in jumping and running), the previously stopped thigh is accelerated prior to the vertical position and decelerated afterward (figure 6.12*a*).

If the training objective is to increase the dynamic strength of the hip flexor muscles to improve velocity of the swing movement, there is no reason to increase the strength of these muscles in a range beyond the range this activity requires. An exercise that satisfies the requirement for specificity of the range of force application is shown in figure 6.12*b*.

Accentuation is the most popular exercise strategy among many superior athletes because this approach best satisfies the requirements for exercise specificity. For instance, there is no reason to develop the strength of hip flexor muscles in their weakest position, as recommended by the peak-contraction principle, because in this range of motion it is the hip extensors, not flexors, that are active (recall figure 6.12). The same is true for exercises with accommodating resistance. There is no need for athletes to train maximal strength over the full range of motion if the maximal force is required in only a small part of the range.

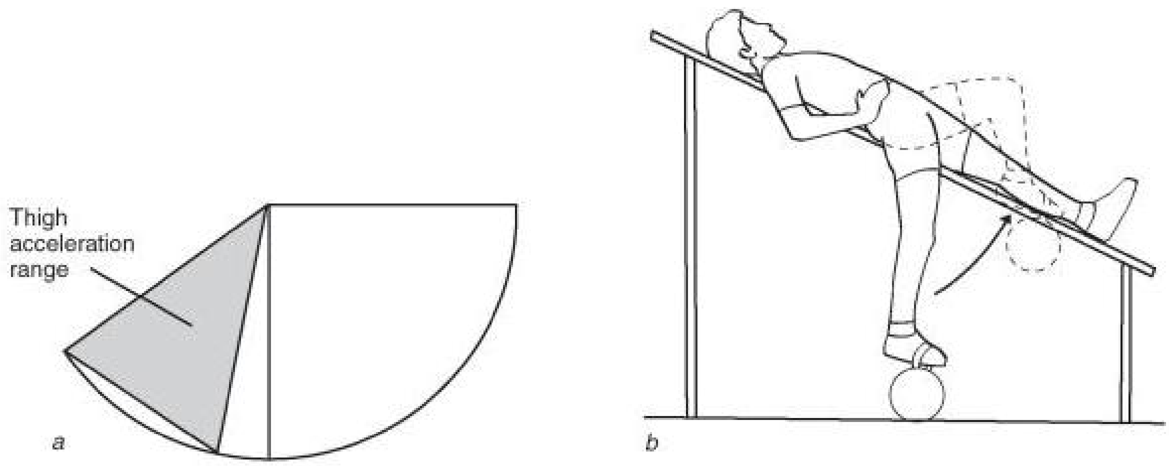


Figure 6.12 *(a)* Accentuated range of motion in swing movement of the leg. *(b)* An exercise designed to satisfy the requirement for accentuated muscular efforts.

Reprinted, by permission, from D.D. Donskoy and V.M. Zatsiorsky, 1979, *Biomechanics* (Moscow, Russia: Fizkultura i Sport), 100.

Dynamic exercises that satisfy the requirements for exercise specificity constitute the greater portion of training protocols for qualified and superior athletes. In the strength conditioning of elite Soviet athletes in track and field and other dryland summer sports in 1987 and 1988, more than 95% of all sets used free weights or body weight as resistance. In aquatic sports (swimming, rowing) the proportion of sets with free weights was below 40%.

ADDITIONAL TYPES OF STRENGTH EXERCISES

Superior athletes mainly use dynamic training exercises of concentric muscle action. Other types of exercises are used in training routines, however, either as supplementary training or for developing specific strength abilities other than F_{mm}.

Squatting or Semisquatting?

A conditioning coach recommended exercises for the enhancement of leg extensor strength for six groups of athletes—elite, intermediate, and beginning volleyball players and ski jumpers. The elite and intermediate athletes had proper weight training experience, including squatting. The beginning athletes were only slightly accustomed to these exercises. The exercises the coach considered were squatting with a barbell, semisquatting, leg press against a weight, and leg press against isokinetic resistance. She then analyzed the following pros and cons:

- **Exercise specificity.** Ski jumpers perform takeoffs from a deep squat position; volleyball players almost never jump for height from deep squats.
- **Force–posture relationships.** Athletes are able to lift a greater load using a semisquat versus a squat technique. For instance, an athlete may be able to lift a 1–body weight (BW) barbell using the squat and to lift a load of 1.2 BW in a semisquat. When full squats are performed, the top effort is required only when knees are deeply bent. However, at the range of joint motion specific to a volleyball takeoff, the leg extension force generated during full squats is far from maximal (the athlete lifts only a 1-BW load but is able to lift a 1.2-BW barbell).

Thus, if the coach favored the peak-contraction principle, she would most probably recommend the deep squats (since the highest requirements are for force production in the deepest knee-bent posture where the potential for force generation is minimal). If she selected the accommodation-resistance approach, the proper exercise would be a leg press against isokinetically adjusted resistance. Finally, if exercise specificity was a matter of primary importance and she favored the accentuation principle, the selected exercises would vary between the two sports. The semisquats would be more specific for volleyball players, while the squats would be specific for ski jumpers.

- **Load imposed on lumbar spine and injury risk.** These are highest in semisquatting (because of the extremely high load), average in squats, and minimal in leg presses.

After consideration, the coach recommended the following (percentage of sets):

Skill level	Volleyball players	Ski jumpers
Elite	60% semisquats 25% squats 15% leg presses (against a weight)	20% semisquats 50% squats 30% leg presses (against a weight)
Intermediate	30% semisquats 40% squats 30% leg presses (against a weight)	10% semisquats 50% squats 40% leg presses (against a weight)
Beginning	0% semisquats 25% squats 75% leg presses (40% against a weight and 35% against isokinetic resistance)	0% semisquats 25% squats 75% leg presses (40% against a weight and 35% against isokinetic resistance)

In the beginners' group, the weight lifted in deep squats was relatively low (6-10RM) and primary attention was given to proper lifting technique.

Isometric Exercises

Isometric training requires no expensive equipment, can be performed anywhere, and, if the number of trained postures is few, takes little time. In spite of these advantages, isometric exercises are used in athletic training mainly as a supplemental training tool, for several reasons. First, they lack the specificity necessary for strength gains (especially for dynamic sport movements). Second, there is little transfer of training effects from the angular position selected for training to other joint angle positions. If a muscle group is overloaded (for instance at 100°), the strength gain will occur at that angle with little improvement at other angles (see again figure 1.3 on page 8 and figure 6.7 on page 118). In addition, these exercises are sometimes painful for superior athletes. The forces isometrically developed by elite athletes are extremely high. In the isometric imitation of lifting a barbell from the floor, for example, the maximal force F_{mm} in the most favorable body position may be well above 8,000 N in elite weightlifters. The mechanical load acting on different body structures, such as the lumbar spine, may exceed safe levels.

A coach who is planning isometric training should keep in mind that accommodation to isometric exercises occurs very quickly. In qualified athletes, strength gains peak out in about 6 to 8 weeks. Thus, the isometric training routine should be planned, maximally, for 1 to 2 mesocycles.

The following guidelines govern isometric training protocol:

- *Intensity*—maximal effort
- *Effort duration*—5 to 6 s
- *Rest intervals*—approximately 1 min if only small muscle groups, such as calf muscles, are activated; up to 3 min for large, proximally located muscles
- *Number of repetitions*—usually 3 to 5 for each body position
- *Training frequency*—4 to 6 times a week with the objective to increase F_{mm}; 2 times a week for maintenance of the strength gain
- *Body position*—(a) in the weakest point of the strength curve, or (b) throughout the complete range of motion with intervals of 20 to 30°, or (c) in an accentuated range of angular motion

The second variant on body position is time consuming because many angles within the range must be strengthened. Qualified athletes typically recognize the third variant as the most efficient.

Isometric efforts of large, proximally located muscles may produce a high rise in blood pressure. Individuals at risk of cardiac disease, atherosclerosis, or high blood pressure should avoid these exercises. Athletes should check arterial pressure at least once a week during periods of isometric training.

Because of rapid accommodation, the strength gain from isometric exercises is generally less than from dynamic exercises. This should be taken into account when isometric strength gain is the training objective. A typical example is the cross, a ring exercise performed in men's gymnastics. As a routine sequence in this case, the gymnast should use dynamic exercises at the beginning (to speed up strength enhancement) and then intermittently add isometrics to improve the specific coordination pattern.

Isometrics are also used in sport to enhance static muscular endurance, for example in long-distance speed skating, where the demand for maintaining a bent trunk posture is extremely high. In 10,000-m skating, the load of the inclined body position has to be sustained for about 15 min. Isometrics may be used also to improve posture stability, such as that required in shooting a handgun. Holding a 3- to 5-kg weight (instead of a pistol) up to 1 min in the shooting position is a useful training exercise for shooters at the intermediate, not the superior, level. This exercise helps reduce the amplitude of arm microvibration (supposedly by increasing strength in the slow tonic muscle fibers).

Self-Resistance Exercises

Exercises based on self-resistance, not included in the classifications considered earlier, are rarely used in training and are not recommended. In such exercises, the tension of antagonist muscles resists tension of the primary **agonistic muscle group.** If the muscles are near maximal activation, the training load is extremely high. Healthy people may do these exercises, though cautiously, for general muscle development. Immediately after self-resistance exercising, the muscles become tough and nonelastic (their resistance to palpation or indentation increases) and the circumference of the extremity enlarges. This creates the visual impression of muscular hypertrophy; for this reason, some bodybuilders do self-resistance exercises just before a contest to improve their outward appearance.

The intentional, forced activation of antagonistic muscles, however, harms the proper coordination pattern desired in almost all sport skills. Therefore, self-resistance exercises are not recommended for athletes.

Yielding Exercises

Heavy resistance exercises with eccentric muscle action (yielding exercises) are seldom used in strength training. (The term *plyometrics* for these exercises is problematic because of its misuse. Strictly speaking, plyometrics refers to movements with eccentric muscle action. However, many authors have used this term for exercises with reversible muscle action, such as depth jumping, in which both eccentric and concentric types of muscle action are involved.)

Eccentric exercises easily provoke delayed muscle soreness. All athletes, at one time or another, experience delayed muscle pain, soreness, and a concomitant decrease in strength after exercise sessions. The soreness occurs typically 24 to 48 h after the workout. Greater soreness is reported with yielding exercises (figure 6.13).

Several theories of delayed muscle soreness have been suggested. They can be

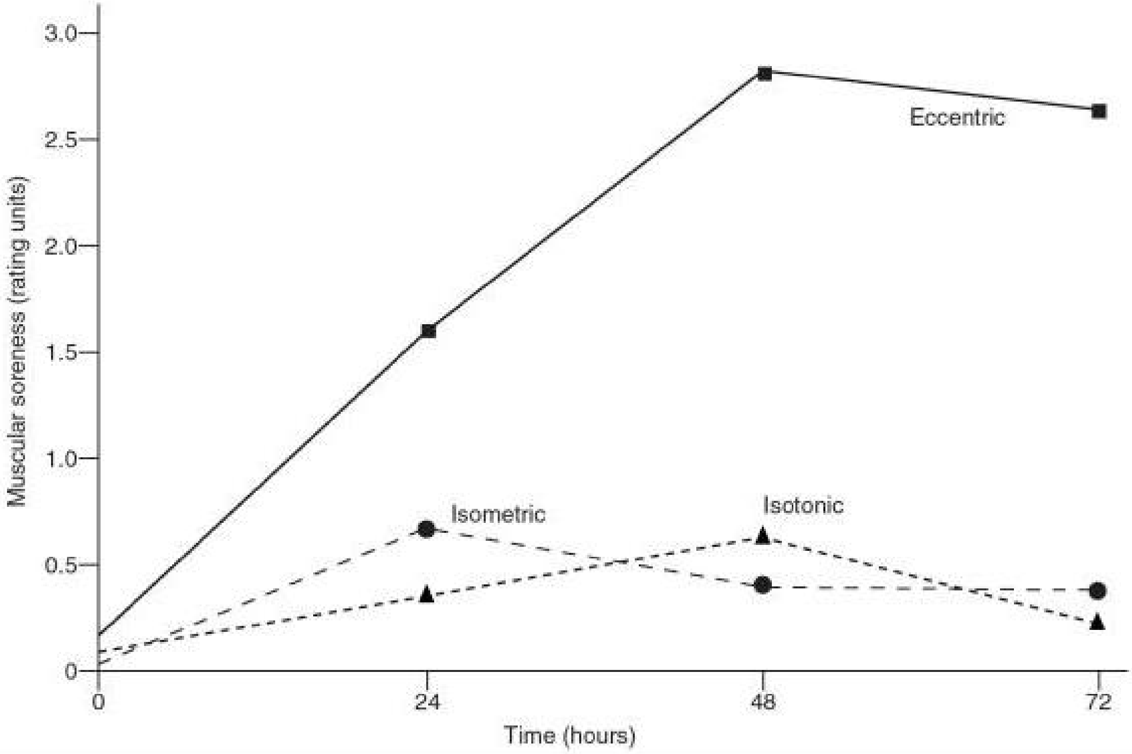


Figure 6.13 Delayed muscle soreness following different training routines. Soreness is most pronounced after yielding exercises.

Reprinted with permission from *Research Quarterly for Exercise and Sport*, Vol. 44, No. 4, pages 458-469. Copyright 1973 by the American Alliance for Health, Physical Education, Recreation and Dance, 1900 Association Drive, Reston, VA 20191.

divided into two main groups. The damage theory suggests that muscular soreness is induced by damage done to the muscle or connective tissues during exercise. According to the spasm theory, on the other hand, a cyclical three-stage process causes delayed muscle soreness. First, exercise induces ischemia within the muscles. As a consequence of the ischemia, an unknown "pain substance" is accumulated. In turn, the pain elicits a reflectoric muscle spasm. Due to the spasm, ischemia increases, and so forth, and the whole process is repeated in this cyclical manner.

Delayed muscle soreness can be prevented by gradually increasing training intensity and volume. Stretching exercises, especially static ones, are useful for both preventing soreness and reducing its symptoms. Some authors suggest taking vitamin C (100 mg/day, twice the recommended daily dose). Unfortunately, most treatments not involving drugs (ice, nutritional supplements, stretching, electrical stimulation) have been somewhat ineffective in treating delayed muscle soreness. Recently, it has been shown that compression sleeves donned immediately after maximal eccentric exercise enhance recovery of physical function and decrease symptoms of soreness.

Suggestions about the use of yielding exercises depend on the training objective (i.e., whether the target is concentric, eccentric, or reversible muscle action). When the goal is concentric or isometric muscle action, exercising with eccentric actions offers no particular advantage. However, an athlete may use these exercises to prepare, for the most part psychologically, for loads above 1RM. A barbell of very high weight (about 110% of the 1RM in the relevant movement, e.g., front squat) is actively lowered in these exercises. To prevent accidents, the athlete should be assisted. When these exercises were performed by members of the Soviet national weightlifting team in the 1984 to 1988 Olympic cycle, the training volume (the total number of repetitions multiplied by the average weight) did not exceed 1% of the total weight lifted.

Yielding exercises are broadly used in gymnastics for training such stunts as the cross on the rings or a horizontal handstand on the parallel bars. Concentric exercises are more efficient for this purpose. However, if used by athletes who are not strong enough to perform these stunts properly, special technical devices or individual assistance is usually required.

Theoretically, eccentric exercises should be used to train the yielding strength manifested during landing in parachuting, ski jumping, figure skating, or gymnastics. In these exercises (landing from a large drop distance), however, high impact forces are almost unavoidable, and special precautions must be taken to prevent injury and muscular soreness (exercises should be brought into training gradually; soft surfaces such as gymnastics mats should be used to absorb the impact). It is especially important to perform landings softly, preventing the heels from hitting the ground. In spite of these precautions, the risk of injury and degenerative changes in articular cartilages and subchondral bones is still too high, so the number of landings should be minimal. Both coaches and athletes need to recognize that overuse as well as inappropriate use of yielding exercises are unsafe.

Yielding exercises should *not* be used for training reversible (stretch–shortening) muscle action. The very essence of the stretch–shortening cycle is the *immediate* use of enhanced force production, induced by the prestretch, in the push-off phase. The pause between eccentric and concentric phases of a movement eliminates any advantage that could be gained from the stretch–shortening cycle. This cycle is one uninterrupted movement, not two combined movements. Athletes trained in the landing, rather than the immediate takeoff phase, stop themselves in the lower body position and perform the stretch–shortening action as two sequential movements instead of one continuous movement. Because of the negative transfer of training effect, the use of yielding exercises does not improve performance in the reversible muscle action.

Bouncing, Not Sticking—Don't Repeat This Mistake!

A coach, trying to improve explosive strength of athletes, advised them to perform, as he said, "plyometrics drills": drop jumps from height in a standing landing posture. The height was from 150 to 250 cm. The landing was performed on gymnastics mats. Although the athletes experienced substantial muscle soreness after the first training session, the coach insisted on continuing the exercise, assuring the athletes that "gain without pain" is not possible. However, in spite of many efforts, the athletic performances in takeoff-related activities did not improve. Moreover, the coordination pattern of the support phase (in jumping or even running) deteriorated. The athletes began to break one uninterrupted eccentric–concentric movement (landing–takeoff, stretch–shortening cycle) into two slightly connected motions: landing and then takeoff.

During natural movements, the primary requirement for a proper motion pattern is not to resist the external force and decrease the body's kinetic energy but to increase the potential for the ensuing takeoff. This goal is realized if both the potential energy of muscle–tendon elastic deformation and the enhanced muscle activation (induced by the interplay of the stretch reflex and Golgi tendon reflex) are used during the second phase of the support period. If an athlete stops after landing, the potential elastic energy dissipates into heat, and the potentiated muscle activity vanishes. The splitting of one continuous landing–takeoff motion into two motor patterns is a typical "bad habit." The bad habit can take hold quickly and firmly, and much time and effort are needed to correct this mistake. "Bouncing" rather than "sticking" should be accentuated in landing drills.

Exercises With Reversible Muscle Action

In reversible muscle action exercises, a muscle group is stretched immediately before shortening. One example is drop jumping, that is, dropping to the floor from an elevation and then immediately jumping for height. In exercises with reversible muscle action, resistance is determined by the kinetic energy of the falling body rather than its weight (mass) of velocity alone. The kinetic energy (E) is defined by the formula $E = mV^2 / 2$, where m is mass and V is velocity. In reversible movements (exercises), the same magnitude of kinetic energy can be achieved with different combinations of velocity (dropping distance) and mass. An increase in mass always leads to a decrease in rebound velocity. The moderate increase of velocity at approach initially leads to an increase of rebound velocity, but if the approaching velocity is too high, the rebound velocity decreases (figure 6.14). The optimal magnitude in approaching velocity (and kinetic energy) depends on the mass of the moving body.

The most popular exercises involving reversible muscle action are single-leg, double-leg, and alternate-step hopping. Among experienced athletes, drop or depth jumping is popular. Many coaches assume that drop jumps are directed toward improving the storage and reuse of elastic energy during takeoff. However, more energy is stored and reutilized only if the muscle tension is greater (see chapter 2). So the actual source of enhanced motor output is the increased muscle force production during this type of activity. The enhanced force is a result of

- inhibition of the reflex from Golgi organs (because this reflex is inhibitory, an "inhibition of the inhibition" takes place),
- potentiation of the stretch reflex, and
- proper timing.

There are two main variations on the drop jump. It is done with small amplitude of leg flexion during landing and takeoff (bouncing) or large-amplitude flexion (squatting or countermovement jumping).

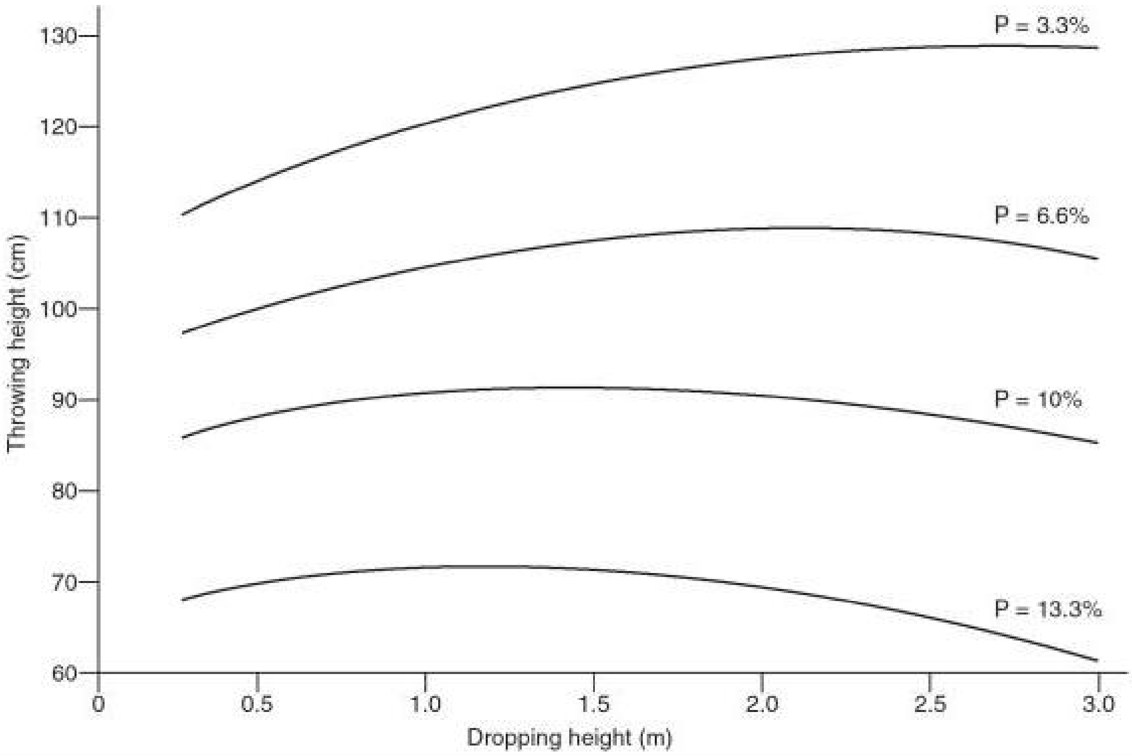


Figure 6.14 Changes in the height of an implement thrown as a function of its weight and dropping height. With a special installation in laboratory conditions, shots of different weights (3.3, 6.6, 10.0, 13.3% of F_{mm}) were dropped from various heights (from 0.5 to 3.0 m). An elite shot-putter put shots vertically (in supine position). The height of each throw was measured. According to basic mechanics, dropping height is proportional to the dropping velocity squared and the throwing height is proportional to the square rebound velocity.

Reprinted, by permission, from Yu. V. Verchoshansky, 1977, *Special Strength Training in Sport* (Moscow, Russia: Fizkultura i Sport), 145. By permission of author.

Bouncing should be performed with minimal contact time. Athletes are advised to do the takeoff as though the surface is hot like a frying pan. The dropping distance should be adjusted to keep the athlete's heels from hitting the ground. The horizontal velocity at landing should be high enough to avoid plantar hyperflexion. Squatting technique is recommended to improve jumping ability in vertical jumps (e.g., for basketball, volleyball); starting velocity in football, ice hockey, and sprinting; and explosive strength of football linemen, throwers, and weightlifters. Squats, though, should not be too deep. The range of knee flexion should be only slightly greater than in the primary sport movement.

Typically, a jumper makes initial ground contact with extended legs. However, if the aim is to improve the rate of force development, especially in the knee extensors, exercises requiring landing on a bent leg may be used. This is the case also when the athlete wants to improve landing on a flexed leg (for instance, figure skaters, while performing jumps with several twists, land on a flexed support leg).

Practical experience shows that dropping jumps are a very effective drill. However, the injury risk is high and accommodation to these exercises occurs very quickly. Therefore, these guidelines are recommended:

1. Follow the prescribed sequence of exercises during multiyear training—regular jumping exercises, weight training exercises, and then drop jumping. Drop jumps should not be used by young athletes with training experience of less than 3 to 4 years.

2. Do not use drop jumps continuously for more than 1 or 2 mesocycles. Vary exercises by performing with and without additional weight vests (belts). After initial adaptation (usually two to three training workouts), use weight vests for 2 to 3 weeks; then exercise without weights and increase the dropping distance gradually.
3. Maintain the proper level of explosive strength during the competition period by doing drop jumps once every 7 to 10 days. Exclude these jumps from the training program at least 10 days before an important competition.
4. Determine the exercise intensity (kinetic energy, weight, dropping distance) on an individual basis. The main requirement is proper technique (i.e., smooth transition from the yielding phase to the push off, heels not hitting the ground).

Drills for training the stretch–shortening cycle should not be limited to drop jumps, though often they are. The possibility of increasing the mass of the falling body is rather limited in drop jumps—people wear weight vests or belts, but these cannot be as heavy, for example, as 100 kg. In view of the complex relationship between kinetic energy, velocity, and body mass, on the one hand, and the motor output of reversible muscle action, on the other, training with stretch–shortening cycle devices, where both the mass and velocity may be changed, is recommended. An example of such a machine is shown in figure 6.15.

Sport Exercises With Added Resistance: Speed-Resisted Training

You can best meet requirements for exercise specificity when you use the main sport movement, with increased resistance, for training. This is called **speed-resisted training.** Examples are uphill cycling and cycling with a changed gear ratio.

Each sport event is performed against a given resistance and at a given velocity. The resistance is predetermined by the mass of the implement or the athlete's body (inertia forces) and by body dimensions (aerodynamic or hydrodynamic forces). If an athlete performs the movement as fast as possible, movement velocity is a function of the resistance (an additional example of a parametric relationship; see chapter 2). If the resistance increases, the velocity decreases. There are two general rules in speed-resisted training:

1. Extra resistance should be provided in the direction of propulsion (e.g., in locomotions in the anterior direction).
2. The resistance should not be too large; it should not substantially change the sport technique. For instance, when swimmers tow bulky objects their bodies tend to assume a vertical orientation. If this happens the resistance is too large and should be decreased.

Resistance in terrestrial athletic events can be increased by adding weight, by adding uphill movement, by retarding the athlete's progression, and by increasing aerodynamic resistance with parachutes.

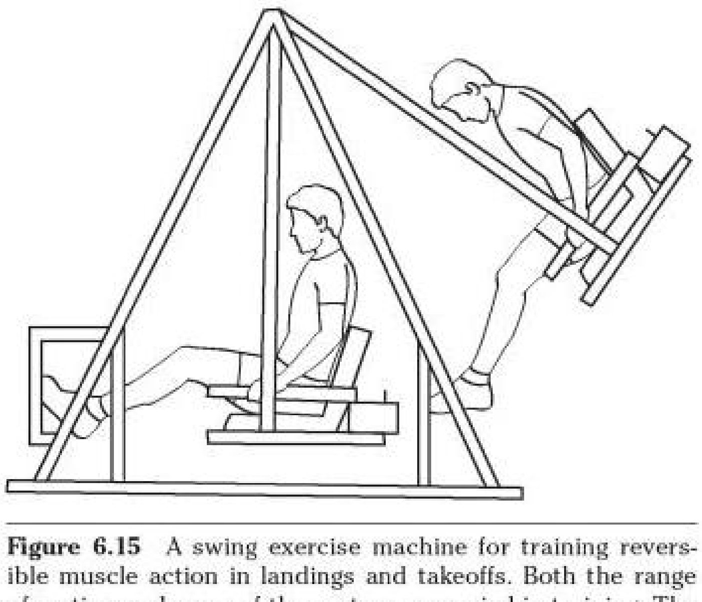


Figure 6.15 A swing exercise machine for training reversible muscle action in landings and takeoffs. Both the range of motion and mass of the system are varied in training. The mass of the swinging assembly may be increased up to 200 to 300 kg and even more; this is important when training qualified athletes.

Implements of heavier weight such as weight vests, belts, wrist cuffs, or ankle cuffs may be worn. Although adding this weight is simple, note that it is principally the demand for vertical force (acting against gravity) that is increased with supplementary loads. However, the typical requirement in athletics is to increase the horizontal component of the exerted force. Exercising with additional weight requires that force be exerted in an inappropriate (vertical) direction. In running, for instance, this leads to excessive body lift in the flight phase. Furthermore, locomotion using additional weights, especially ankle weights, increases impact stresses on lower extremities.

Including some form of uphill ambulation, such as running, walking, or skiing, is limited by the possible changes in sport technique. Some coaches have tried retarding the athlete's progression. For example, athletes run with a harness, tow a sled, or use a pulley machine with a weight stack. These methods are cumbersome in that the equipment is bulky and heavy. Typically they are used only in short movement ranges (e.g., for the sprint start, but not for sprint running).

Increased aerodynamic resistance, on the other hand, is a popular method among elite athletes in sports such as speed skating and running. Small parachutes are used for this purpose (figure 6.16). When the athlete runs, the parachute inflates, creating a drag force. The higher the running velocity, the greater the resistance force. Parachutes of several different sizes are used in training. The impeding drag force, depending on parachute size, may vary from about 5 to 200 N (within the speed range 6 to 10 m/s). To prevent parachute oscillation during ambulation, the parachutes should have a small opening in the center (the stabilizer).

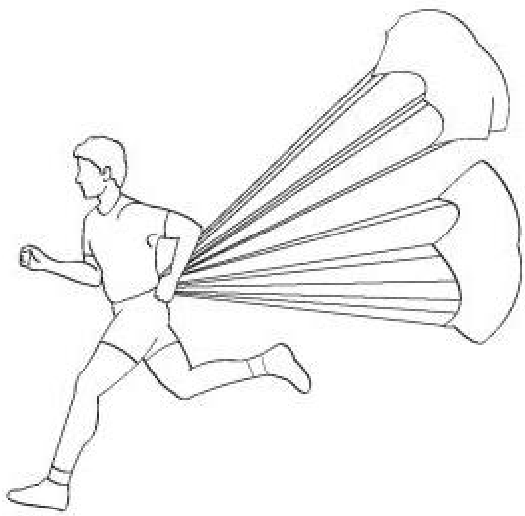


Figure 6.16 Use of a parachute in running drills.

Parachutes offer several advantages over other methods of resistance training:

- The resistance (drag) force acts strictly in the direction of the athlete's movement.
- Sport technique is not negatively altered.
- Parachutes are not limited to use in straight ambulation, but can also be used when the athlete is running curves, running over hurdles, or changing direction (as in football or soccer).
- Parachutes weigh only a few ounces.
- A parachute can be released while the person is running, which provides an impetus to increase movement velocity (this is called an assisted drill).

The only drawback of parachutes is that they offer the same amount of resistance in both the support and the nonsupport phases of running. Thus they hamper movement speed during flight while slightly changing the position of body joints during foot landing, as in hurdle running.

For maximum effect, one should vary the parachute size in micro- and mesocycles as well as in workouts. Resistant and customary training are executed during preparatory microcycles, while the assisted drills are mainly utilized near the competition season. In a workout as well as in a sequence of training blocks, the resistance, determined by the parachute size, is decreased by degrees. During a training workout, the first drills (after warm-up, naturally) are performed under the heaviest resistance called for during that training session, and the final attempts are executed under the lightest resistance. Before and immediately after parachute drills, the same drills are performed under normal conditions. Parachutes are typically used two to three times a week. Sessions with parachutes are interspersed with the usual workouts. During a competition period, parachutes are used to induce a feeling of enhanced speed and explosiveness. For contrast, they are used three to five times within sport-specific drills at the beginning of a session, followed by the usual drills without a parachute.

In aquatic sports such as swimming or rowing, hydrodynamic resistance can be increased. With this objective, the streamlining of the body or its frontal area is altered. This can be accomplished by increasing the resistance offered by the boat or the swimmer's body or by expanding the hydrodynamic resistance of the propeller (the blade of the oar in rowing, the paddle in kayaking and canoeing, the swimmer's arm); for instance, using hand paddles is common in swimming.

In both cases, the force exerted by the athlete increases. However, the mechanisms of the force output augmentation are biomechanically different, so the training effects are also dissimilar. In aquatic locomotion, the external force developed by an athlete is determined by both athlete strength, in particular the individual's force–velocity curve (parametric F_m–V_m relationship), and the water resistance offered (figure 6.17). As in all parametric relationships, force decreases as movement velocity increases. An athlete cannot develop high force at a high velocity of muscle shortening. Conversely, water resistance increases with a gain in velocity. Note that, in the first case, velocity is relative to the athlete's body (in essence, it is the velocity of muscle shortening); in the second case, the velocity of the propeller, relative to the water, is the point of interest.

The exerted force is indicated in figure 6.17*c* by the bold arrow. To the left of this point, where velocity is small, the athlete's strength is higher than the hydrodynamic resistance. Picture an athlete slowly moving her arm or paddle in the water. No matter how strong the person is, the exerted force is limited by water resistance, which is low in this case due to low velocity. However, if the movement velocity and the corresponding water resistance are high enough, the demand for a large force can exceed the athlete's capacity. In this case, the athlete's ability to produce sufficient force is the limiting factor.

It is known that, biomechanically, a propeller's velocity relative to the water in the direction of the boat's (body's) motion (V^p_w) equals

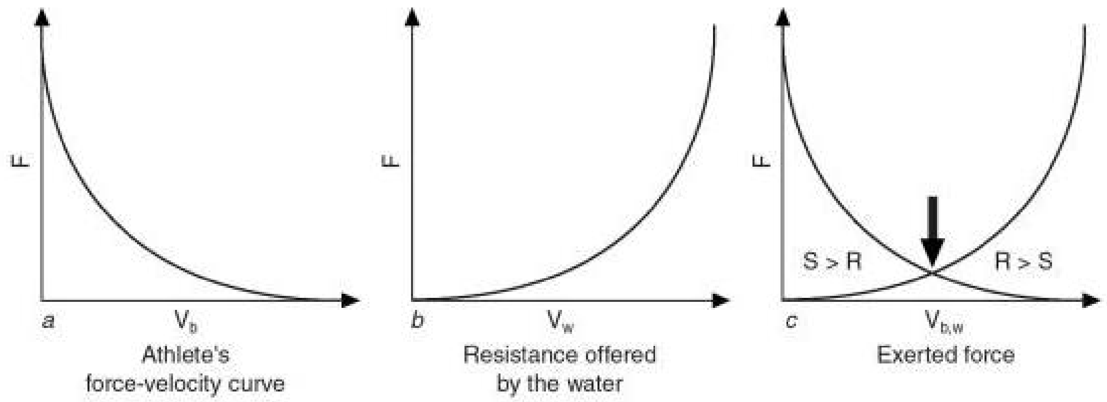


Figure 6.17 The force exerted by an athlete is determined by the interplay of *(a)* the force velocity curve (the maximal force developed by an athlete at a given velocity when high resistance is met) and *(b)* water resistance. The interception of these curves corresponds to *(c)* the force exerted by the athlete against water resistance. To the left of this point the strength potential of the athletes exceeds the amount of resistance *(S > R)*; to the right, *R > S (S,* strength; *R,* resistance). V_b is relative velocity of body segments; V_w is velocity of the body relative to the water.

the difference between the velocity of the propeller with respect to the boat (V^p_b) and the amount of boat (body) velocity (V^b_w):

$$V^p_w = V^p_b - V^b_w.$$

When hydrodynamic resistance of the boat or the swimmer's body increases, the boat's (body's) velocity relative to the water (V^b_w) decreases. Furthermore, if propeller velocity relative to the boat (body) is kept the same, then its velocity relative to the water (V^p_w) increases. So, when stroking at the same velocity with respect to the boat or body (V^p_b is a constant), the athlete meets greater water resistance by virtue of the increased propeller velocity relative to the water (V^p_w).

When the hydrodynamic resistance of the propeller is increased (e.g., with hand paddles), the same stroking speed (V^p_b) produces greater body (boat) velocity (V^b_w). The propeller's velocity relative to the water (V^p_w) then decreases instead of increases as in the previous case. The exerted force, however, increases as a result of poor streamlining of the propeller (table 6.1).

It is recommended that these additional resistances be raised alternately. Note also that the amount of added resistance is limited by change in sport technique. If the technique is altered substantially, the additional resistance must be decreased.

EXPERIMENTAL METHODS OF STRENGTH TRAINING

During the last two decades, many attempts have been made to use transcutaneous muscle electrostimulation (EMS) and mechanical vibration as training methods for athletes.

Electrostimulation

In theory, one advantage of EMS is the activation of predominantly fast motor fibers that are difficult to recruit voluntarily. During EMS, the size principle of motor unit recruitment is no longer valid; fast-twitch motor fibers are activated first in this case. These have a lower threshold to externally applied electric current and, in addition, many fast-twitch motor fibers are located superficially, close to the external edge of muscles.

Potentially, EMS can be a useful supplement to conventional strength training methods. It can enhance not only maximal stimulated force but also voluntary force, speed of motion, and muscular endurance. The time to accommodation is usually about 20 to 25 training days in conditioning for maximal strength and 10 to 12 days for maximal velocity. During EMS training for muscular endurance, the leveling off is not attained even after 35 sessions. Positive results, including improvement in sport performance, have been demonstrated in weightlifting, gymnastics, and track and field events, as well as in the jumping ability of volleyball and basketball players.

The method was originally developed in the former Soviet Union in the late 1960s. However, contrary to popular opinion, athletes of the former Soviet Union have not regularly used EMS as a substitute for traditional strength training. Athletes' attitudes toward this method vary substantially. Many elite athletes have been very positive regarding EMS use. For instance, some Olympic champions in kayaking and canoeing have sought to stimulate several muscles, including the biceps brachii and deltoid, over a 1-month period before important competitions, including the Olympic Games.

Table 6.1 Boat (Body) Versus Propeller (Paddle, Hand) Resistance Changes

Resistance increased	Velocity of the propeller relative to the body, V^p_b	Velocity of the body relative to the water, V^b_w	Velocity of the propeller relative to the water, V^p_w	Cause of greater exerted force
Boat (body)	=	$<$	$>$	Greater velocity, V^p_w
Propeller	=	$>$	$<$	Greater resistance offered

At the same time, in spite of evidence that maximal strength may be enhanced as a result of EMS, this method has not been accepted by numerous qualified athletes. In addition to a customary conservatism, there are two main reasons. First, athletes cannot use enhanced isometric (specially stimulated) values in real sport events. The time and effort needed to transmute acquired changes into force output of the real movement are too great. Second, some athletes using EMS have an unpleasant feeling of lack of muscular control and a loss of coordination and simply refuse to continue. These findings confirm the idea that, loosely expressed, only muscles (not neural factors) are trained with EMS. The ability to activate trained skeletal muscles does not seem to be augmented as a result of this kind of protocol.

There may be several reasons for such different attitudes on the part of athletes toward EMS. First, EMS can be used in improper proportion to conventional strength training. If the proportion of EMS training is too great (for a given athlete), the transmutation may become difficult. And second, inappropriate muscle groups can be selected for the EMS training (again for a certain athlete). If the strongest muscle from the muscle group is stimulated and the weakest one is not, there is no performance improvement.

To date, EMS has been routinely used by qualified athletes in only isolated cases. One example is correction of functional flatfoot, an acute arch flatness of the foot occurring as a result of high training loads in runners and jumpers. Regular EMS (twice a day) of the small arch muscles helps prevent and treat this malady. Another example is stimulation of the spine erectors in athletes, in particular rowers and kayakers, who are susceptible to low back pain. EMS was also used in training of the shoulder adductor muscles used to perform the cross in men's gymnastics.

The following EMS routine, known as the Russian protocol, is typically used:

- Carrier signal—sinusoidal or triangle
- Frequency—above 2,500 Hz
- Modulation—50 Hz
- Duty cycle—50% (the signal is applied for 10 ms with a 10-ms interval between trials)
- Stimulus amplitude (SA)—adjusted individually to induce a force above 100% of maximal voluntary isometric force F_{mm} or to the limit of subject tolerance; SA depends on the output impedance of the stimulator and typically exceeds 90 V
- Contraction time—10 s
- Rest between contractions—50 s
- Number of contractions—10 per day
- Number of training days—5 per week

The most important feature of the described stimulation protocol is the frequency of the carrier signal, which should be located in the sound frequency band, above 1,500 Hz. EMS, when performed properly, is almost painless. The electrode surface must be wetted with a special paste to achieve homogeneous electrical resistance at the skin–electrode interface.

Present knowledge about EMS is not satisfactory as a basis for a final recommendation. The prospects for using EMS in athletic training should be further investigated.

Vibration Training

Mechanical vibration—periodic oscillations applied to an athlete's body—can be used as a training tool as well as a massage tool. While vibratory massage has been well known for more than a century, vibration training, specifically in strength training, is a relatively new idea.

The effect of vibration depends mainly on (a) place of application of the vibration; (b) direction of vibration, either perpendicular to the muscle surface or along the muscle; (c) duration of vibration; and (d) vibration intensity. The intensity is a function of the vibration frequency w and vibration amplitude x and is measured as either vibration acceleration a, $a_{max} = w^2x$, or as vibration energy, which is proportional to the product of the squared values of the vibration frequency and amplitude. In the vibration massage, vibratory stimuli are commonly applied to the targeted muscle or tendon and induce oscillations perpendicular to the longitudinal direction of muscle fibers. The muscles are voluntarily relaxed and the energy of vibration is relatively low.

In vibration training, the stimuli are applied to the end-point of a kinematic chain (e.g., to the hand) and induce oscillations that propagate along the muscles. There are two varieties of vibration training: strength exercises with superimposed vibratory stimulation and motor tasks performed under whole-body vibration. In the second case, an exercise is performed on a vibrating plate; a vibratory wave is transmitted from the feet to the entire body while the muscles are either contracted or stretched. In general, an idea of the vibration training is to combine voluntary muscle activation or stretching with the vibration stimuli.

According to recent research, vibration training resulted in significant changes of several motor abilities, with the stretch–shortening cycle (such as countermovement jumps, serial high jumps, and so on) being the most sensitive to the treatment. A hypothesis has been suggested that the effects of vibration training are similar to the effects induced by such means as dropping jumps: They both depress inhibitory reflex from Golgi tendon organs on muscle activation. Because the parameters of the vibration (frequency, amplitude, duration) sharply differed in the performed studies, it is impossible to presently recommend an optimal procedure. Vibration training is still a topic of research.

BREATHING DURING STRENGTH EXERCISES

If maximal force is exerted while inhaling, exhaling, or making an expiratory effort with the glottis (the opening between the vocal cords) closed—called the **Valsalva maneuver**—the amount of force increases from inspiration to expiration to Valsalva maneuver. The underlying mechanism for this phenomenon is a pneumomuscular reflex in which increased intralung pressure serves as a stimulus for the potentiation of muscle excitability. The true mechanisms of enhanced muscle excitability have yet to be studied.

Although the Valsalva maneuver might be considered a useful breathing technique for ultimate force production, it also provokes a cardiovascular response that many physicians consider harmful, particularly in individuals with heart problems. Because air cannot escape, the intrathoracic pressure sharply increases (up to 40-100 mmHg and even higher, whereas normally it is 2-15 mmHg lower than atmospheric pressure). Because of the high intrathoracic pressure and associated compression of the venae cavae, which return blood to the heart, venous return to the heart decreases. In turn, both stroke volume and cardiac output decrease. As a result of the small venous return and high intrathoracic pressure, the heart dimensions, particularly the chamber dimensions, are lessened (this is called the Valsalva effect). The decreased stroke volume is compensated for by increased heart rate, sometimes above 170 beats per minute. In addition, blood pressure increases substantially. (Values up to 320/250 mmHg have been measured during barbell squats.) The elevation is explained mainly by the high intramuscular pressure, which results in increased total peripheral resistance and increased blood pressure.

The decreased cardiac output may further result in brain anemia and a loss of consciousness. (This has happened many times during weightlifting competitions involving the military press; this lift has been excluded from the Olympic weightlifting program since 1972.) Immediately after the lift, intrathoracic pressure abruptly falls and a large amount of blood overfills the heart. Then, both stroke volume and cardiac output rise, blood pressure decreases, and after some time, all values return to normal.

Athletes adapt to such changes, and properly planned and executed strength training does not cause hypertension. Contrary to common misconceptions, heavy resistance training (again, if properly planned and executed) results in positive adaptations of the cardiovascular system. At the same time, athletes and coaches should exercise these cautions during physically strenuous activities:

1. Permit the Valsalva maneuver, or expiration efforts with a closed glottis, only during short-time ultimate efforts. Beginners often stop breathing during repetitive lifts of low intensity. A coach should discourage this practice. In principle, high intrathoracic pressure is undesirable; on the other hand, high intra-abdominal pressure is considered useful. The torque generated by intra-abdominal pressure reduces the compressive force acting on the intervertebral disks and may lessen the probability of spinal disk injury and, ultimately, increase lifting ability (see chapter 7).
2. Beginners should not be given many exercises with ultimate and near-ultimate efforts.
3. An athlete should not inspire maximally before a lift. The maximal inhalation unnecessarily increases intrathoracic pressure.
4. Forced expirations, rather than the Valsalva maneuver, should be used whenever possible.
5. Beginners should inhale and exhale during performances, especially when the weight is held on the chest.
6. Finally, there are two ways to match breathing phases (the inspiration and expiration) with the performed movement—the anatomical and the biomechanical match.

This last point requires some elaboration. In movements with small efforts (similar to those in calisthenic exercises such as a trunk inclination) the inhalation should coincide with the trunk extension and the exhalation with the trunk bending. This is called an **anatomical match** (of breathing phases and movement). In contrast, when high forces are generated the expiration should match the forced phase of movement regardless of its direction or anatomical position. For instance, rowers exhale or use the Valsalva maneuver during the stroke phase when the greatest forces are developed; nevertheless, the legs and trunk are extended at this time rather than flexed (as compared with trunk and leg flexion without an additional external load in calisthenic exercises). This breathing is termed a **biomechanical match.** During strength exercises, the breathing phases and movement should be matched biomechanically rather than anatomically.

SUMMARY

Strength exercises are classified in various ways. For example, they may be static (isometric) or dynamic (concentric, eccentric, reversible, isokinetic). They may concentrate on particular muscle groups, whose comparative strengths are called strength topography. Or they may be classified according to how specific they are to the sport task.

With beginners, especially young people, strength topography is the main concern in selecting strength training exercises. For example, you should choose the most important muscle groups, strengthening muscle groups that might be at risk for injury if they were weak, training proximally located muscles, and strengthening muscles that are needed to perform sport movements. For more advanced or mature athletes, however, the goal is to select strength training exercises that are specific and mimic the movement pattern used in the actual sport skill. This is a complex demand that requires careful analysis of movement including resistance, timing and rate of force development, movement direction, and variations of muscular strength over the range of joint motion.

Muscular strength varies over the full range of joint motion, depending on changes in both muscle lever arms and muscle force. To manage this force–posture relation, trainees may use the peak-contraction principle, which focuses on increasing muscular strength primarily at the weakest points of the human strength curve through the selection of proper body positioning, special training devices, and a slow starting motion. Or they may develop maximal tension throughout the complete range of motion (accommodating resistance, used with some physical therapy isokinetic equipment and in some training machines). A third method is training in the range of the main sport movement where the demand for high force production is maximal (this accentuation method has been popular with Russian and Eastern European athletes).

Isometric exercises are seldom used, and self-resistance and yielding exercises carry risks, so they are not recommended. Exercises with reversible muscle action are effective but accommodation occurs quickly with these exercises. Sometimes additional resistance is added to main sport exercises that best meet the requirements for sport specificity.

Recently, two nontraditional methods, electrostimulation of muscles and vibration training, have attracted great interest as methods to enhance muscular strength. Although the methods show promise for strength training, they need further investigation.

Breathing patterns affect force production, with maximal force production occuring during the Valsalva maneuver. With small efforts, the inhalation should coincide with the trunk's extension and the exhalation with the trunk's bending (an anatomical match of breathing phases and movement). With high force, however, expiration must match with the forced phase of movement, regardless of the movement direction or anatomical position (a biomechanical match). During strength exercises the breathing phases and movement should match biomechanically rather than anatomically.

chapter 7

Injury Prevention

Heavy resistance training is a relatively safe activity, as the incidence of injuries is low. The risk of injury for a well-coached strength training program has been estimated to be about 1 per 10,000 athlete-exposures. (An athlete-exposure is one athlete taking part in one training workout or competition.) Compared to tackle football, alpine skiing, baseball pitching, and even sprint running, strength training is almost free of risk. However, athletes exercising with heavy weights who neglect certain training rules are susceptible to trauma.

TRAINING RULES TO AVOID INJURY

Common sense and professional knowledge dictate how to avoid injury. The rules are very simple:

- Maintain the weightlifting room and exercise equipment in proper order.
- Make sure athletes warm up.
- Do not overdose. Avoid rhabdomyolysis (see chapter 4).

- Do not recommend the maximal effort method for beginning athletes.
- Be cautious with the use of free weights.
- Provide assistance when a barbell weight exceeds maximum weight and yielding exercises are being performed.
- Emphasize harmonic strength topography; avoid imbalance in muscle development (see chapter 8).
- Make sure weightlifting and spotting techniques are clearly understood.

In addition, there is one issue in the strength training paradigm that warrants special attention—the lumbar spine region. In the discussion that follows we consider this concern in detail.

According to epidemiological data, up to 80% of the adult population suffer temporary or chronic pain in the low back region (the so-called low back pain syndrome, or LBPS). LBPS as a cause of inability to work is either first or second among all illnesses, yielding only to flu and catarrhal diseases. In athletes doing strength training, damage to the lower back constitutes 44 to 50% of all the injuries sustained.

In addition to such factors as metabolic abnormalities, infections, and genetic predisposition, biomechanical factors (especially spine overloading) are regarded as the primary causes of LBPS. However, in spite of the great mechanical load imposed on the lumbar region in sports like weightlifting and rowing, many elite athletes in these sports have no spinal problems during their lives. Proper sport techniques and fundamentally sound training patterns provide reliable protection against LBPS.

Although the precise cause of LBPS in many cases is not known, volumes of data have shown that changes in **intervertebral discs** are often the initial cause of pain. Back injuries can also be due to inefficiency in motor control, when the muscles that stabilize the trunk are activated later than necessary.

BIOMECHANICAL PROPERTIES OF INTERVERTEBRAL DISCS

Intervertebral discs consist of a fibrous ring, the **annulus fibrosus,** and a jellylike nucleus, the **nucleus pulposus.** In young persons the jellylike nucleus contains up to 85% water, and the laws of hydrostatic pressure apply—namely, **Pascal's law,** stating that pressure is distributed equally on all sides. Intradisc pressure can be determined by inserting a needle with a pressure gauge into the jellylike disc nucleus. With age the water content of intervertebral discs is gradually reduced, and the laws of hydrostatic pressure cease to manifest themselves in the nucleus pulposus.

When discs are loaded in different directions, their mechanical properties are different. When two vertebrae are compressed with the disc connecting them along the axis of the spine (the ordinate axis), the hydrostatic pressure in the nucleus is approximately 1.5 times greater than the average pressure acting on the disc surface (we'll designate this F). Here the vertical pressure on the fibrous ring amounts to just 0.5 F. On the other hand, when horizontal pressure occurs, the disc stretches from within and the force reaches 4 to 5 F on the surface of the fibrous ring (figure 7.1).

The fibrous ring consists of several cylindrical layers, each of which has fibers proceeding at an angle of approximately 30° to the horizontal; but the directions of the fibers' paths change in adjoining layers. In the discs of young and elderly persons, with an identical external mechanical load, both the amount of pressure acting on particular layers of the fibrous ring and its direction are different (figure 7.2).

The mechanical strength of discs during a vertical load is adequate; it is not inferior to the strength of adjoining vertebrae. However, a strictly vertical load on the spinal column is not typical for actual everyday

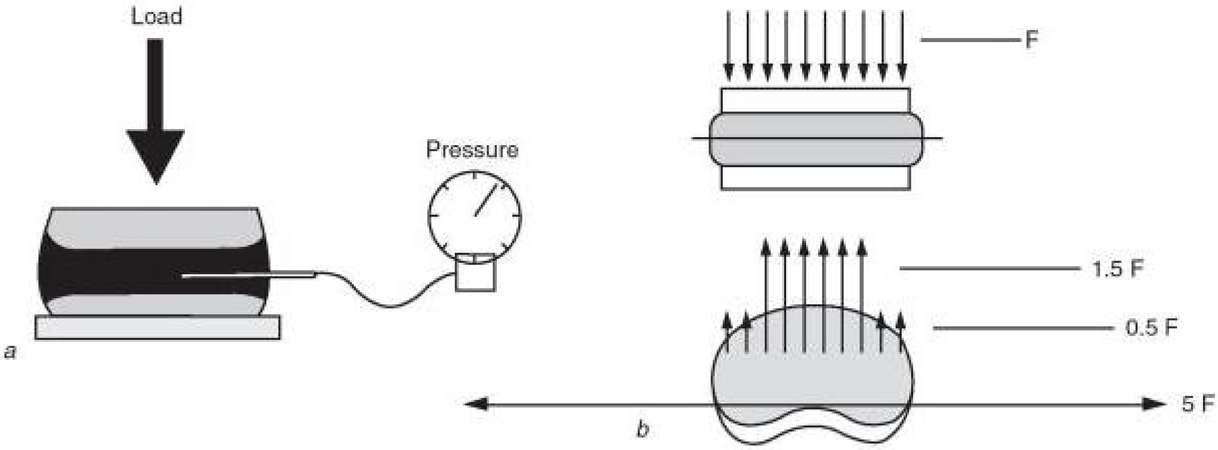


Figure 7.1 Pressure in the intervertebral discs under a vertically imposed load. *(a)* A scheme of measurement. *(b)* Pressure distribution. The compressive stress in the nucleus pulposus is 1.5 times higher than the externally applied load *(F)* per unit area.

Reprinted, by permission, from A. Nachemson, 1975, "Towards a better understanding of back pain: A review on the mechanics of the lumbar disc," *Rheumatology and Rehabilitation* 14: 129-143.

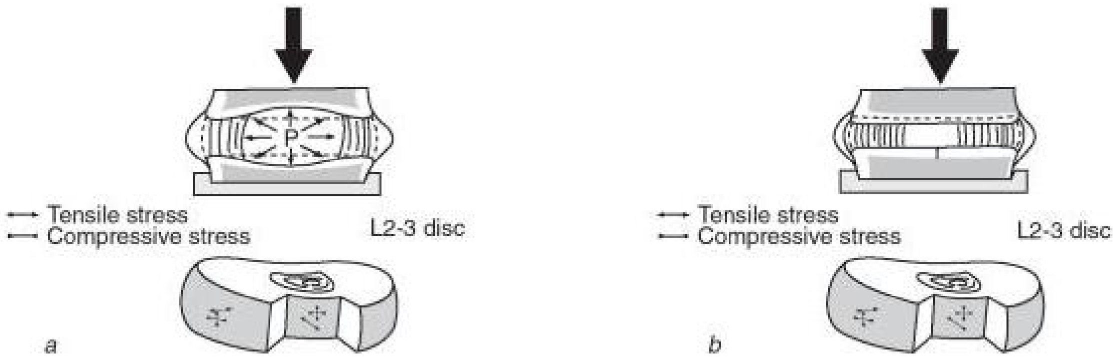


Figure 7.2 Pressure affecting individual layers of the fibrous ring in *(a)* normal discs (for young persons) and *(b)* degenerated discs (for elderly persons). Notice the change in the amount and direction of the pressure.

Reprinted, by permission, from A.A. White III, and M.M. Panjabi, 1990, *Clinical biomechanics of the spine*, 2nd ed. (Phildelphia, PA: Lippincott, Willliams, and Wilkins), 14.

situations. Even during regular standing posture, the load does not operate precisely along the axis of the vertebrae (the ordinate axis) because of the curvature of the spinal column. It follows from biomechanical analysis that people are the most susceptible to trauma in situations in which a considerable mechanical load affects the intervertebral discs during trunk bending or rotation.

During a lean of the spinal column, the nucleus pulposus is shifted to the side opposite the lean and the fibrous ring is somewhat protruded (figure 7.3). This may induce compression of the spinal cord rootlets and cause a painful sensation.

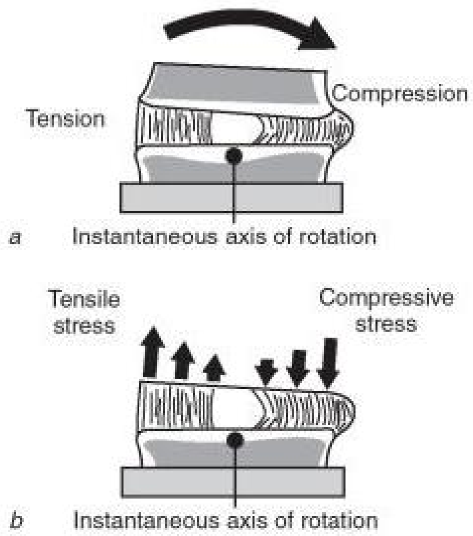


Figure 7.3 *(a)* Disc deformation; *(b)* mechanical stresses.

Reprinted, by permission, from A. White and M.M. Panjabi, 1990, *Clinical biomechanics of spine,* 2nd ed. (Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott, Williams, and Wilkins), 15.

MECHANICAL LOAD AFFECTING THE INTERVERTEBRAL DISCS

Intervertebral discs are affected by impact and by static loads. The latter include loads encountered not only during the maintenance of a given posture but also during the execution of relatively slow movements, when it is possible to ignore waves of impact deformation.

Impact Loads

Landings from gymnastics dismounts, jumping, and running cause the body to undergo an impact load, spreading shock waves to the spine. We can estimate the impact load by the magnitude of acceleration registered on different parts of the body.

In ordinary walking the difference between accelerations of the pelvic region and those of the head amounts to 0.5 to 1.0 *g* (*g* is the acceleration due to gravity, $g = 9.81\ \text{m/s}^2$). The spine must absorb a shock of similar magnitude with each step. Research on 50-m ski jumping has shown that accelerations of the pelvic region at the moment of landing exceed 10 *g;* at the same time, the intra-abdominal pressure (to be discussed later in this chapter) reaches 90 mmHg. Loads on the spine were reduced when jumpers performed deep (about 40 cm) squats and were increased when they landed with straighter legs. Loads increased in proportion to the sine of the angle between the direction of the speed vector and the slope of the mountain. These examples evidence the exceptionally large loads that the spinal column is subjected to during landings in different sport exercises.

The softening (shock absorption) of an impact load during landing is provided by the combined influence of

- the properties of the supporting surface;
- footwear quality;
- the dampening properties of the motor system, primarily the foot and the knee joints (in persons suffering from LBPS these properties are often reduced); and
- landing techniques.

With soft landing techniques, in which ankle plantar flexion and knee flexion are coordinated, the magnitude of impact forces is sharply reduced. During soft landing by experienced athletes, only 0.5% of the body's kinetic energy is spent to deform body tissues (bone, cartilage, spine). During a stiff landing, the deformation energy amounts to 75% of the

Land Properly

In order to prevent spinal injuries during landings, use mats and shoes with good shock-absorbing capacities and employ proper landing motor patterns. Touch the ground with legs extended and feet plantar-flexed, and, immediately after ground contact, avoid a stiff landing by flexing the knees. Practice soft landings, without impact. Good ballet dancers land in such a way that virtually no sound is made! Try to follow this pattern.

body's mechanical energy. The difference is 150-fold (75 / 0.5 = 150).

Static Load Acting on Intervertebral Discs

Forces that affect intervertebral discs can significantly exceed the body's weight and the weight being lifted. They are produced chiefly by muscle tension. Let's look at the mechanism that causes these loads by examining an example of upright standing posture (figure 7.4).

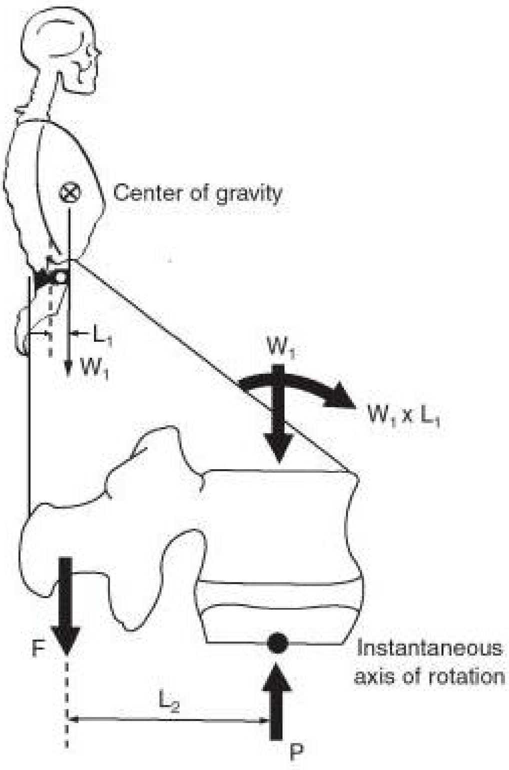


Figure 7.4 Mechanism for creating a mechanical load on the intervertebral discs. W_1, weight of the above-lying parts of the body; L_1, the moment arm; $W_1(L_1)$, the flexion bending moment due to gravity; F, force of the extensor muscles of the spinal column; L_2, their moment arm. Since the system is at equilibrium $W_1(L_1) = F(L_2)$. Therefore $F = (W_1 \cdot L_1) / L_2$. The force acting on the intervertebral disc (P) is equal to the sum of the weight of the above-lying parts of the body and the muscle-pulling force, $P = W_1 + F$ or $P = W_1(1 + L_1 / L_2)$.

Reprinted, by permission, from A. White and M.M. Panjabi, 1990, *Clinical biomechanics of spine*, 2nd ed. (Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott, Williams, and Wilkins), 50.

Mechanism of Origin

In this case, the weight of the upper body acts on L4 (the fourth lumbar vertebra). The center of gravity of the upper body is not situated directly over the intervertebral disc, but somewhat in front of it. Therefore, a rotational moment of the force of gravity, causing the upper half of the body to lean forward ($W_1 \cdot L_1$, see figure 7.4) must be opposed by a counterbalanced moment. This moment is provided by the action of the spine erectors. These muscles are situated near the axis of rotation (which is located near the region of the nucleus pulposus of the intervertebral disc), and therefore the moment arm of the pull L_2 is small. To produce the necessary moment of force, these muscles in turn generate considerable force F (in accordance with the lever principle—the smaller the distance, the greater the force). Since the line of action of the muscle force F runs almost parallel to the spinal column, this force, added to the force of gravity, sharply increases the pressure on the intervertebral discs.

As a result, a force acting on L4 in the usual upright position amounts not to half the body weight, but to the body weight. During leans, lifts, and other specific movements, external forces create a considerable moment relative to the axis of rotation that passes through the lumbar intervertebral discs. The muscles and especially the ligaments of the spinal column are close to the axis of rotation, so the force they produce sometimes exceeds the weight of the load being lifted and that of the upper parts of the body. This force contributes significantly to the mechanical load that falls on the intervertebral discs (table 7.1).

Role of Intra-Abdominal Pressure

The mechanism and the very role of the **intra-abdominal pressure (IAP)** load have been questioned recently by some researchers. What is presented here reflects the most commonly accepted explanation.

The formula calculations cited in the caption of figure 7.4 show that even during a lean with an 80-kg weight, the load on the lumbar vertebrae can be greater than 1,000 kg, which exceeds the limit of their mechanical strength.

Table 7.1 Force (Body Weight) Acting on L3 in Different Situations

Posture or movement	Force
Lying, supine position, traction 30 kg applied	0.14
Lying, supine position, legs straight	0.43
Upright standing posture	1.00
Walking	1.21
Lateral trunk lean to one side	1.35
Sitting unsupported	1.43
Isometric exercises for muscles of abdominal wall	1.57
Laughter	1.71
Incline forward 20°	1.71
Sit-up from supine position, legs straight	2.50
Lifting a 20-kg load, back straight, knees bent	3.00
Lifting a 20-kg load from forward lean, legs straight	4.85

At the same time we know that athletes can lift significantly greater weights without apparent harm. Of course, this is true in part because of the considerable strength of individual anatomical structures of the spinal column in trained persons. But the main reason is one that these calculations do not take into account—the role of the internal support that emerges as a result of elevated IAP during the execution of many strength exercises (figure 7.5).

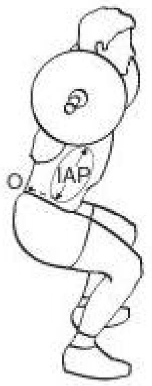


Figure 7.5 Internal support of the spinal column can be compared to the mechanical action of a ball located in the abdominal cavity. Intra-abdominal pressure (IAP) produces the spinal extension moment relative to the axis of rotation O (l is the moment arm).

IAP increases during muscular efforts, especially during a Valsalva maneuver. As a result of internal support, the pressure on intervertebral discs can be reduced by up to 20% on average and up to 40% in extreme cases.

The most accessible method of measuring IAP is to introduce a pressure gauge into the stomach cavity. Here the intrastomachic pressure, which is almost the same as the IAP, is measured. Figures 7.6 and 7.7 show data on IAP measured during the execution of various physical exercises. On the basis of the results of several investigations, a couple of conclusions can be drawn.

We find that the IAP is proportional to the moment of force relative to the axis of rotation passing through the intervertebral discs (but not to the force produced or to the weight lifted). Because different techniques can be employed to perform identical exercises with the same weight, the externally generated force corresponds to different moments of force. Depending on the moment arm, some technique variations are more dangerous than others. We can also conclude that with an increase in the ability to lift maximal weights, IAP increases, promoting

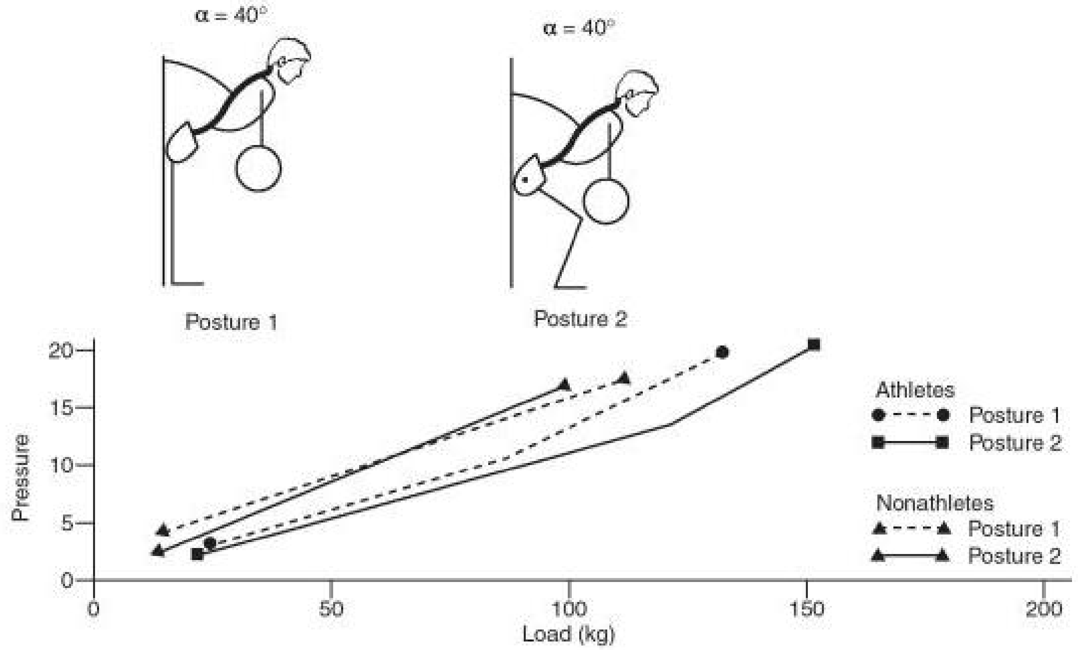


Figure 7.6 IAP (kilopascals) during weightlifting.

Reprinted, by permission, from V.A. Zatsiorsky and V.P. Sazonov, 1985, "Biomechanical foundations in the prevention of injuries to the spinal lumbar region during physical exercise training," *Theory and Practice of Physical Culture* 7: 33-40.

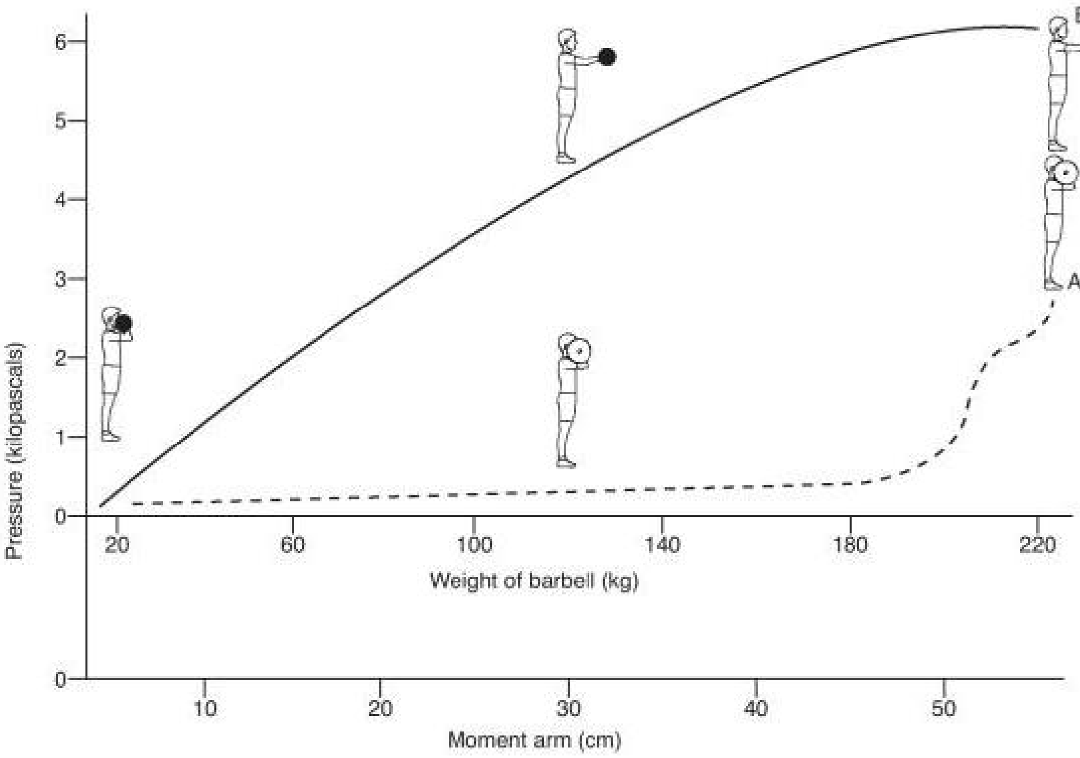


Figure 7.7 IAP (kilopascals) when there is an increase *(a)* in the weight borne on the shoulders, and *(b)* in the moment arm of force (distance from the load to the shoulders) during slow arm extension, constant weight 20 kg.

From V.P Sazonov, 1985, *Biomechanical studies in the prevention of injuries to the spinal lumbar region during physical exercise training* (Moscow, Russia: Russian State Academy of Physical Education and Sport). By permission of Russian State Academy of Physical Education and Sport.

a decrease in mechanical loads affecting the spinal column.

High IAP is generated by the activity of muscles in the abdominal wall, the intercostal muscles, and the **diaphragm.** If the magnitudes of IAP and other variables (weight lifted, body posture) are measured, the amount of mechanical pressure acting on the intervertebral discs can be estimated with acceptable accuracy by specially developed biomechanical models.

INJURY PREVENTION TO THE LUMBAR REGION

To prevent injuries to the lumbar region of the spine or reduce the consequences of these injuries, it is necessary to maximally reduce the load falling on the lumbar section of the spine and to strengthen the muscles of the lumbar region, or to create a **muscular corset.** People differ markedly both in the extent of muscle development in the lumbar region and in the size of the maximal loads that they can bear. Therefore, in practice, preventive advice should be strictly individualized.

From a practical standpoint, there are several important guidelines for the prophylaxis of low back problems for athletes. It is helpful for prevention to strengthen certain muscle groups and to use proper sport technique. Some athletes may benefit from

- the use of special implements designed to decrease spinal load,
- posture correction and improvement of flexibility, and
- the use of rehabilitation procedures.

Muscle Strengthening

LBPS occurs more frequently in persons with weak or nonproportionally developed muscles such as a weak abdominal wall. Proper muscle development is required for the prevention of LBPS. In addition to strengthening erector spine muscles, athletes should exercise the muscles of the abdominal wall (not only the rectus abdominis but also the oblique muscles of the abdomen) and the short, deep muscles of the back. This issue becomes complicated because it is precisely the exercises aimed at forming a muscular corset that are often associated with large loads on the lumbar spine. To prevent spinal overloading during strengthening of the spine erector muscles, extreme caution is necessary. This is especially true for teenagers and women. The 3-year rule mentioned earlier (page 111) is useful here.

Exercises for Muscles of the Abdominal Wall

Let's first analyze the load imposed on intervertebral discs in a lying position. For a person lying supine with legs outstretched, the load falling on the intervertebral discs is rather significant and is equal to approximately 35 to 40% of body weight. This is related primarily to activity of the **iliopsoas** (the compound iliacus and psoas magnus muscles; figure 7.8), which apparently is manifested externally in the preservation of lumbar **lordosis.**

When the legs bend at the knees, the hip flexors shorten and the force of their pull drops to 0. As a result, the pressure in the intervertebral discs decreases. Pain usually disappears in patients in this position. A coach can judge the cessation of lumbar muscle activity by the disappearance of lumbar lordosis; in other words, the back becomes flat.

Exercises for the Rectus Abdominis Muscle

Muscles of the abdominal wall deserve special attention during heavy resistance training, especially with beginning athletes and teenagers, for three main reasons. First, these muscles stabilize the trunk and participate in locomotion as well as in many other movements. Second, well-developed muscles of the abdominal wall help maintain proper function of the internal organs in the abdominal region. Finally, adequate strength of this muscle group is the best prevention for an **abdominal hernia** (i.e., the protrusion of an internal organ or its part through the abdominal wall). A hernia may be provoked by increased IAP resulting from lifting heavy

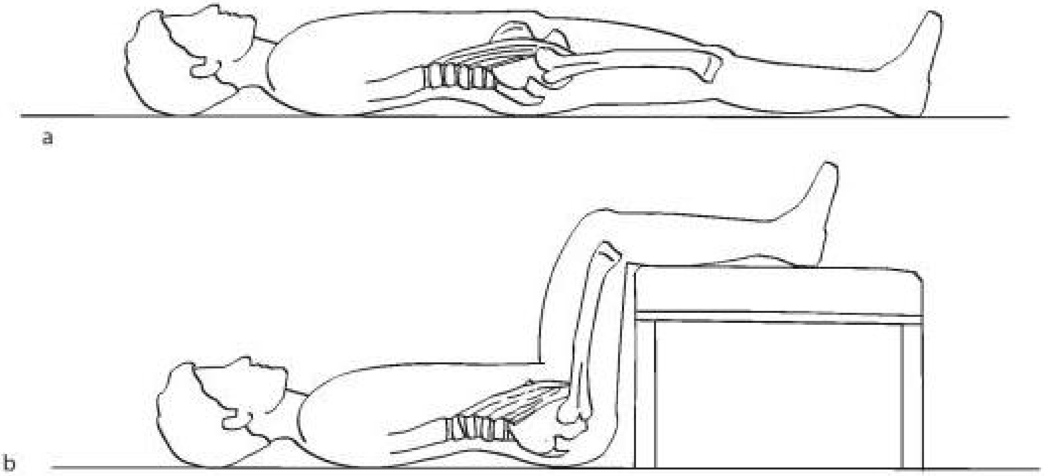


Figure 7.8 Influence of the ileolumbar muscles on the creation of pressure in the intervertebral discs. *(a)* The iliopsoas muscles are stretched; the force of their pull is applied to the spine. There is definite pressure on the discs, and lumbar lordosis is retained, due to which there is some protrusion of the discs posteriorly (see figure 7.3 on page 140). In LBPS patients in an exacerbation period, this position can be painful. *(b)* The iliopsoas muscles are shortened and do not show the force of the pull. As a result, the pressure in the discs is lower, the spine straightens out in the lumbar region, and the discs do not stick out past the edge of the vertebrae. Pain usually disappears.

Adapted, by permission, from V.M. Zatsiosky and V.P. Sazonov, 1985, "Biomechanical foundations in the prevention of injuries to the spinal lumbar region during physical exercise training," *Theory and Practice of Physical Culture* 7: 33-40.

loads. That is, if an athlete's spine extensors are strong and the abdominal muscles are relatively weak, high IAP may lead to a hernia. Hernias in young athletes should be regarded as a coach's blunder. They occur when the training of abdominal muscles has been neglected.

Exercises for abdominal wall muscles fall into two groups: (a) leg raising with the torso securely anchored and (b) sit-ups, that is, raising the torso with the legs securely anchored. Leg raising in the supine position is accomplished by the activity of the flexor muscles in the hip joints (the iliopsoas muscles, the rectus femoris muscles, and others). The rectus abdominis muscle, fastened at its lower end to the pubis symphysis, is relatively inactive; it secures the pelvis and increases IAP. It begins to shorten only when the legs are raised high enough. At this point, however, the moment of force of gravity, pulling the legs down, is relatively slight. Since the initial pressure on the discs is rather high and the activity of the abdominal wall muscles is not significant (though it is precisely for their development that this exercise is done), this exercise is not especially valuable. Certainly it should not be the only exercise used to train the abdominal muscles.

Leg raising in a hanging position is much more effective (here the rectus abdominis muscle contracts when the moment of gravity of the legs reaches its maximum), but it is feasible only for trained persons. The so-called basket hang is an example of an exercise from this group. Here the performer is suspended from a horizontal bar with legs extended. The knees are drawn up to the chest until the pelvis tilts up and back, and then the trainee uncurls to the extended position.

Sit-ups are considered a major exercise for the rectus abdominis muscles. Persons at high risk of LBPS should perform sit-ups with the legs bent, as in this position the load on the spine is lighter and the effect on the abdominal wall muscles is greater. This is so because the iliopsoas muscles are in a shortened state and do not take part in generating a rotational moment of force. In sit-ups done from a straight-leg starting position, the main portion of the torque is produced by the iliopsoas muscles (which is not appropriate to the training goals here), and pressure on the intervertebral discs is very great (corresponding approximately to that for a forward lean in the upright position with a 20-kg weight in the hands). This type of exercise is hardly ever recommended for persons who have recently recovered from an attack of low back pain.

Sit-ups should be performed with the torso in a bent position. The first step is to move the head and shoulders (thrusting the chest and abdomen forward reduces activity of the abdominal wall muscles). Note that sit-ups do have drawbacks. The abdominals are prime movers for only the first 30 to 45° of flexion movement while the hip flexors are responsible for the last 45°. Because the hip flexors are exercised through a short arc, this can induce their adaptive shortening and, in turn, hyperlordosis. Persons with LBPS can limit themselves to the first part of this exercise until the shoulder girdle becomes slightly elevated. In partial sit-ups such as this (also called partial curls or crunches), the knees are flexed to a much more oblique angle (140-150°) and the trainee raises the trunk off the floor about 30°.

One of the exercises most frequently recommended for persons at high risk of LBPS is raising the pelvis and legs from the supine position. This exercise resembles the first part of an elbow (shoulder) stand—the birch tree (figure 7.9, exercise 5). Here pressure on the intervertebral discs is small, and involvement of the abdominal wall muscles is significant.

For people with LBPS and possessing a low level of muscular strength, isometric exercises are recommended. These individuals are advised to begin training of the muscular corset after an aggravation of LBPS. The value of these exercises is that they put a certain load on the muscles of the abdominal wall with almost no increase in pressure on the intervertebral discs. To do the exercises, after a normal inhalation the person contracts the musculature of the abdominal wall and back with the glottis closed and the rectal sphincter contracted, trying to produce a strong exhalation. Since this kind of straining is created through the action of the musculature of the trunk and diaphragm, multiple repetitions elicit a training effect. The exercise should be repeated 10 to 15 times with the muscle contraction lasting 3 to 5 s. This series should be repeated three to four times a day. In experi-

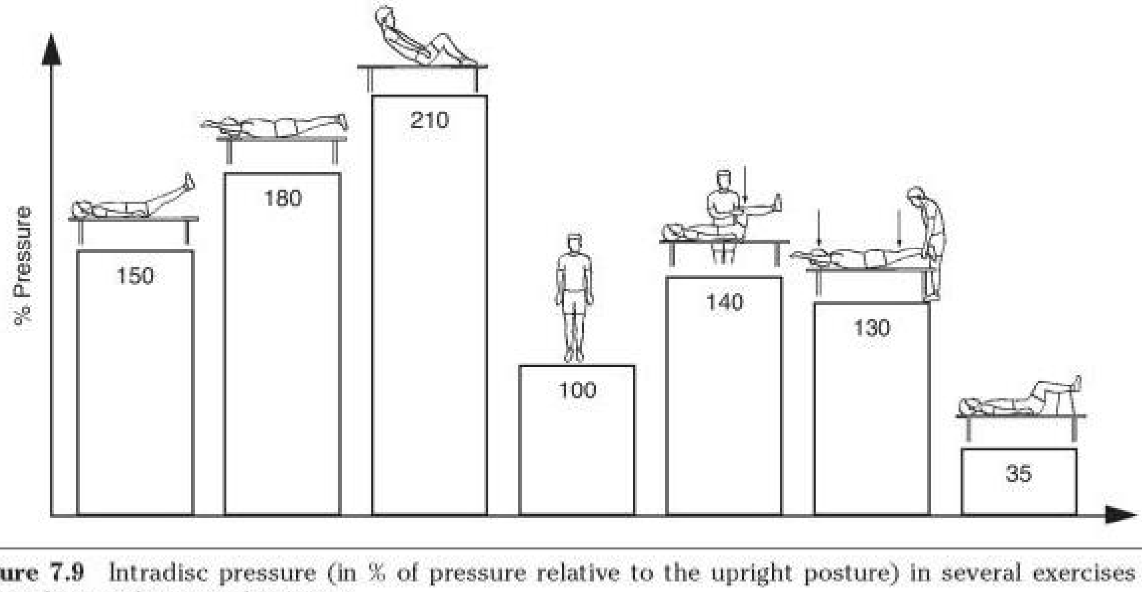


Figure 7.9 Intradisc pressure (in % of pressure relative to the upright posture) in several exercises for strengthening the muscular corset.

Reprinted, by permission, from A.L. Nachemson, 1976, "The lumbar spine, an orthopaedic challenge," *Spine* 1: 59-71.

ments conducted with a double-blind control, isometric exercises have been shown to produce a decidedly better effect than other types of exercises.

Exercises for the Oblique and Internal Abdominis Muscles

In many movements, such as symmetrical weight lifts, high IAP is created as a result mainly of activity of the oblique and internal abdominis muscles rather than the rectus abdominis. The reason is that the rectus abdominis, while active, generates a trunk-bending moment that should be counterbalanced by an additional moment produced by the antagonistic muscles—the spine extensors. The higher the activity of the rectus abdominis muscles, the greater the IAP (which is good). At the same time, however, the higher the activity of these muscles, the greater is the bending moment that must be overcome by the spine extensors in order to produce the required extensor moment of the spine. As a result, the trunk flexors are modestly activated during weightlifting tasks. The IAP is generated chiefly by activity of the oblique abdominis muscles (and diaphragm). In addition, strong oblique muscles reinforce the erector spinae **fasciae.** The fasciae support the spine and reduce strain on the back extensor muscles. So exercises for the oblique and internal abdominis muscles, such as trunk rotations against resistance and lateral sit-ups (trunk lifts), should be included in training protocols.

Exercise for the Short, Deep Muscles of the Back

Muscles of the lumbar region (specifically, the epaxial muscles, such as the interspinales connecting adjacent spinous processes or the intertransversalis connecting adjacent transverse processes of the vertebrae) are difficult to activate in ordinary physical exercises.

The following exercise is recommended for training these muscles. The athlete stands with the back against a wall so that heels, buttocks, shoulders, and the back of the head touch the wall. The next step is to address the lumbar lordosis by completely straightening the spine so that the lumbar region rests against the wall and even exerts pressure on it. Here, contact between the wall and the other parts of the body should continue (figure 7.10). This exercise often proves difficult for even highly skilled athletes. When this is the case, it can be tried in a supine position. After mastery, it can be done without the aid of a wall. The usual pattern is 5 to 6 attempts of 4 to 5 s each.

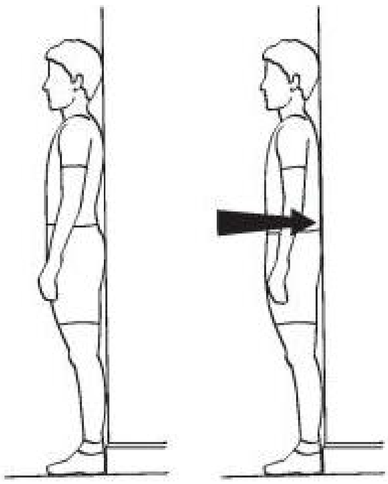


Figure 7.10 An exercise for the short, deep muscles of the back (so-called pelvic tilt).

Requirements for Proper Sport Technique

When the body is inclined forward, the activity of muscles that extend the spinal column increases at first; then, with a deeper lean, this activity almost completely disappears (see figure 7.11). The ligaments and fasciae of the back assume the load here. Since they are close to the axis of rotation, they should produce considerable force to counteract the force of gravity moment. Here, pressure on the intervertebral discs is very high.

A rounded back is dangerous in lifting weights because, as a result of lumbar spine flexion, the compression load acts on the anterior part of the intervertebral discs while the extension load acts on the posterior part. Specifically, a pressure concentration takes

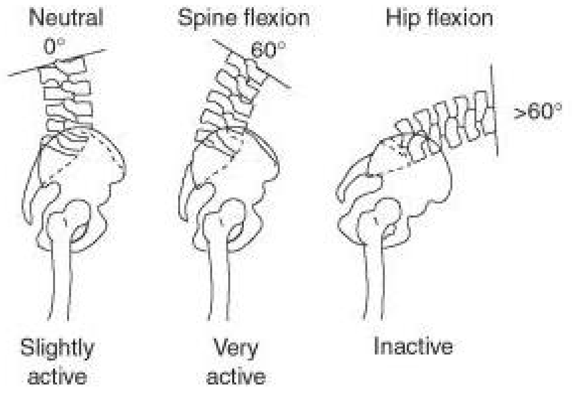


Figure 7.11 The activity of the muscles that support the spinal column during the execution of a forward lean. Lumbar flexion accounts for approximately 45 to 60° of motion until the posterior ligaments become taut. The second part of the movement is performed due to the pelvic rotation until the pelvis is passively restricted by the gluteus and hamstrings. In this position, no muscular activity is seen. The trunk weight is counterbalanced by passive forces of the erector spinae fasciae, posterior ligaments, and muscles.

Reprinted, by permission, from V.M. Zatsiosky and V.P. Sazonov, 1985, "Biomechanical foundations in the prevention of injuries to the spinal lumbar region during physical exercise training," *Theory and Practice of Physical Culture* 7: 33-40.

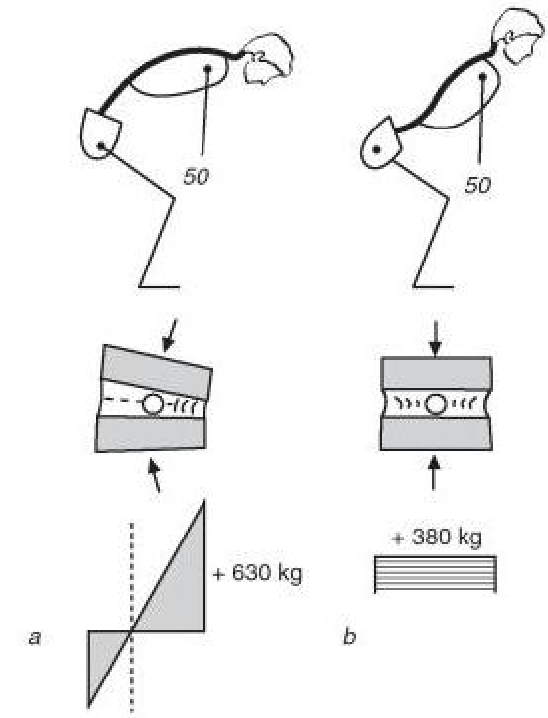


Figure 7.12 Load on the intervertebral discs when 50 kg is lifted by different methods. *(a)* Incorrect (rounded back) technique; and *(b)* correct. Compression loads on a lumbar intervertebral disc amount to 630 kg and 380 kg, respectively.

Reprinted, by permission, from V.M. Zatsiorsky, 1966, *Motor abilities of athletes* (Moscow, Russia: Fizkultura i Sport), 60.

place. This pressure, that is, the amount of force falling on a unit of the disc surface, is very considerable (figure 7.12).

Some practical advice is, first, to preserve lumbar lordosis when lifting weights (figure 7.13). In addition, if possible, lift weights while squatting rather than stooping. This is a principle that should be learned from childhood so that proper methods of lifting weights become habit. Physical education should stress developing the extensor muscles of the legs so that subjectively it is as easy for a person to squat as to stoop.

Teenage athletes (in sports such as tennis, basketball, and volleyball) often neglect conditioning training, including strength development, during the initial stages of multiyear preparation. At 20, they find that their athletic performance is limited by poor physical fitness. Then they try to develop strength as fast as possible by copying the training patterns of athletes from other sports such as track and field, especially with free weights. But track and field athletes at the age of 20 have had several years of experience in conditioning. It is impossible for novices to replicate their training routine. It is simply dangerous.

An unfortunate example concerns a conditioning coach who was invited to work with the USSR women's tennis team in the early 1980s. He had never worked with comparable athletes before and had no conception of their inexperience with strength training. The training routine he recommended duplicated heavy resistance programs from other sports. The result? In 6 months, 9 of 10 athletes had low back problems. Eight of them never rehabilitated completely and dropped out of international sport.

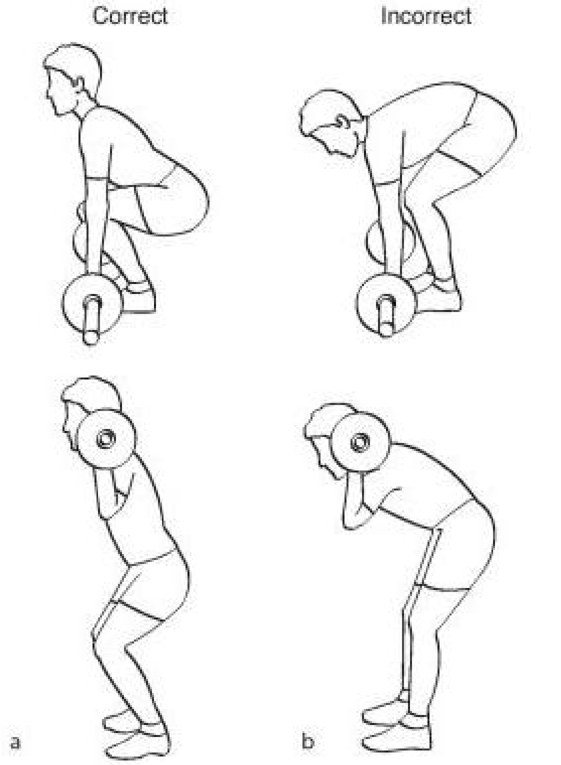


Figure 7.13 *(a)* Correct and *(b)* incorrect techniques of leaning and weightlifting.

Reprinted, by permission, from V.M. Zatsiosky and V.P. Sazonov, 1985, "Biomechanical foundations in the prevention of injuries to the spinal lumbar region during physical exercise training," *Theory and Practice of Physical Culture* 7: 33-40.

Implements

Several types of implements can be used to enhance IAP and fix the lumbar spine. One of these is a special bolster for use in the performance of exercises for the muscles that extend up the spinal column (figure 7.14). Weightlifting belts are also recommended to increase the IAP and reduce the load on the spine. By tradition, weightlifting belts are constructed with the idea of providing support against spinal deformation. This is important in an exercise such as a standing barbell press.

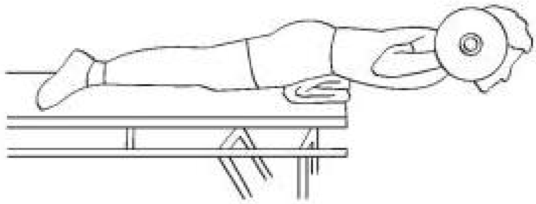


Figure 7.14 Use of a pad placed under the abdomen increases the IAP and lessens the load on the intervertebral discs.

Reprinted, by permission, from V.M. Zatsiorsky and V.P. Sazonov, 1985, "Biomechanical foundations in the prevention of injuries to the spinal lumbar region during physical exercise training," *Theory and Practice of Physical Culture* 7: 33-40.

Be Aware Checklist

Extreme caution is in order when weightlifting is executed by women (because of the more compliant intervertebral discs), very tall men, and teenagers. Check the following:

- Do these athletes have an immediate need for weight training? Why free weights? Strength exercises without free weights are innumerable. Be creative.
- Do your trainees have proper prior experience in strength training (without a barbell)? Recall the 3-year rule. Is this principle satisfied?
- Strengthen trunk muscles—spine erectors and abdominal muscles.
- Use exercise machines first, and then free weights.
- Teach correct lifting technique. Monitor the lifting pattern.
- Begin with small loads. Inappropriate weight, rather than the barbell itself, is the source of risk. For a majority of inexperienced athletes, a bar without added plates provides adequate resistance.
- Use weightlifting belts and bolsters.
- Teach proper breathing patterns.
- Readers who are interested in strength training of women, young athletes, and seniors are advised to read chapters 9, 10, and 11, respectively.

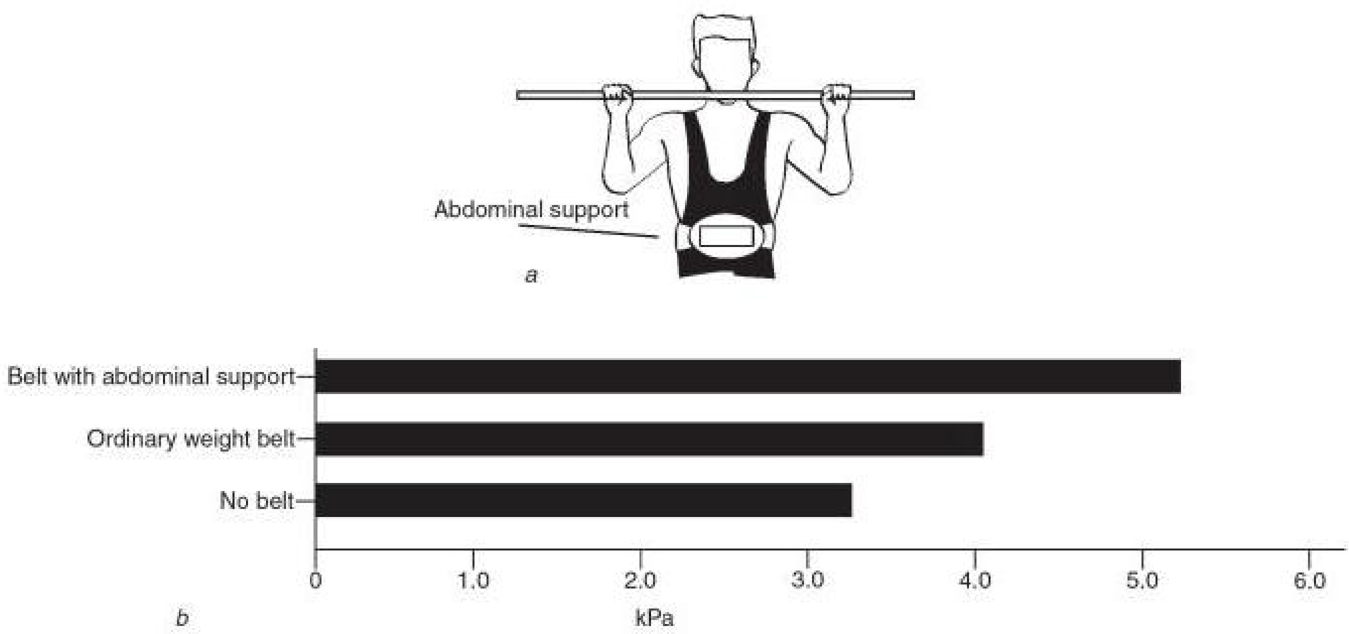


Figure 7.15 IAP during exercise under different conditions. *(a)* A (patented) belt with firm abdominal support (Russian patent #1378834 to V.M. Zatsiorsky and V.P. Sazonov from November 8, 1987). *(b)* IAP while lifting two 10-kg dumbbells (shoulder flexion with the arms stretched) under three conditions: belt with abdominal support, ordinary weight belt, and no belt.

Reprinted, by permission, from V.M. Zatsiorsky and V.P. Sazonov, 1987, "Belt-corsets reducing risk of the spine lumbar trauma at weight lifting and strength exercises," *Theory and Practice of Physical Culture* 3: 15-18.

This exercise, however, has been excluded from the Olympic weightlifting program. Even so, the construction of waist belts for weightlifting remains the same. According to some research, belts that support the abdomen, rather than the spine, increase the IAP and consequently decrease spinal load to a greater extent (figure 7.15).

Posture Correction and Flexibility Development

Increased lumbar lordosis gives rise to a higher risk of LBPS. Lordosis compensates the obliquity of the sacrum (and, hence, pelvis), which is tilted with respect to the vertical. The position of the sacrum is characterized by a sacrovertebral angle formed by the upper surface of the first sacral vertebra and the horizontal. Normally, the smaller this angle, the better. A more horizontal position of the pelvis favors stability at the lumbosacral junction.

The slant of the pelvis can be corrected by the proper strength development of corresponding muscles. (Note that in heavier people the pelvis is usually directed more obliquely because of the weight of the body bearing on it, and in this case the first recommendation is to lose weight.) The following are the corresponding muscles:

- Trunk flexors (rectus abdominis) and hip extensors (hamstrings). These muscles, when activated, tend to decrease the sacral angle, rotating the sacrum in a more vertical position (and correspondingly the pelvis into a more horizontal attitude). The abdominals are said to control excessive anterior pelvic tilt.
- Trunk extensors and hip flexors (rectus femoris). These rotate the pelvis into a more oblique position.

In athletes who perform many barbell squats and sit-and-reach exercises but neglect to strengthen the abdomen and stretch the

Have Lower Back Problems?

First, consult a physician. Ask for a diagnosis. Usually an X ray, nuclear magnetic resonance imaging (NMRI), or both are required. Keep the results for future reference. If nothing serious is discovered and training is permitted, then take these steps:

Step 1—For an acute pain period

Perform relaxation exercises for at least 1 to 2 weeks and do the isometric exercises described in the section on exercises for the rectus abdominis muscle. The goal of relaxation exercises is first to decrease and then to completely eliminate muscle spasm. Here are examples from a relaxation routine:

- Lie down. Relax facial muscles. Relax eyelids. The eyes should be semiclosed during the entire routine.
- Relax neck muscles. Permit your head to fall down freely to the right without any muscular resistance. Only gravity is acting. Wait 3 s; rotate your head face up. Relax again. Permit the head to fall down to the left. Repeat 3 or 4 times on each side.
- Bend the right knee with foot on the floor. Relax. Permit the leg to extend, the foot gliding along the floor. Again, only gravity force is involved. Repeat with each leg 3 to 5 times.
- Bend an arm. Relax. Permit the arm to fall down. Repeat with the second arm. Relax. Repeat several times.
- Perform isometric exercises for the abdominal muscles.
- Repeat the relaxation routine in reverse order. Relax, relax, relax.

Step 2—When the pain disappears

Temporarily decrease the load on the lumbar spine (e.g., use leg lifts instead of squats). Then analyze these factors:

- Your training routine—Did you overload the spinal region? Did you squat much the last time? Did you perform many deadlifts?
- Your fitness level—(a) Are your spine erectors, rectus abdominis, oblique abdominis, and epaxial muscles strong enough? Did you neglect to strengthen them? (b) How is your flexibility? Can you touch the floor? With your palms? Are your hip flexors tight? (c) Is your pelvis inclined much in your customary posture? Do you have large lumbar lordosis?
- Your lifting technique—Is your spine rounded during lifting? Ask somebody to check it.
- Your abdominal support—Do you wear a waist belt when lifting? Does this belt have an abdominal support? Do you use bolsters?
- Your restoration measures—What kind of restoration measures do you usually use between training workouts? None? This is not advisable.

Depending on the answers, prescribe corrective and preventive measures for yourself. Reread this chapter carefully and decide what suits you best. Follow the new routine. When these measures are taken, 9 of 10 athletes completely restore their abilities and experience no difficulty or have only minor problems with their spines.

hip flexors, the hamstrings are often flexible while the abdominal muscles are weak and the hip flexors are tight. In this case the anterior pelvic tilt becomes exaggerated. In turn, hyperlordosis appears, causing the discs to bulge posteriorly and putting compressive stress on the vertebral facets. The nerve roots that exit from the vertebrae can be compressed and this can lead to pain. To correct pelvic tilt and hyperlordosis, the advice is to strengthen the abdominal muscles and perform stretching exercises to decrease tightness of the hip flexors.

Rehabilitation Procedures

To restore the dimensions and properties of compressed intervertebral discs created by exposure to large systematic loads (weightlifting, rowing), restorative measures are usually recommended. These include massage and swimming in warm (~30 °C) water after a training session with heavy lifts for 5 to 15 min. The swimming can be replaced by a whirlpool bath. When the load falling on the intervertebral discs is reduced, the degree of disc hydration increases (figure 7.16).

Many coaches recommend alternating weightlifting with hangs during a training session. However, spine length in the majority of athletes decreases during such hangs. Usually a reflex activation of the trunk muscles takes place and these contracted muscles prevent the spine from lengthening. Consequently, the dimensions of the intervertebral discs are not restored. Not all athletes can relax in the hanging position. In addition, full disc hydration occurs only during prolonged removal of the compressive load acting on the spine, and this does not happen with hangs alone.

Spinal traction has proven to be a much more effective procedure. Figure 7.17 shows the recommended posture and unit (a **split table**) for this stretching. Spinal traction, performed twice a week with individually adjusted traction force (up to 100 kg for elite

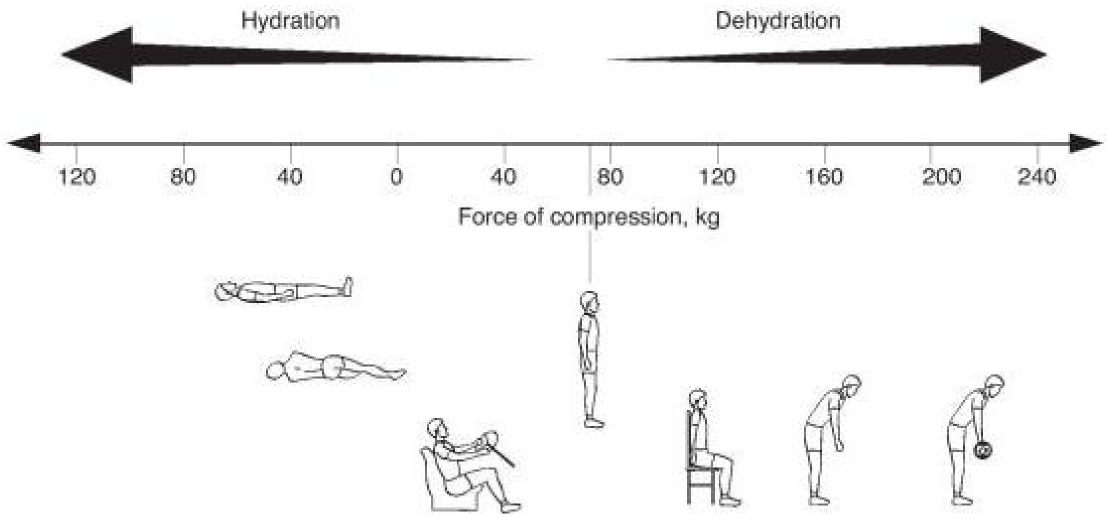


Figure 7.16 Intradisc pressure and water saturation of nucleus pulposus (for L3 disc).

Reprinted, by permission, from A. Nachemson, 1975, "Towards a better understanding of back pain: A review on the mechanics of the lumbar disc," *Rheumatology and Rehabilitation* 14: 129-143.

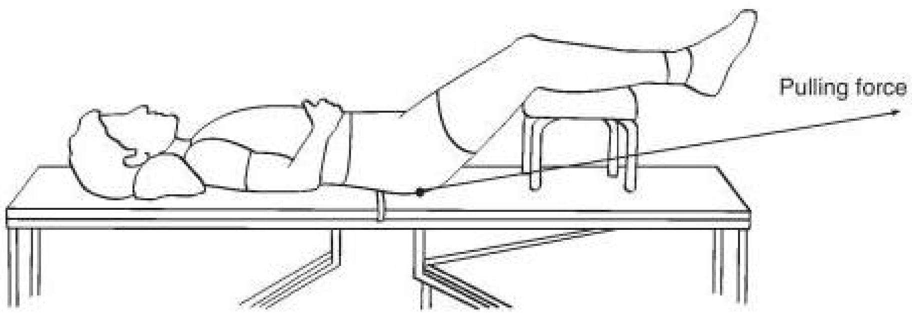


Figure 7.17 An apparatus—a split table—used for spinal traction. The athlete's legs are bent, and the force of the pull is oriented at an angle to the horizontal (in order to keep the back flat).

From V.M. Zatsiorsky and S.S. Arutiunjan, 1987, *Spinal traction as a rehabilitation tool* (Moscow, Russia: Central Institute of Physical Culture).

weightlifters from the super-heavyweight class), is a very useful restorative measure.

Spinal traction is recommended only to athletes with no history of LBPS. Preliminary medical investigation and permission from a physician are required. When an athlete is already suffering from LBPS, traction can be a negative influence. Figure 7.18 shows a reason for this. During traction, the lumbar lordosis diminishes and the spinal column takes on a straighter position. Here there is a relative shift of the spinal cord rootlets in a caudal direction. Therefore, if disc protrusion has occurred above a rootlet, traction alleviates the pain; but if it is under the rootlet, the pain is exacerbated. A physician needs to make the decision whether spinal traction is advisable for a given athlete.

Patients experiencing pain due to disc protrusion usually try to alleviate the pain by moving the neural rootlet farther from the protrusion place: When they are standing or walking they incline the trunk to one side. This is a symptom of the relative location of the compressed rootlet: If the patient inclines away from the painful side, the rootlet is above the protrusion. For this patient, traction is not recommended; it will exacerbate the pain. However, if the patient inclines toward the painful side, this is a sign that the rootlet is below the protrusion. For this patient, traction can be useful. In any case, the decision should be made by a medical doctor.

SUMMARY

Coaches and athletes should give special attention in heavy resistance training to prevention of injury to the lumbar spine region.

Biomechanically, intervertebral discs are characterized in large part by water saturation and intradiscal pressure. During a vertical load the mechanical strength of discs is adequate, not inferior, to the strength of

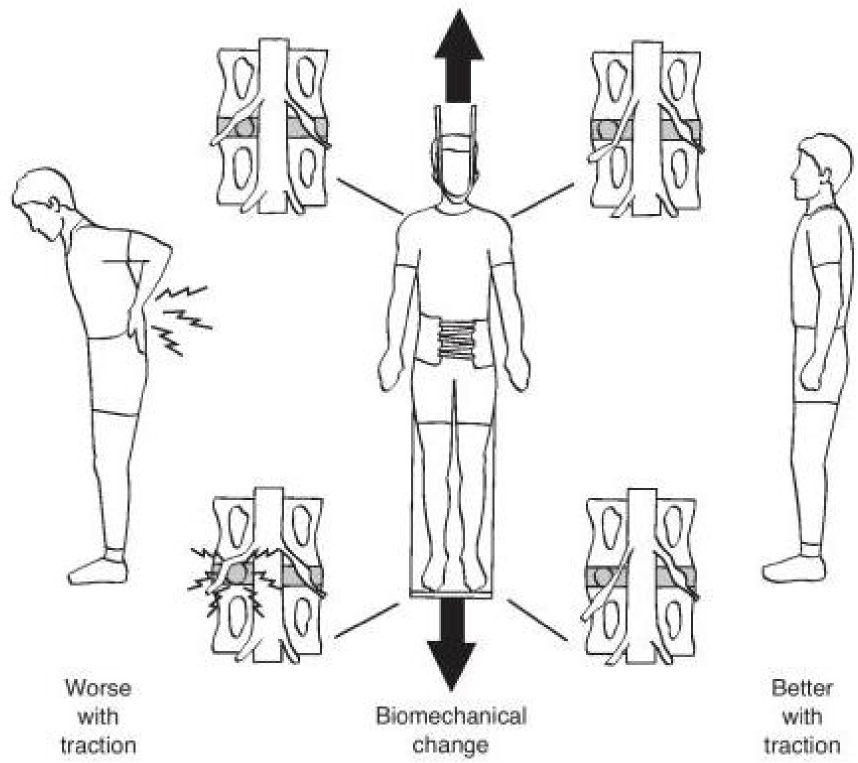


Figure 7.18 The influence of spinal traction on pain.

Reprinted, by permission, from A. White and M.M. Panjabi, 1990, *Clinical biomechanics of spine,* 2nd ed. (Philadelphia, PA: Lippincott, Williams, and Wilkins), 50.

adjoining vertebrae. But during a lean of the spinal column, the nucleus pulposus is shifted to the side opposite the lean and the fibrous ring is somewhat protruded. This can induce compression of the spinal cord rootlets and give rise to a painful sensation.

Mechanical loads affecting the intervertebral discs are classified as impact and static. Impact loads are typically experienced during landing. An impact load during landing is softened by the combined influence of the properties of the supporting surface, the quality of the footwear, the dampening properties of the motor system, and the landing techniques. Soft landing techniques, in which ankle plantar flexion and knee flexion are coordinated, reduce the magnitude of impact forces.

Static loads acting on intervertebral discs are mainly generated by muscle tension and tendon forces rather than by the external load itself. During weightlifting, an extremely high load on the lumbar vertebrae can be reduced somewhat by elevated IAP, which acts as an internal support. As a result, the pressure on intervertebral discs can be reduced nearly 20% on average and up to 40% in extreme cases. When the ability to lift maximal weights increases, IAP increases, promoting a decrease in mechanical loads affecting the spinal column.

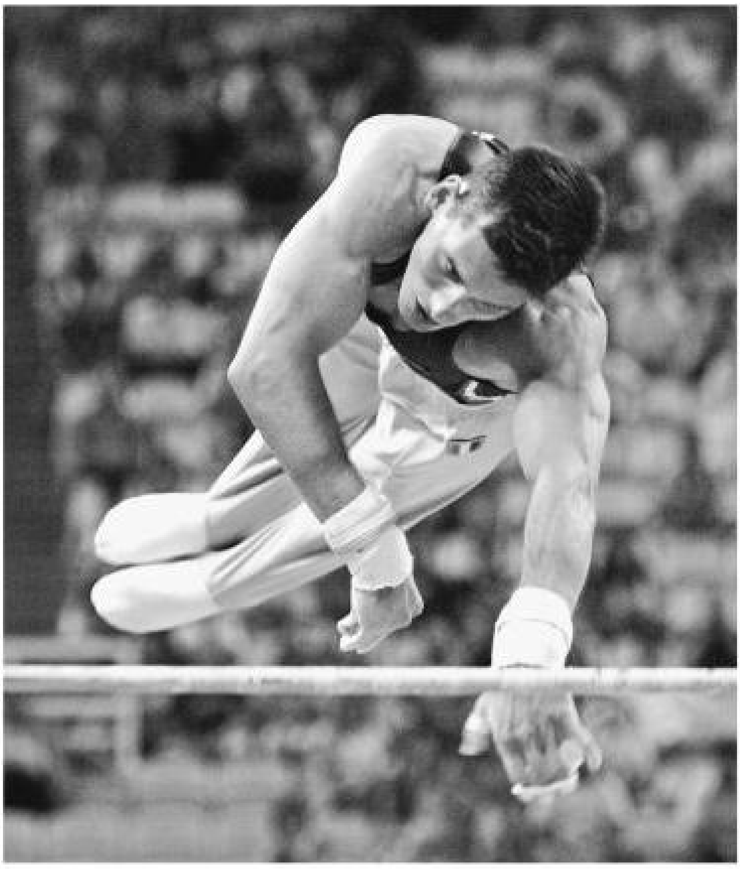
To prevent injuries to the lumbar region of the spine, it is necessary to maximally reduce the load falling on the lumbar region and strengthen the muscles of the region (create a muscular corset). Among the prophylactic measures are muscle strengthening and proper sport technique.

Muscle groups that need to be strengthened, in addition to erector spinae muscles, are the abdominal wall muscles and the short, deep muscles of the back. Proper sport technique also prevents injury. Lumbar lordosis should be preserved when weights are lifted. If possible, weights should be lifted while squatting rather than stooping.

Implements can enhance IAP and fix the lumbar spine. Two of these are waist belts, especially those with a firm abdominal support, and bolsters. Posture correction and flexibility development are also recommended, especially for people with increased lumbar lordosis. To correct pelvic tilt and hyperlordosis, the abdominal muscles must be strengthened and tightness of the hip flexors must be decreased.

To restore the dimensions and properties of intervertebral discs compressed by exposure to large, systematic loads, some rehabilitation measures are useful. These include massage, swimming in warm water, and, especially, spinal traction.

chapter 8



Goal-Specific Strength Training

Heavy resistance training is used for different purposes. Goals may include improvement of strength performance, power performance, and endurance as well as increasing muscle mass or preventing injury. In this chapter we examine the peculiarities of various strength training methods. Usually heavy resistance is used to enhance muscular strength—that is, the maximal force that can be generated by a trainee in a given motion. For example, Olympic weightlifting meets this criterion. We have already looked at training for strength, but before discussing other purposes, it will be useful to make some comments about the training of experienced strength athletes.

STRENGTH PERFORMANCE

The general idea with training experienced athletes is not to train strength itself as a unified whole; rather, it is to train the underlying factors, both muscular and neural. To improve neuromuscular coordination (motor unit recruitment, rate coding, synchronization, the entire coordination pattern), the maximal effort method is the first choice. On the other hand, to stimulate muscle hypertrophy, the methods of repeated and submaximal efforts are more appropriate. By varying the type of exercise, its intensity (method of training), and its training load (volume), we can induce positive adaptation in the desired direction. Conversely, standard exercises and a constant load elicit only premature accommodation and staleness.

All three facets of heavy resistance training—exercise type, training method, (maximal versus submaximal efforts), and training volume—should be changed in a concerted manner. Because the superposition of training effects among different heavy resistance methods is not negative, these methods may in principle be combined in a single microcycle and even in a single training day and session. For instance, it is possible to lift a 1RM barbell and then use the method of submaximal effort in the same workout. However, the proper timing of exercises, methods, and loads over time brings better results. In the typical timing pattern, an exercise complex is changed once every 2 mesocycles. For instance, only 2 or 3 snatch-related exercises of 9 total are used during 2 consecutive mesocycles. The snatch-related exercises are classified according to the type of motion and the initial barbell position. The types of motion are (a) competition snatch (barbell is lifted and fixed in a deep squat position), (b) power snatch (barbell is caught overhead with only slight leg flexion), and (c) snatch pull (barbell is only pulled to the height and not fixed). There are three initial barbell positions: (a) from the floor, (b) from blocks positioned above the floor, and (c) from the hang. Thus there are in total nine combinations.

In this typical pattern of timing, the dominant methods are changed every mesocycle, with the routine during the first mesocycle directed primarily at inducing muscle hypertrophy (mainly by the methods of submaximal and repeated efforts). The training load is varied, usually according to the empirical 60% rule.

Training Goal: Maximal Strength

Combine high-intensity training (to improve neuromuscular coordination) and the repeated or submaximal effort methods, or all three, to stimulate muscle hypertrophy. Change the exercise batteries regularly. Vary the training load.

POWER PERFORMANCE

In many sports, strength exercises are performed with the main objective to improve power, or the velocity of movement, against a given resistance (body weight, implement mass) rather than maximal strength itself. In such situations, maximal strength is regarded as a prerequisite for high movement speed. However, the transmutation of acquired strength gains into velocity gains is not easy. Two issues are of primary importance: the proper selection of strength exercises and training timing.

The requirements for exercise specificity should be thoroughly satisfied. The exercise of first choice should be the main sport exercise with additional resistance, or speed resisted training (note that we are discussing the training of qualified athletes, not novices)—see chapter 6. This resistance should be applied in the proper direction (in locomotion, horizontally) and not exceed a level at which the motion pattern (the sport technique) is substantially altered.

Before a training period, it is advisable to test athletes in the main sport exercises with additional resistance (as well as with decreased resistance, if possible) to determine at least part of the resistance (force)–velocity curve for each trainee (figure 8.1). For instance, shot-putters can be tested with both a standard implement (7,257 g) and with shots of 8- and 9-kg weights. Using the data on outstanding athletes as norms and comparing these data with individual testing results, a coach can recommend the appropriate training protocol for the given period—whether the athlete should pay primary attention to training with heavy or light implements.

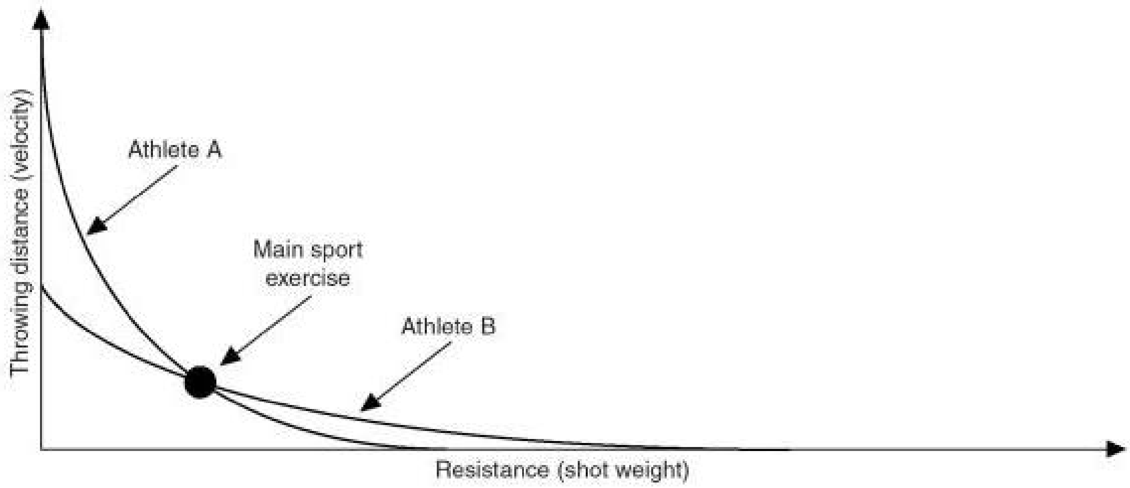


Figure 8.1 Testing results for two athletes having the same sport performance in puts of the standard shots. The athletes' achievements in throwing heavy implements are different. Since athlete A has lower results with heavy implements than athlete B, it is possible to conclude that his strength potential may be greatly improved by exercising with heavy implements. Athlete B must pay more attention to other training directions (polishing sport technique, putting light implements, and the like).

The coach and athlete, when selecting strength exercises for power training, should be attentive to all the facets of exercise specificity described in chapter 6 (working muscles, type of resistance, time and rate of force development, velocity of movement, direction of movement, and the force–posture relationship). Working muscles should be the same as those in the main sport exercise and the type of resistance should mimic the main sport exercise as much as possible. Specifically, it is usual to recommend isokinetic exercises characterized by a slow speed of motion and a smooth, protracted force generation for dryland training in aquatic sports (swimming, rowing, canoeing) but not for power sport disciplines. In contrast, strength exercises with free weights should be restricted in the training of swimmers since these do not permit muscle relaxation immediately after the effort.

If the time available for force development in a sport exercise is short (less than 0.3 s), the rate of force development rather than maximal strength itself is a deciding factor. Comparing maximum force production with the maximum attainable force in the fast movement has proven to be a useful tool for planning training. If the explosive strength deficit (i.e., the difference between maximum strength and the force values generated during a sport movement at takeoff, delivery phase, and so on) is too high (more than about 50% of F_{mm}), heavy resistance training directed toward the enhancement of maximum strength is not efficient; maximum strength gain is of no value toward increasing the velocity (power) of the motion. Because of the short duration of effort, maximal force values cannot be generated, so the rate of force development (RFD) rather than maximum strength has to be the primary training objective.

Maximal concentric efforts like the lifting of maximal loads can enhance the RFD in some athletes. However, because such motor tasks require maximal force rather than maximal RFD, this method may not bring positive results to highly trained athletes.

To enhance RFD, exercises with maximally fast bursts of muscle action against high loads are used. Since the load is high, movement velocity may be relatively low, but the RFD must be extreme: The bursts of muscle action should be performed as fast as possible with maximum voluntary effort. These exercises are done in a rested state, usually immediately after a warm-up. The typical routine consists of 3 sets with 3 repetitions against a load of about 90% of maximum. Rest intervals between sets should be long (about 5 min). Other muscle groups can be exercised during the rest intervals. When the training objective is to improve RFD, these exercises are commonly performed four times a week, and; to retain the RFD, twice a week. Because of accommodation, after 6 to 8 weeks of such training the exercises should be changed.

The rate of force development can also be improved during the training of reversible muscle action (see discussion of the stretch–shortening cycle later in this chapter).

Movement velocity is the next important feature of strength exercises used to enhance power. The typical objective in this case is to increase the velocity of a performed movement against a given resistance. In a force–velocity diagram, this appears as a shift of the corresponding force–velocity value from point $F–V_1$ to point $F–V_2$ (figure 8.2*a*). However, it is impossible to change the position of any one point on the force–velocity curve (i.e., the movement velocity with the given resistance) without altering the position of the entire curve (i.e., the velocity with different resistances). Four variations on changing the force–velocity values are possible.

In the first variation (figure 8.2*b*), the positive velocity gain appears over the entire range of the force–velocity curve. If this were a force–velocity curve for a throwing task (in which the mass of the implement was changed and the throwing distance was measured), the force–velocity curve change means that after training, the athlete could throw farther using both heavy and light implements. This variation is typical for young athletes and is rarely seen with experienced ones. Training with exercises executed in a high-resistance, low-velocity range favors a gain in movement velocity with high resistance (figure 8.2*c*), and performance results with heavy implements are mainly improved. This is the most typical way to improve athletic performance. The third variation, training with a low-resistance, high-velocity demand, brings forth improvement in the low-resistance zone (figure 8.2*d*). This is a useful but auxiliary training strategy to be alternated with high-resistance training (during or immediately before a tapering period).

Finally, training in the intermediate range of resistance (e.g., with a main implement only) leads to a straightening of the force–velocity curve (figure 8.2*e*). Here perfor-

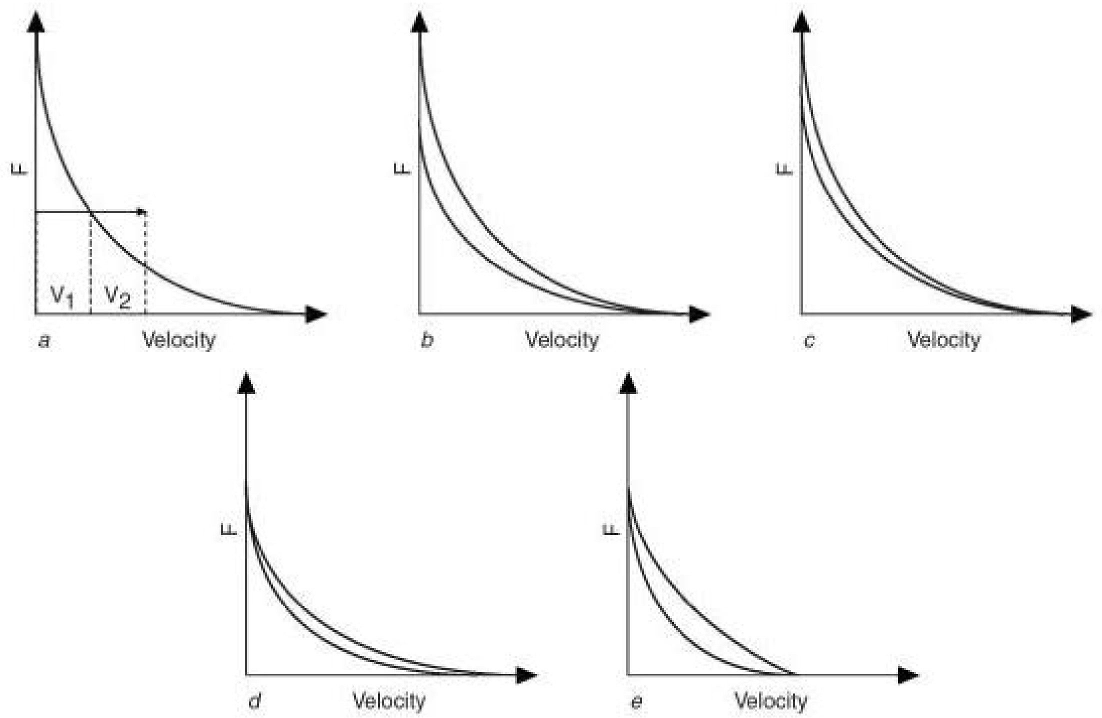
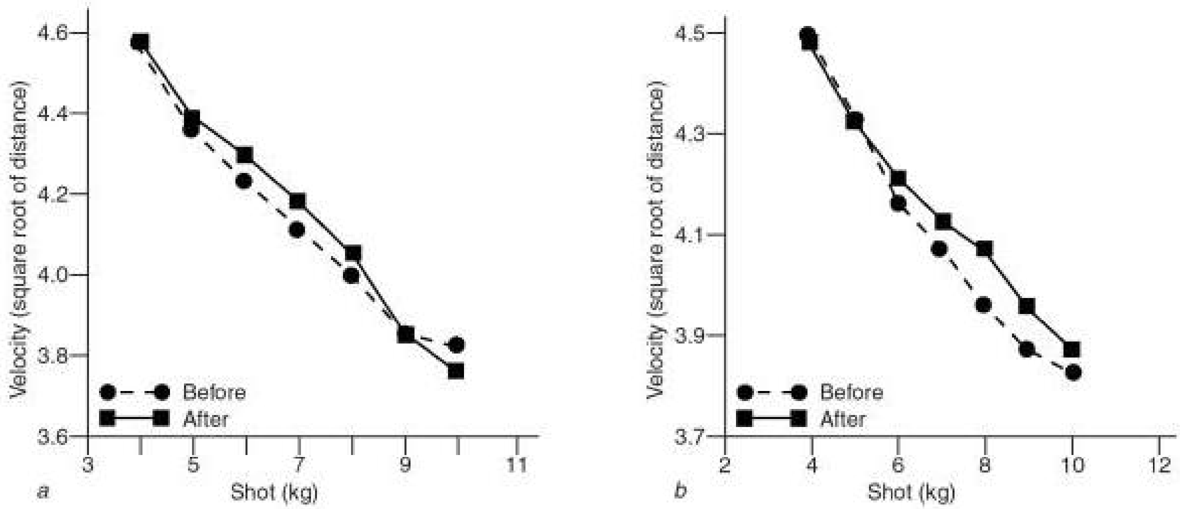
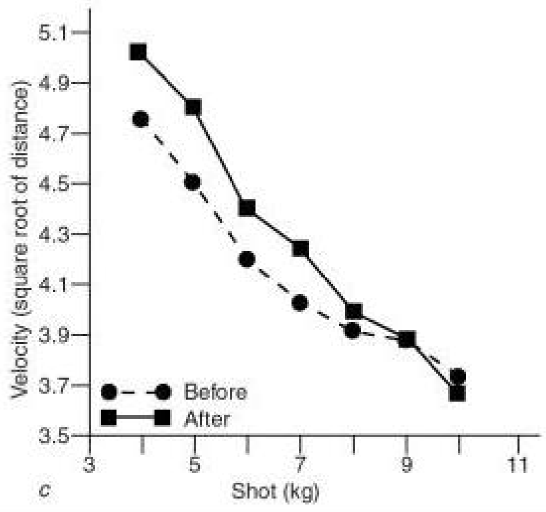


Figure 8.2 Changes of force–velocity curves resulting from training.

mance results improve in the median span of the curve. This happens as an outcome of specific training with constant implements. With this pattern of force–velocity gain, the performance is only briefly improved (usually for no more than one season), and the magnitude of gain is relatively small. The force–velocity curve can become straight but it cannot become convex. To substantially improve performance at a given resistance, achievements in the high-resistance or low-resistance zones must also be enhanced. This situation is rather controversial. On the one hand, training results depend on exercise velocity, and in order to improve the velocity with standard resistance, an athlete must exercise in the same force–velocity range as in the main sport exercise. This specific training elicits the force–velocity curve change shown in figure 8.2*e*, but this change represents only a short-term effect. On the other hand, a substantial performance improvement requires less specific exercises in the high-resistance, low-velocity domain as well as in the low-resistance, high-velocity domain. These considerations are confirmed by the training practice of elite athletes (figure 8.3).





In shot-putting, the throwing distance is the function of the release velocity (v), angle of release (α), and the height of release (h):

$$\text{Distance} = \frac{v^2}{g}\cos\alpha\left(\sin^2\alpha + \sqrt{\sin^2\alpha + \frac{2gh}{v^2}}\right),$$

where g is the acceleration due to gravity. As the distance is the quadratic function of release velocity, the square root of distance, plotted along the ordinate axis, represents (approximately) the velocity at release.

Figure 8.3 Performance results in standing shot putting before and after 7-week training with different shots; 4- to 10-kg shots were used for testing. *(a)* Standard shots; only 7,257-g shots were used (n = 4). *(b)* Heavy shots (8-10 kg); a throwing routine consisting of heavy shots (70% of all the puts) and standard shots (7,257 g, 30%) (n = 4). *(c)* Light shots (4.5-6.0 kg); the puts of light shots constituted 70% of all efforts (n = 3).

(b) and *(c)* from V.M. Zatsiorsky and N.A. Karasiov, 1978, *The use of shots of various weights in the training of elite shot putters* (Moscow, Russia: Russian State Academy of Physical Education and Sport). By permission of Russian State Academy of Physical Education and Sport.

Training Goal: Muscle Power

Perform the main sport exercise with added resistance. This often is the quickest way to make gains in athletic performance. It is also insufficient. The performance results initially advance but soon stop improving due to accommodation. Other training means are then necessary.

Enhance maximal strength. It is impossible for athletes to generate a large force in a fast movement if they cannot develop similar or even greater force values in a slow motion. But don't overemphasize the role of maximal strength in power production. To be a strong athlete does not mean to be a power athlete. It is true that all elite power athletes are very strong people. On the other hand, not all strong individuals can execute movement powerfully when combining large force and high velocity.

Train RFD. If the time available for force development is short, RFD is more important than maximal strength. Enhance not only maximal (F_{mm}) but also dynamic strength—the force developed at a high velocity of movement. Use drills requiring the utmost muscular effort against moderate resistance (the method of dynamic effort). Employ specific drills and methods to improve reversible (stretch–shortening) muscle action. This is a specific motor ability.

The direction of applied movement is a key determinant of exercise effect. In many movements, muscles are forcibly stretched before shortening (stretch–shortening cycle, reversible muscle action). As described in chapter 2, the underlying mechanisms of the reversible muscle action are complex. For this reason reversible muscle action is specific (especially in highly trained athletes) and should be trained as a separate motor ability (similarly, in this respect, to anaerobic endurance and rate of force development). The exercises used for this purpose are described in chapter 6.

In conclusion, strength training for power production is composed of (a) main sport exercises with added resistance and (b) assistance exercises. The latter are directed toward the development of (a) maximal strength, (b) rate of force development, (c) dynamic strength (the muscular force generated at a high velocity of movement), and (d) force produced in stretch–shortening (reversible) muscle action. The proportion of exercises from these groups should be determined individually for each athlete and should change when the athlete's status changes.

MUSCLE MASS

While muscle hypertrophy is a primary goal of bodybuilders, athletes do not typically aim at increasing muscle mass. However, muscle hypertrophy is an important way to increase muscular strength. Furthermore, some athletes (linemen in football, throwers) are able to use heavy body weight to their advantage and thus want to increase muscle mass. Accordingly, methods that are essentially bodybuilder techniques are used by competitive athletes, too.

The main objective of such a training routine is the maximal activation of protein catabolism (breakdown of muscle proteins), which in turn stimulates the synthesis of contractile proteins during rest periods. Since the total amount of degraded protein is maximal when loads ranging between 5- to 7RM and 10- to 12RM are lifted, this specific training intensity (repeated effort and submaximal effort methods) is recommended. Training protocols are designed with the same primary objective, to activate the breakdown of proteins in the chosen muscle groups.

• Rest intervals between sets are short—1 to 2 min compared to 3 to 5 min in weightlifting training when the aim is to emphasize neuronal output.

• In 1 workout or even in 1 day, no more than two to three muscle groups or body parts are exercised. Then, on the following day, exercises for other muscle groups are included. This is called **split training.** For example, arms, shoulders, and abdominal muscles are exercised on day 1; legs on day 2; chest and back on day 3; and day 4 is a rest day. With the split system, a muscle group is fully exhausted during a workout and then given time to recover (in this example, about 72 h). The muscle group is exercised twice a week. The split system is never used for perfecting the neural mechanisms of strength enhancement.

• Several exercises (usually from 2 to 5) for the same muscle group are employed during a single training unit. Exercises may vary within the sequence; for instance, a curl with a dumbbell can be performed with the hand alternately in the supinated and pronated positions. However, this is not done to alternate the muscle groups; that is, initially all exercises of one muscle group should be executed. For instance, all back exercises are performed first, and then chest exercises are performed. The idea is the same, to activate and exhaust the muscle group as much as possible. Exercises for the same muscle group, slightly changed from each other, are performed consecutively. This method, called flushing, was initially based on the assumption that increased blood circulation stimulates muscle growth. Up to 20 to 25 sets per muscle group may be executed in one workout. Table 8.1 summarizes the comparison between training to emphasize muscle mass and training to emphasize strength.

Table 8.1 Training Protocols to Induce Muscle Hypertrophy or Muscle Strength (Neural Factors)

Training variable	Muscle hypertrophy	Strength (neural factors)
Intent	To activate and exhaust working muscles	To recruit the maximal number of motor units with optimal discharge frequency
Intensity (RM)	From 5-7 to 10-12	1-5
Rest intervals between sets	Short (1-2 min)	Long (3-5 min)
Rest intervals between workouts emphasizing same muscle groups	Long (48-72 h)	Short (24-48 h)
Exercises in a workout	Three or fewer muscle groups (split system)	Many muscle groups
Exercise alternation in a workout	Flushing: exercises for the same muscle group may alternate; exercises for various groups do not alternate	Recommended
Training volume (load, repetitions, sets)	Larger (4-5 times)	Smaller (4-5 times)

Training Goal: Muscle Mass

Activate the breakdown of proteins in the chosen muscle groups during training workouts and protein supercompensation during rest periods. Use weights with RM between 5 to 6 and 10 to 12 (the repeated effort and submaximal effort methods).

Follow the recommendations given in table 8.1.

ENDURANCE PERFORMANCE

Endurance is defined as the ability to bear fatigue. Human activity is varied, and the character and mechanism of fatigue are different in every instance. Fatigue caused by work with a finger ergograph, for instance, has little in common with the fatigue of a marathon runner or a boxer. Thus, the corresponding types of endurance will differ.

Muscular Endurance

Endurance of muscles is manifested in exercises with heavy resistance, such as the repetitive bench press, that do not require great activation of the cardiovascular and respiratory systems. Fatigue is caused by the functioning of elements in the neuromuscular system that are directly involved in the execution of the movement.

Muscular endurance is typically characterized either by the number of exercise repetitions one can carry out until failure (the maximum number of pull-ups, one-legged squats), or by the time one can maintain a prescribed pace of lifts or a posture. In either case, the load can be set in terms of absolute values such as kilograms or newtons (e.g., a 50-kg barbell) or in relation to the maximal force (e.g., a barbell 50% of F_{mm}). Accordingly, the **absolute and relative indices of endurance** are determined. In estimating the absolute endurance, individual differences in muscular strength are ignored. Everyone is asked to press the same weight, for instance. When relative endurance is measured, on the other hand, all are asked to press a weight that equals the same percentage of their maximum strength.

The absolute indices of endurance show considerable correlation with muscular strength; individuals of great strength can repeat a vigorous exercise more times than those of lesser strength (figure 8.4). However, this correlation is observed only with resistance that is at least 25% of maximum strength. When the load is smaller, the number of possible repetitions quickly rises and is, in practical terms, independent of maximal strength (figure 8.5). Relative indices of muscular endurance do not correlate positively with maximal strength. In fact, they often show negative correlations.

Let's consider an example of what we have seen about the correlation between strength and endurance. Suppose two athletes can bench press weights of 100 and 60 kg, respectively. It is obvious that the first athlete can press a 50-kg weight more times than the second athlete and that the absolute indices of endurance for the first athlete will be better. If both athletes are told to press a weight of 10 kg (less than 25% of maximal strength for each), it is impossible to predict who will exhibit more endurance. In this case endurance (measured by the number of repetitions) does not depend on strength level. If both athletes press a weight equal to 50% of their maximal force production (50 and 30 kg, respectively), it is again impossible to predict who will show greater endurance. Here, too, endurance does not correlate with strength.

Since athletes are not matched during a competition according to strength, practice should focus on absolute endurance. As we have noted, these indices are essentially dependent on the strength level; as the resistance an athlete must overcome increases, so does the dependence. Thus, when it is necessary to repeatedly overcome considerable resistance (more than 75-80% of the maximum muscular strength), there is no need for special endurance training. When resistance is smaller, though, one must concentrate on the development of both strength and endurance. In gymnastics, for instance, an athlete

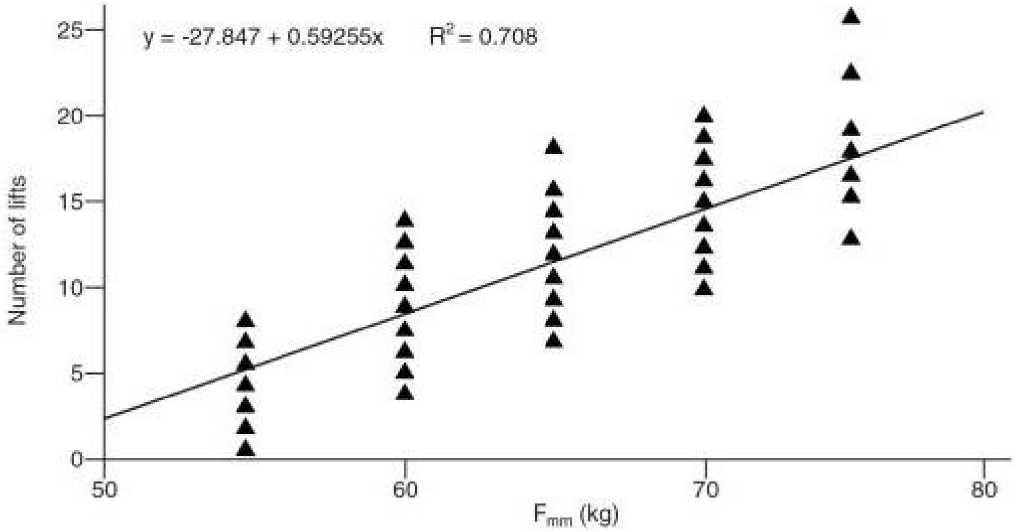


Figure 8.4 Maximal weight lifted in the bench press (F_{mm}, kg) versus the number of lifts of a 50-kg barbell in the same movement. The pace of the lifts was 1 lift every 2 s. The subjects were wrestlers 16 to 18 years old ($n = 60$). The average value of the maximal strength was 67.5 kg. So the weight lifted (50 kg) was equal to approximately 75% of the average F_{mm} of the sample. The number of experimental points in the graph (41) is less than the number of subjects (60), since performance of some athletes was identical. When F_{mm} and the number of lifts were the same, two or several points coincided.

Data from V.M. Zatsiorsky, N. Volkov, and N. Kulik, 1965, "Two types of endurance indices," *Theory and Practice of Physical Culture* 27(2): 35-41. Reprinted by permission from *Theory and Practice of Physical Culture*.

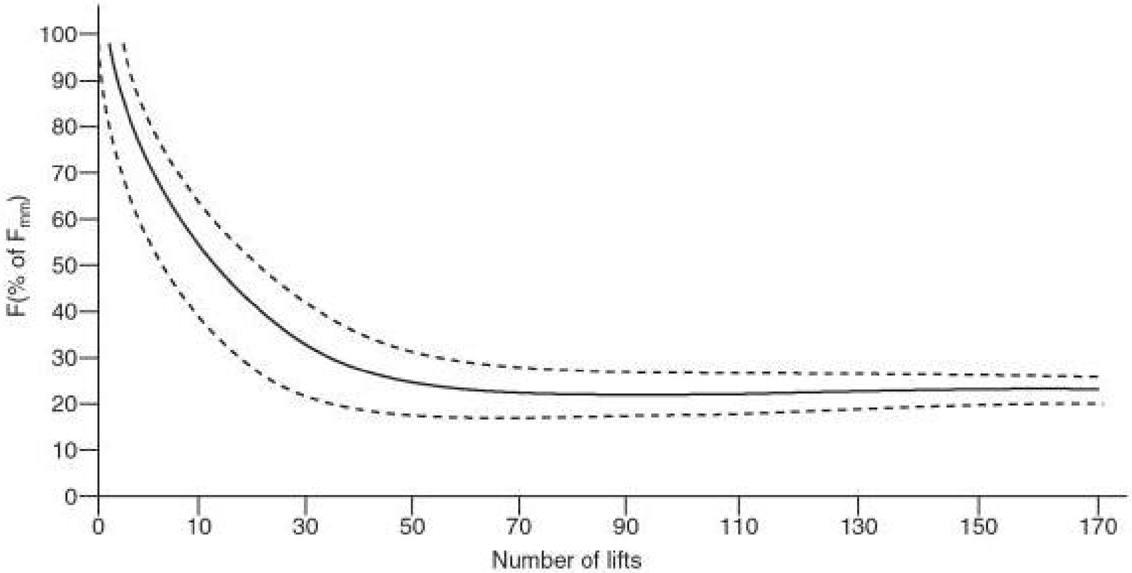


Figure 8.5 The dependence of the number of bench press lifts on the relative weight of a barbell. Average data of 16 weightlifters; the solid line represents rounded average figures; the broken line is for the standard deviation.

Reprinted, by permission, from V.M. Zatsiorsky, N. Volkov, and N. Kulik, 1965, "Two types of endurance indices," *Theory and Practice of Physical Culture* 27(2): 35-41. Reprinted by permission from *Theory and Practice of Physical Culture*.

who cannot hold a cross for 3 s during a ring exercise (as the rule requires) still must train strength, not endurance. But a gymnast who performs four crosses in one combination and cannot hold a fifth must train endurance (together with strength). Repeatedly performing strength exercises with resistance constituting 40 to 80% of maximum strength is the recommendation in this case. The repetitions are performed as many times as possible. If the magnitude of resistance is less than 20 to 25% of the athlete's strength, strength training (i.e., a training routine directed at increasing maximum strength) does not immediately improve athletic performance. Athletes from these sports, such as marathon runners, rarely use heavy resistance training.

To estimate the potential merit of strength training in a given sport, we should compare the force developed by an athlete during the main sport exercise to the individual's maximum strength during a similar motion. For instance, in a single scull, elite rowers apply an instantaneous force of up to 1,000 N to the oar handle. In dryland conditions, they generate forces of 2,200 to 2,500 N in the same posture. This means that during rowing, the athletes must overcome a resistance equaling 40 to 50% of their F_{mm}. Since the proportion of the force generated during the main sport movement is high, there is no doubt that strength training directed toward enhancement of maximum strength is useful for the rowers. However, it should be combined with muscular endurance conditioning.

Circuit training is an effective and convenient way to build muscular endurance. Here a group of trainees is divided into several (7-12) subgroups according to the number of stations available. Each trainee performs one exercise at each apparatus (station) as though completing a circle (figure 8.6). Body weight exercises, free weights, and exercise machines as well as stretching exercises may be used at different stations. Consecutive stations should not consist of exercises involving the same muscle groups. Trainees move quickly from one station to the next with a short rest interval in between each. The circuit is finished once the exercises at all stations are completed. The time for a single circuit is prescribed.

All the characteristics of training programs (specificity, direction, complexity, and training load) can be easily specified and modified within a general framework of circuit training. However, in practice, only a limited variety of circuit programs are in use. Typically, circuit training routines use resistance of 50 to 70% of 1RM; 5 to 15 repetitions per station; interstation rest intervals of 15 to 30 s; 1 to 3 circuits; and a total duration of 15 to 30 min.

Endurance Sports

In endurance sports, high energy demands are met by increased oxygen consumption as well as augmented anaerobic metabolism. The cardiovascular and respiratory systems become highly active. Athletic performance is limited by the central systems of circula-

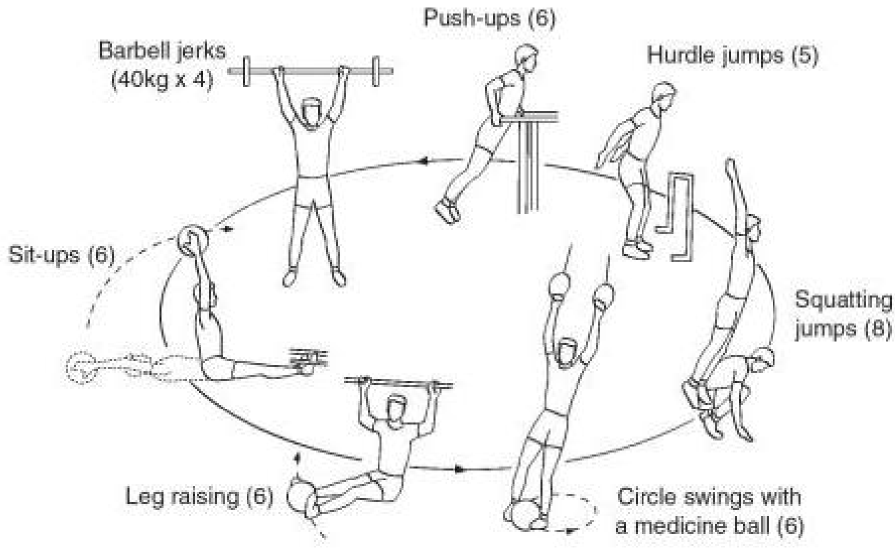


Figure 8.6 An example of circuit training.

Reprinted, by permission, from V.M. Zatsiorsky, 1966, *Motor abilities of athletes* (Moscow, Russia, Fizkultura i Sport), 156.

Training Goal: Muscular Endurance

Compare the magnitude of force *(F)* generated in the movement of interest (for instance, during each stroke in rowing) with the maximal force values (F_{mm}) attained in the same motion during a single maximal effort in the most favored body position.

If $F > 80\%$ of F_{mm}, don't train endurance. Train maximal strength. If $F < 20\%$ of F_{mm}, don't train maximal strength. Train endurance. If $20\% < F < 80\%$ of F_{mm}, train both maximal strength and muscular endurance. Use the method of submaximal effort. Vary the magnitude of resistance. Exercises in a set must be performed until failure. Employ circuit training.

tion, respiration, and heat dissipation rather than peripheral muscle function alone. The correlation between local and general endurance has been shown to be small. Attempts to limit the off-season training of endurance athletes (speed skaters and skiers) to local endurance exercises (one-leg squatting) proved unsuccessful. Trainees improved their performance in one-leg squatting from 30 to 50 times to several hundred times (and even to more than 1,000 times) without any substantial improvement in the main sport. Because of these findings, strength training was not popular among endurance athletes for many years. It was considered a waste of time and effort.

This is not the case, however, in contemporary sport. Since improvements in both endurance and strength are desirable for optimum performance in many sports, strength exercises are now extensively used by endurance athletes. However, the intent is not to enhance maximal strength per se, but (and this is the most important part of the concept) to enhance the force generated by the slow motor fibers. Recall that human muscles are composed of different fiber types, roughly classified as slow and fast. Slow motor fibers are highly adapted to lengthy aerobic muscular work. Fast motor fibers, adapted to short bursts of muscle activity, are characterized by large force and power output and high rates of force development. In the main, strength training is directed at increasing maximal muscular force production and thus primarily addresses maximal involvement of the fast motor units (MUs) and their strength gain. However, early involvement of the fast MUs in endurance activities vitalizes anaerobic metabolism and elicits early fatigue.

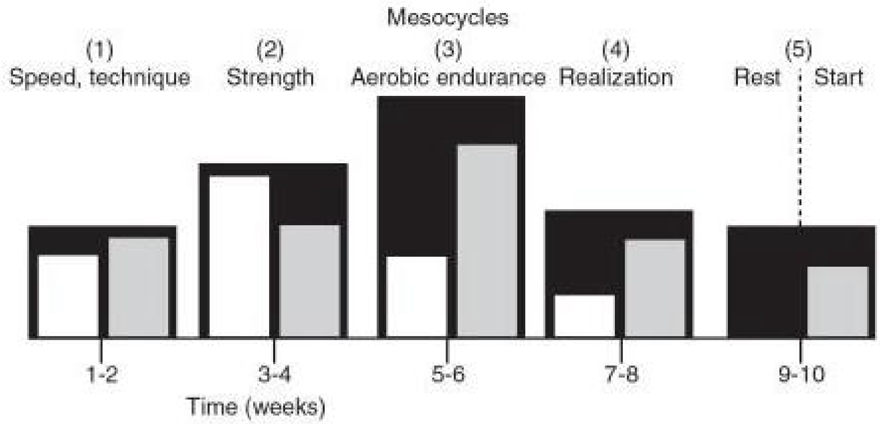
In endurance sports, the objective is exactly the opposite. Here the athlete wants to work as long as possible at a given intensity involving the slow motor fibers. In this case only, the metabolic response to exercise is aerobic and the athlete's work is sustained. The recruitment of fast motor fibers during prolonged work is apparently not desirable. The less the proportion of the activated fast motor fibers the better. So the force repeatedly exerted by an athlete during an endurance exercise should be compared not with maximum strength but with the maximum sustainable force by the slow (fatigue-resistant, oxidative) motor fibers alone.

The slow motor fibers do not adapt to the enhanced force demand with classical methods of strength training. These methods are chiefly designed to recruit and train the fast motor fibers. Relatively low resistance and long exercise bouts are used to enhance the strength potential of endurance athletes. The corridor of MUs subjected to a training stimulus should presumably include slow MUs. Among coaches, it is a common belief that muscles must work at the highest levels of their aerobic capacity. Exercise sets comprising, for instance, 5 min of repetitive lifts are common. While training in the 1980s, world record–holder and several-time Olympic champion in 1500-m swimming, Vladimir Salnikov, performed up to 10 exercise bouts on a special exerciser during dryland training. Each set was 10 min long. This routine, classified by swimming experts as strength training, only slightly resembles the training protocols used by weightlifters.

Such strength training is even more difficult to combine in training programs with endurance types of activity. The demands of the two types of activity are different. Heavy resistance training, for example, stimulates muscle fiber hypertrophy, which reduces capillary density and mitochondrial volume in the working muscles. These changes are detrimental to endurance. Endurance training, in contrast, elicits an increase in capillary density and mitochondrial volume density and may cause a decrease in muscle fiber size. When strength and endurance training are done concurrently, it is difficult for an organism to adapt simultaneously to the conflicting demands. Consequently, the combination of endurance and strength training impairs strength gains in comparison to strength training alone. This is also true with respect to endurance training. As the time between the two types of exercises lessens, the impediment becomes greater. Same-day training, for instance, impedes development to a greater extent than does training on alternate days. Another factor that influences the interference is the magnitude of the training load; the greater the load, the more incompatible strength training is with endurance training.

The solution is to conduct sequential strength and endurance programs, focusing first on strength training and afterward on endurance (figure 8.7). It is less efficient to proceed in the other order.

The motor ability that is not the prime target of training during a given mesocycle



Training time	11 hr 40 min	11 hr 60 min	11 hr 90 min	10 hr 45 min	10 hr 40 min
Strength training load	50%	100%	50%	25%	0%
Distance (km)	40-60	55-77	88-120	40-60	20-30
Dryland time (h)	8	11	7	5	Zero
% Pulse control per workout	0	25	100	50	0

Figure 8.7 Training plan of Vladimir Salnikov (1980 and 1988 Olympic champion in 1500-m swimming) developed by his coach, Igor Koshkin. Note that the strength training mesocycle (2) precedes the endurance-oriented training. Also note that nontargeted motor ability is maintained with a retaining training load. The retaining load is roughly two to three times less than the stimulating one. For instance, dryland training time per week was 11 h during the strength-oriented mesocycle and only 5 h during the realization mesocycle; swimming distance per week was maximally 120 km and minimally 40 km. Finally, note that nontraditional short mesocycles, only 2 weeks long, are used; usually 4-week mesocycles are used.

From *Preparation of the National Swimming Team to the 1980 Moscow Olympic Games*, 1981, (Moscow, Russia: Russian State Academy of Physical Education and Sport), 242. Technical report #81-5. By permission of Russian State Academy of Physical Education and Sport.

Training Goal: General (Cardiorespiratory, Especially Aerobic) Endurance

Try to enhance the strength of slow motor units (fibers) that are oxidative and fatigue resistant. Don't use maximal weight loads. Utilize submaximal weight loads in combination with a large number of repetitions. Apply strength and endurance programs sequentially.

should be maintained with a retaining training load (except during the tapering period, when a detraining load is appropriate).

INJURY PREVENTION

Heavy resistance training results in both increased muscular strength and increased mechanical strength of connective tissue structures around a joint (tendons, ligaments, ligament–bone junction strength). Strength training increases bone mineral content. A stronger muscle absorbs more energy than a weak muscle before reaching the point of muscle injury. This may be important for injury prevention.

To plan training routines to reduce the risk of injury, it is necessary to consider (a) muscle groups and joint motion, (b) muscle balance, and (c) coordination pattern.

Muscle groups that need to be strengthened can be classified as nonspecific and specific (actively involved in a given sport). The most important nonspecific muscle groups, which should be intentionally trained by young athletes regardless of their sport, are the abdominal muscles and trunk extensors that stabilize the pelvis and trunk; such stabilization is necessary for all movements of the extremities. This **core stability**—which depends also on the hip abductor and hip external rotation strength—is important for injury prevention. Improving the strength of these muscle groups is desirable to develop a base for intensive training. Specific muscle groups are different in diverse sports and may vary from the neck muscles (football, wrestling) to the small foot muscles (jumping, sprinting).

Muscles and joint structures need to be strengthened not only for joint movements that take place in the main sport exercise but also for other angular joint movements. It is especially important to strengthen joint structures in lateral movements **(abduction–adduction)** and in rotation relative to the longitudinal axis of a body segment (foot eversion–inversion, for example). For instance, football players usually perform many exercises to increase the strength of knee extensors. However, knee injuries are often caused by lateral forces acting during sideways movements or collisions. If the muscles and joint structures that resist lateral knee movement are not strengthened, the injury risk is very high. The same holds true for ankle motion. If only plantar flexion is trained, the athlete cannot resist high lateral forces acting on the foot. The strength may be too low to prevent hyperinversion (or hypereversion) and consequently trauma. Unfortunately, strength exercise machines, which are so popular now, provide resistance in only one direction—they have only one degree of freedom. Thus, the user does not have to stabilize the working parts of the apparatus as in exercising with free weights. Athletes accustomed to exercise machines lose a very important facet of motor coordination—joint stabilization. Even when the aim of strength training is to increase joint stability (for instance, in the case of knee laxity after a trauma), many athletic trainers and physical therapy specialists recommend exercising with isokinetic apparatuses that permit knee flexion and extension only. Lateral movements, however, are not trained; unfortunately, it is exactly these muscles and structures that should be the training target.

Muscle balance is also important to prevent injury. First, a large imbalance in strength between the two legs should be corrected. If one leg is substantially stronger than the other, the running athlete performs a more powerful takeoff with the stronger leg and then lands on the weak leg, which is then systematically overloaded and at greater risk of injury. A difference of 10% or more in the strength of the two legs, or a difference of more than 3 cm in thigh circumference, necessitates exercising the weak leg. A second type of imbalance that should be avoided is between muscles and their antagonists (for instance, quadriceps and hamstrings). The force for knee extension is generated by the quadriceps, while deceleration of the tibia is the function of the hamstrings, which absorb the energy provided by the quadriceps. When the muscles are imbalanced such that the quadriceps are relatively stronger, hamstring overloading can result. Researchers have suggested that, to minimize the risk of injury, hamstring strength must be not less than 60% of quadriceps strength. This recommendation is valid for strength values measured at the joint angular velocity 30°/s.

Finally, pay attention to the coordination pattern of strength exercises. The majority of movements include the stretch–shortening cycle, and injuries often occur during stretching phases of these cycles or during the transition from stretching to shortening, when muscle force is maximal (see chapter 2). Thus, exercises designed to decrease susceptibility to trauma should include reversible muscle action. Properly scheduled exercises employing reversible muscle action are useful for preventing injury. In these exercises, muscles are trained in natural conditions. Proper coordination patterns, muscular strength, and flexibility are all improved at the same time. As an example, repeated jumps on a specially designed curved (triangle) surface (figure 8.8), when performed regularly and correctly, strengthen the anatomical structures of the ankle joint and reduce risk of ankle sprains and dislocations.

Training Goal: Injury Prevention

Strengthen the abdominal muscles, trunk extensors, and the hip joint muscles. Strengthen muscle groups specific to your sport. Muscles must be strengthened for both the joint movements that take place in the main sport exercise and for other angular joint movements. Train the muscles that resist lateral displacement of the knee and ankle joints. Correct imbalance of antagonists as well as disparities in muscular strength between the extremities. Employ drills encompassing reversible muscular action.

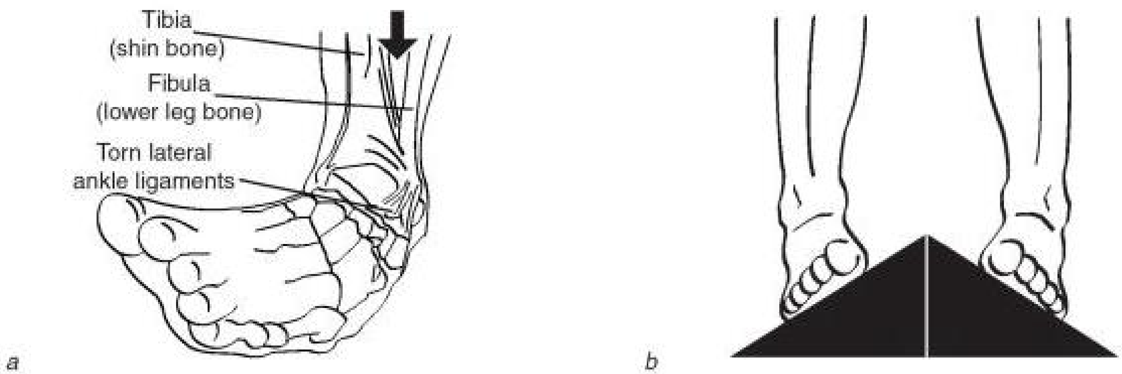


Figure 8.8 *(a)* Excessive foot inversion resulting from incorrect landing. Such a landing causes the ankle sprain. The flawed landing occurred because the ankle joint muscles did not resist properly the foot inversion. To increase the strength of these muscles and to teach the athlete to activate these muscles during landing, repetitive low-height jumps on the triangle can be used. These jumps should be performed in a very gentle manner. *(b)* Foot position during the contact phase in repetitive jumping used to improve the athlete's ability of resisting the feet inversion. The supporting surfaces of the device meet at the top of the triangle. To improve the ability of resisting foot eversion, a device with the supporting surfaces meeting at the bottom should be used.

SUMMARY

The general idea in strength training for strength performance is not to train strength itself as a unified whole; rather, it is to train the underlying muscular and neural factors. To improve neuromuscular coordination (MU recruitment, rate coding, MU synchronization, entire coordination pattern), the best method is maximal effort. On the other hand, to stimulate muscle hypertrophy, repeated and submaximal effort methods are more appropriate.

Although maximal strength is a prerequisite for high movement speed, its transmutation into velocity, or power, requires training not only maximal strength but also RFD, dynamic strength, and force produced in stretch–shortening (reversible) muscular action. In sport exercises where the time available for force production is too brief to reach maximal force values, the RFD rather than maximum strength must be the primary training objective.

The aim of exercises designed to increase muscle mass is to break down proteins in particular muscle groups; this in turn stimulates the synthesis of contractile proteins during rest periods. The most effective loads for this type of training range between 5- to 7RM and 10- to 12RM.

Endurance is defined as the ability to bear fatigue. Human activity is varied, and as the character and mechanism of fatigue are different in every instance, so is endurance. Muscular endurance is typically characterized by either the number of possible exercise repetitions until failure, or by the time one can maintain a prescribed pace of lifts or a posture. In either case, the load can be set with absolute values (e.g., lifting a 50-kg barbell) or relative to the maximal force (lifting a barbell 50% of F_{mm}). With resistance greater than 25% of maximum strength, the absolute indices of endurance correlate positively with muscular strength. Relative indices of muscular endurance often correlate negatively with maximal strength.

Since athletes are not matched during a competition according to strength, practice should focus on absolute endurance. Athletes for whom resistance typically is less than 75 to 80% of maximal muscular strength should concentrate on the development of both strength and endurance. To estimate the potential value of strength training in a given sport, compare the force developed by an athlete during the main sport exercise to the individual's maximum strength during a similar motion. Note that circuit training is an effective and practical way to build muscular endurance.

Whereas strength training for the most part aims at maximal involvement and strength development of the fast MUs, the objective in endurance sports is exactly the opposite—to work as long as possible at a given intensity while involving the slow motor fibers. Classical methods of strength training are not designed to train these slow fibers. Relatively low resistance and long exercise bouts are used to increase the strength potential of endurance athletes. The intent is not to enhance maximal strength per se, but rather to increase the force generated by the slow motor fibers.

Strength training is difficult to combine with endurance types of activity. When strength and endurance training are done concurrently, it is difficult for an organism to adapt simultaneously to the conflicting demands. The solution is to conduct sequential strength and endurance programs. Focus first on strength training and afterward on endurance.

Training routines designed to decrease injury risk will address muscle groups and joint motion, muscle balance, and coordination patterns. Plan training to strengthen both nonspecific and specific muscle groups (those actively involved in a given sport). The most important nonspecific muscle groups, which should be intentionally trained by young athletes regardless of the sport, are the abdominal muscles, trunk extensors, and hip joint muscles. Muscles and joint structures also need to be strengthened not only for the joint movements of the main sport exercise but also for other angular joint movements. It is especially important to strengthen joint structures in lateral movements and in rotation relative to the longitudinal axis of a body segment. Another aspect of injury prevention is avoiding or correcting imbalance of muscles and antagonists as well as imbalance in strength between the extremities. Finally, exercises designed to decrease the susceptibility to trauma should include reversible muscular action.

part III

Training for Specific Populations

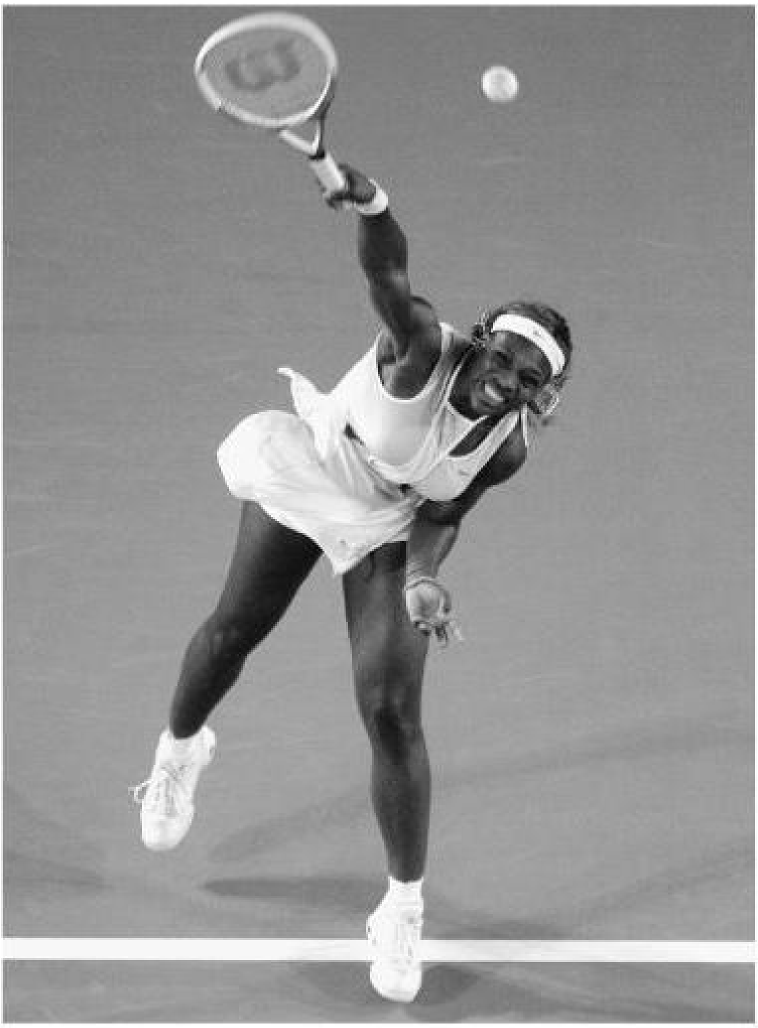
In order to gain some insights into the subtle differences in training special populations, part III examines the training of women, children, and older athletes.

Chapter 9 examines the unique issues of training women. While the training programs for women are no different from those for men, understanding some of the challenges faced by female athletes is important. Are there true gender differences? How do these differences affect the design of a training program? These are just two of the questions that are addressed in chapter 9. Sociopsychological issues related to body image also influence the success of strength training programs when proper loads and optimal training methods are not used due to the fear of "getting big." This chapter seeks to provide further insights into optimal program design by explaining differences in strength of women when compared to the strength of men, muscle fiber size relationships when compared to those of men, menstrual cycle influences, and differences in the underlying mechanisms of adaptations to strength training in women.

In chapter 10 we examine the strength training of young athletes. Less than 20 years ago, many medical professionals discouraged young athletes from lifting weights due to fears that it would stunt growth and was ineffective. Are strength training programs safe for young athletes? If so, what are the differences when compared to adult programs? Many professional organizations have gained consensus on these issues, and we overview guidelines to be used when designing a strength training program for children of different ages. In this chapter we discuss the basic needs for training children safely and the importance of experienced adult supervision. Safety is important in any strength training program, but for young athletes it is paramount in order to eliminate injury to growth plates and to optimize growth and development in addition to sport performance. With the many myths associated with the strength training of children, factual understanding is important to give the practitioner the insights needed to develop safe and effective strength training programs for young athletes.

In chapter 11 we take a closer look at the aging process and how to address training for the older athlete. Understanding the aging process provides insights into the adaptive mechanisms that affect the response to training. Aging affects the absolute gains that can be made. What type of program should be used for training older athletes? How much improvement might one expect? Can exercise offset the aging process? Such questions influence program design and expectations when training the older athlete. In addition, they are important for developing specific goals and training objectives. Offsetting age-related losses should be the objective of most strength training programs. Improving performance is vital for successful aging and especially for the older athlete.

chapter 9



Strength Training for Women

Over the past 20 years all top women athletes have used strength training to enhance their performance as well as prevent injury. It is important that programs be individualized as every person will bring a different anatomical and physiological profile to a training program. Individual assessments and ultimately exercise prescriptions for each woman are essential to optimize the specific type of physical development needed for success in a particular sport. The demands of a sport and its required physical development range from the production of instantaneous power in an event such as the shot put to the ultraendurance events such as the marathon run. A sport-specific training program is needed to provide benefits across the continuum.

Over the past 30 years, the participation of women in sports worldwide has grown dramatically. With this increasing opportunity has come the greater risk of injury and the need for better physical preparation. In addition, the pace of every game and competition has increased in speed, power, and intensity. This also has increased the need for women to be better prepared physically to elevate their level of performance. With more sophisticated strength and conditioning programs at the high school and college levels, the physical development of women athletes has dramatically changed. We can see this just by looking at the difference in body shape, size, muscularity, muscle definition, and function of women athletes now versus 30 years ago. Traditional gender roles have changed and strength training has allowed more and more women to reach their optimal physical development and meet the demands of their sports. In this chapter the unique considerations of strength training for women will be examined in order to better develop optimal programs for women.

Elite female athletes use strength training to enhance performance and prevent injury.

THE FEMALE ATHLETE'S NEED FOR STRENGTH TRAINING

With the greater demands for power, speed, and intensity in women's sports on all levels there is a definitive need for increased upper-body strength along with increased total-body power. One of the major differences between men and women is a dramatic difference in upper-body size and strength, and in many sports it is the physical capabilities of the upper body that limit performance outcomes (e.g., spike velocity in volleyball, shooting range in basketball). In addition, the integration of power into whole-body movements (e.g., sprint speed, jumping, change of direction) is also needed for successful performance.

Upper-Body Size and Strength Demands

Whether an elite college basketball player in her 20s or master athlete in her 50s, the primary challenge faced by the majority of women is the need for development of the upper-body musculature. A continuum exists as to the upper body's importance and function, from the development of postural **local muscular endurance** in an elite distance runner to the strength and power needed in the upper body for shot putting. Training programs for women need to emphasize the upper-body musculature due to the role it plays in performing sport skills from sprinting to shooting a basketball. It has been shown that women have fewer muscle fibers and the cross-sectional areas of their muscle fibers are smaller than those of men's muscle fibers. In order to develop the upper-body musculature under these conditions, all available muscle fibers need to be activated, which requires heavier loading and the use of more exercise angles to stimulate overall physical development of the available musculature. This may require the use of bodybuilding techniques to develop the hypertrophy needed for certain upper-body muscle groups. These techniques can then be integrated into a program of total-body strength and power exercises.

Power Demands

Total-body power development with such exercises as power cleans and other Olympic style weightlifting exercises is vital for sport performance gains. Total-body power is becoming an increasingly important training component for almost all women's sports and must be seriously addressed in a strength training program. The need for this improved physical capability can be seen in the changes that have taken place in many sports from the big power serves in tennis to the greater physical demands of rebounding in women's basketball. The increasing demands in sports for power are now considered status quo and must be met with better strength training programs and better athletes (see figure 9.1). Power development is a vital component of any strength training program for women.

Women have a greater potential than men for upper-body strength and muscular development primarily due to a lack of aggressive training programs for the upper body. In general this means the following:

1. Each upper-body muscle must be exercised at more angles.
2. Exercises should be integrated with closed kinetic-chain power exercises.
3. Heavier resistances must be used and integrated into a periodized strength training program.
4. Multiple set training should be used.
5. A periodized training format should be developed.

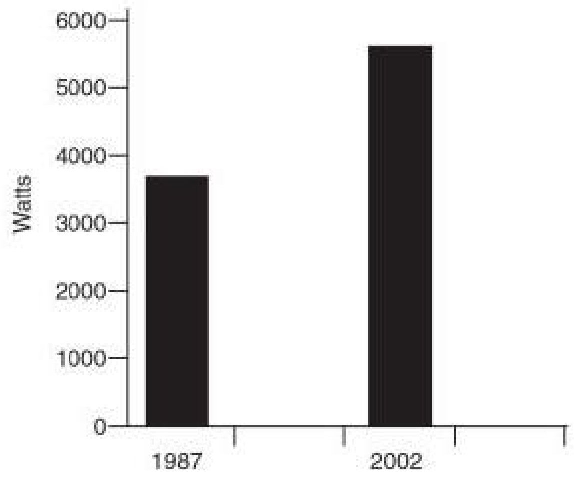


Figure 9.1 Peak power in a countermovement vertical jump by University of Connecticut volleyball players.

Unpublished data from Dr. Kraemer's laboratory.

BENEFITS AND MYTHS OF STRENGTH TRAINING FOR WOMEN

Benefits for female athletes who perform an appropriate strength training program include the following (Fleck and Kraemer, 2004; Ebben and Jensen, 1998):

- Enhanced bone modeling to increase bone strength and reduce the risk of osteoporosis
- Stronger connective tissues to increase joint stability and help prevent injury
- Increased functional strength for sports and daily activity
- Increased lean body mass and decreased nonfunctional body fat
- Higher **metabolic rate** because of an increase in muscle and a decrease in fat
- Improved self-esteem and confidence
- Improved physical performance in sport-specific skills

A number of factors may reduce or eliminate these benefits, including the exclusive use of weight training machines, training with loads that are too light, and not progressing in resistance or intensity. However, because strength training can affect almost every system in the body, its appropriate use in conditioning programs for women athletes can be vital to success.

Certain misconceptions about women and strength training have limited the benefits of strength training for women due to the creation of inadequate training programs. Such misconceptions are primarily related to the issues outlined in "Debunking Myths That Block Opportunity" from a classic review by Ebben and Jensen in 1998.

TRAINABLE CHARACTERISTICS OF MUSCLE

It is important to remember that each sport requires a different emphasis on various trainable characteristics of the neuromuscular system. In general these trainable characteristics might be defined as follows:

- Lean tissue mass development
- Maximal strength development
- Maximal power development
- Local muscular endurance

Debunking Myths That Block Opportunity

• "**Myth 1: Strength training causes women to become larger and heavier.** The truth is, strength training helps reduce body fat and increase lean weight. These changes may result in a slight increase in overall weight, since lean body mass weighs more than fat. However, strength training results in significant increases in strength, no change or a decrease in lower-body girths, and a very small increase in upper-extremity girth. Only women with a genetic predisposition for hypertrophy who participate in high-volume, high-intensity training will see substantial increases in limb circumference.

• **Myth 2: Women should use different training methods than men.** Women are often encouraged to use weight machines and slow, controlled movements out of a fear that using free weights, manual resistance, explosiveness (high velocity, low force), or exercises that use body weight as resistance will cause injury.

In fact, no evidence suggests that women are more likely to be injured during strength training than men. Proper exercise instruction and technique are necessary to reduce the risk of injuries for both men and women. All strength training participants should follow a program that gradually increases the intensity and load.

Furthermore, sport-specific exercise should closely mimic the biomechanics and velocity of the sport for which an athlete is training. The best way to achieve this is to use closed-kinetic-chain exercise that involves multiple joints and muscle groups and the ranges of motion specific to the sport. For example, the push press—rather than triceps kickbacks—offers a superior arm extension training stimulus for improving the ability to throw the shot put in track and field.

• **Myth 3: Women should avoid high-intensity or high-load training.** Women are typically encouraged to use limited resistance, such as light dumbbells, in their strength exercises. Often such light training loads are substantially below those necessary for physiologic adaptations and certainly less than those commonly used by men.

Most women are able to train at higher volumes and intensities than previously believed. In fact, women need to train at intensities high enough to cause adaptation in bone, muscle, cartilage, ligaments, and tendons. When exercise intensity provides insufficient stimulus, physiologic benefits may be minimal. To gain maximum benefit from strength training, women should occasionally perform their exercises at or near the repetition maximum for each exercise."

From W.P. Ebben and D.R. Jensen, 1998, "Strength training for women: Debunking myths that block opportunity," *The Physician and Sportsmedicine* 26(5): 86-97. Reprinted by permission of W.P. Ebben.

The balance of these training components will depend on the demands of the specific sport and individual athlete.

Development of Lean Tissue Mass

Even among athletes, many women have a fear of "getting big" or developing too much muscle, and this myth has limited their development due their resistance to perform certain types of workouts. This resistance has been more prominent in sports that have not classically been considered strength or power sports. The fear of getting big is unfounded, and development of lean tissue mass in women is extremely important, especially in the upper body. In order for muscle tissue to be developed, it must be stimulated by the workout protocol; in other words, the muscle tissue must be activated.

Stimulation of muscle is a function of motor unit activation. This means that motor units (alpha motor neuron and its associated muscle fibers) involved in the exercise must be stimulated to contract. Motor unit activation and how it relates to a strength training workout can be best understood by examining the basic concept of the size principle in prescribing exercise routines (see chapter 3). There are many ways scientists have looked at this basic concept of factors related to the size of the motor unit, including size as it relates to

1. the number of muscle fibers found in a motor unit,
2. the size of the cross-sectional area of the muscle fibers, and
3. the amount of electrical stimulus (quanta of neurotransmitter release) needed to cause a neuron to fire.

Understanding the basics of the size principle is vital to gaining insights into the factors related to the stimulation of muscle with strength training, but it is especially relevant when training women. Most women are afraid to lift heavy weights, and it is only with the use of heavy resistence that motor units containing the larger muscle fibers are stimulated or trained.

The size principle dictates that motor units are activated from smallest to largest in a sequential pattern to meet the external demands of the exercise (i.e., to lift the amount of weight on the barbell). The number of motor units activated is matched to the demands of the resistance used for specific force and power production to perform the exercise movement. Again, many factors influence the size of motor units, which range from small to large with variations across muscles in the array of motor units that exist. It is important to understand that differences also exist among individuals, as not all women (or men) will have the same array of motor units available in a given muscle (e.g., in the quadriceps of an elite distance runner fewer fast-twitch motor units exist versus in the same muscle in an elite 100-m sprinter). Such differences also underscore the inherent differences among different types of athletes, from strength and power athletes to endurance athletes. Thus, the complement of motor units that an athlete possesses dictates in part the performance potential for various activities. Figure 9.2 gives theoretical examples of different types of motor unit arrays in different athletes.

Within the construct of the training program, a number of program design factors need to be considered when trying to maximally stimulate the optimal number of motor units in a muscle. Each time you change the angle, whether it is the joint angle or the angle at which the force is exerted, you change the exercise to the extent that different motor units are used. When trying to develop optimal muscle mass it is important to use a set of exercises that stimulates different biomechanical angles (i.e., joint angle or angle at which force is exerted) in order to make sure that the entire muscle is stimulated. Heavier resistances are also required to stimulate higher threshold motor units. This is especially important for power development in women. The use of higher training volumes (e.g., multiple set training) is also important to develop lean tissue mass, as multiple-set periodized training programs have been shown to be superior to single-set circuit training for women. Finally, all of these program elements can be integrated into a

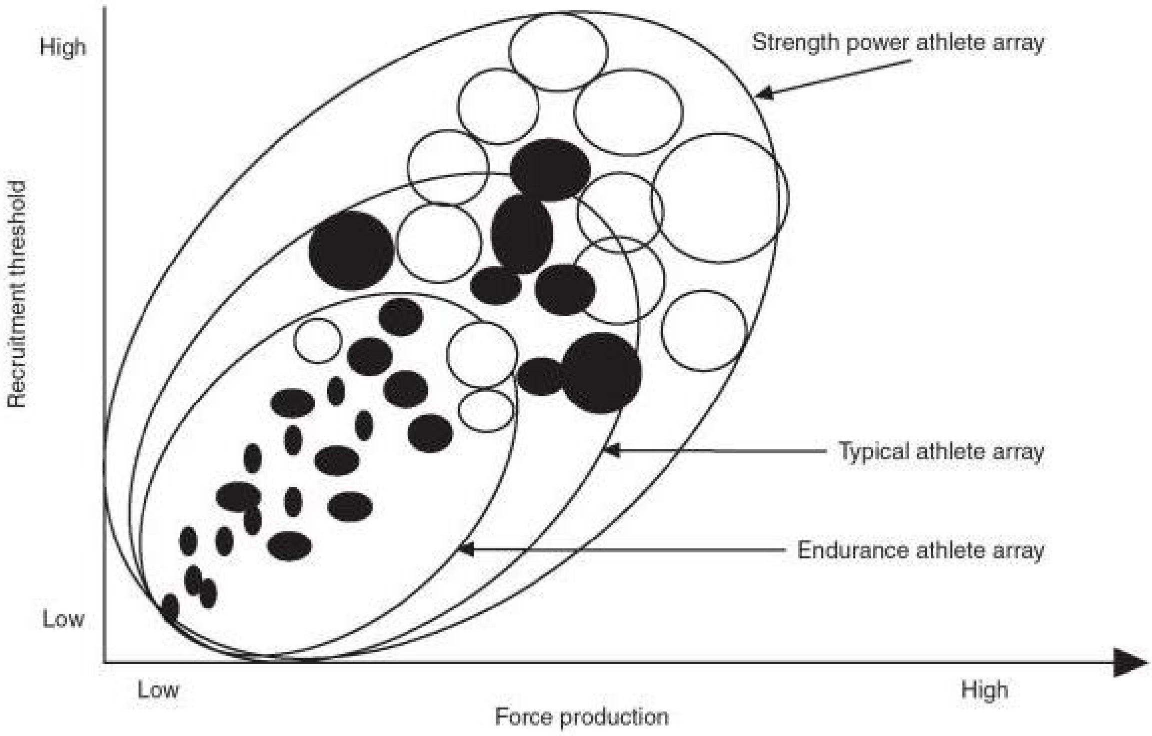


Figure 9.2 A theoretical paradigm for the size principle. Circles represent the motor unit and its associated fiber, with the larger circles containing a higher number of fibers or bigger fibers. The array of motor units found in a particular athlete is shown by the grouping ellipses.

periodized training program for optimal progression and results.

Strength Development

Development of strength in women is dramatically related, as in men, to resistance-loading schemes. Many times the lack of heavy resistances (3-5RM or >90% of 1RM) in the training program can reduce the effectiveness of optimizing strength. It has been well established that women need heavy resistances in order to develop maximal 1RM strength. Even clearer is the lack of heavy loading schemes in many women's sports, which reduces the ability to activate all muscle tissue as well as to improve connective tissue strength and density. While some sports may not require massive strength (e.g., cross country running), heavy resistances are needed for optimally developing connective tissues such as ligaments, tendons, and bones.

The most effective presentation for such heavy and very heavy loads is the use of a periodized training schedule (i.e., classical linear or nonlinear programs). This allows for recovery from heavy workouts and is needed in an optimal program. Again, while one cannot provide a "cookbook" for program design, it is necessary to include certain important features in any program. The sidebar titled Periodized Program for Development of Strength and Power is an example of a nonlinear periodized training program that has been used in several women's studies.

Development of Muscular Power

Muscular power is becoming a prominent performance characteristic in almost all women's sports. $P = Fd / t$ is the base equation that conditioning programs affect. High force training or heavy weight affects the force part of the equation, and mechanical power training along with body mass and high speed movements affect the velocity component of

Periodized Program for Development of Strength and Power

Progressions in resistance and number of sets continue over 12 weeks with a week of active rest after the 12-week cycle.

Exercises

Monday (heavy)	Wednesday (moderate)	Friday (light)
Barbell squat	Hang clean	Jump squat (loaded 30% 1RM)
Bench press	Leg extension	Dumbbell shoulder press
Leg press (sled)	Stiff-leg deadlift	High pull
Cable seated row	Pectoral dec fly	Bench press
Wide-grip lat pull-down	Dumbbell incline press	Seated row
Shoulder press	EZ arm curl	Dumbbell arm curl
Sit-ups	Triceps push-down	Sit-ups
Leg curl	Hyperextension	Stiff-leg deadlift
Dumbbell upright row	Split squat	Lunge

Rest Periods Between Sets and Exercises

- Monday: 3-4 min
- Wednesday: 1-2 min
- Friday: 2-3 min; jump squats, 3-4 min

Resistance and Set Ranges

- Monday: 3-5RM zone, 3-5 sets
- Wednesday: 6-8RM zone, 2-4 sets
- Friday: 12-14RM zone, 1-3 sets; jump squats, 6 sets of 3

Courtesy of Dr. Kraemer's Laboratory.

the equation. Thus, both heavy resistance training and explosive power training are essential in any strength training program for women. Many programs focus solely on the force component of the power equation, but just as important is using loads and exercises that can address the velocity component. For concentric exercise movements, power increases as the loading decreases from the isometric starting point. A 1RM lift is composed of a high force component and a relatively low power component. It is not until the resistance is considerably reduced that the maximum amount of power can be produced in the movement. This has been called maximal mechanical power output (Kraemer and Newton, 2000) (see figure 9.3). Maximal mechanical power typically takes place somewhere between 30 and 45% of 1RM in the squat jump and bench throw, but can be higher in such lifts as the hang clean, pull, etc. (e.g., 60 and 70% of 1RM). However, it has been observed that this percentage can climb to as high as 60% of 1RM, but with more specific training of the velocity component, maximal mechanical power slowly reverts back to 30 to 45% of 1RM. Olympic weightlifters typically do not maximally exercise with such a low percentage of 1RM and this may be why peak power is high in such lifts.

Of dramatic importance when training for power is to choose exercises in which a limited

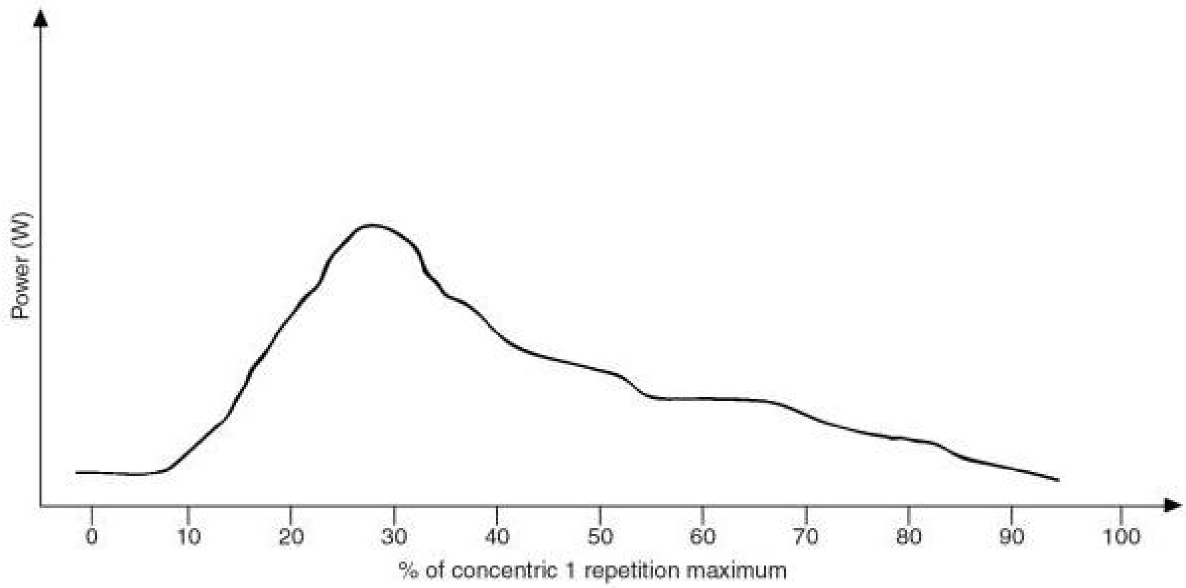


Figure 9.3 Theoretical relationship between the resistance used in a concentric exercise and the power production observed. Peak mechanical power will typically occur around 30 to 45% of the concentric 1RM in exercises like squat jumps and bench throws. Exercise choice is important to eliminate any deceleration of the mass.

amount of deceleration occurs over the range of motion. This typically requires an exercise that allows for continuous acceleration of the mass or a machine, or **pneumatics**, that allows for high velocity movements to occur. If the mass cannot be released, the body will attempt to protect the joint by activating antagonist muscles and limiting the firing of the agonists, making the exercise ineffective for power development. Muscular power can also be developed with supplemental training of the stretch–shortening cycle using plyometric muscle actions prior to rapid shortening. Such drills can help in power development by emphasizing the velocity component of the power equation.

It is imperative that one does not compromise the development of maximal strength, as any detraining of this part of the power equation can result in a power training plateau. Maximal force development is vital for improvements in power production. Findings have supported that a lack of heavy loading with a concentration on purely mechanical power loads along with lighter resistance can result in a plateau of power and a decrease in strength over a training period. Thus, heavy resistances must be included in workouts or training cycles, using resistance of 90 to 100% of 1RM. Strength and power development will interact and need to be addressed over an entire training program. Programs that focus on one component alone, either strength or power, will diminish development of the other component.

Local Muscular Endurance

The ability to produce multiple muscular contractions at different percentages of maximum can also be an important and trainable feature in a resistance training program for athletes. The ability to produce multiple efforts is related to the development of local muscular endurance. Training for local muscular endurance should be defined. Is the program attempting to develop high intensity local muscular endurance or low intensity local muscular endurance? Higher intensity muscular endurance is developed by using heavier loads (60 to 80% of 1RM) and incorporating short rest periods and multiple sets. This repetitive endurance can become especially important at higher percentages of maximal force and power production in sports that require repeated bursts of high intensity efforts. This has been called power endurance or strength endurance, reflecting the need for such repetitive high intensity efforts.

Conversely, lower intensity muscular endurance can be developed with high numbers of repetitions. Using sets with resistances from 40 to 60% of 1RM or above 20RM loads will enhance local muscular endurance with little or no carryover to 1RM strength. If this is a needed feature for an athlete, then the training program must include these higher repetition ranges for certain cycles in a periodized program.

Such training can be distributed over both isolated exercises as well as whole-body multi-joint exercises. Care needs to be taken to see that exercise technique and format are monitored at the end of such sets as fatigue becomes more detrimental to motor performance. Another method of improving this feature of muscular performance is to use shorter rest periods between sets, with loading allowing only 8 to 10 repetitions.

Training for local muscular endurance can not only improve muscular performance but also allow variation in the intensity profile of different training days or cycles in a periodized training program. If glycogen depletion of muscle fibers is not produced with the total volume of exercise, one can spare many motor units not needed for the lighter loads, thereby providing recovery time for such higher threshold motor units. This may well be the basis of the efficacy of various models in periodized training programs, especially nonlinear methods, which use different training intensities on given days rather than complete cycles of weeks of training.

PHYSIOLOGICAL CONTRASTS BETWEEN WOMEN AND MEN

It has become apparent over the past 20 years that women can be trained with programs that are almost identical to those used for men (Fleck and Kraemer, 2004). However, a number of facts need to be considered when designing strength training programs for women. While strength training has been common in women's strength and power sports for many years, other women's sports (e.g., tennis, golf, soccer, basketball) have only started over the past 10 years to incorporate more aggressive strength training protocols.

With more sports using strength training as part of their conditioning programs, some education is needed to calm certain fears and explain such programs' physiological effects. Along with proper instruction on weight room practices, exercise techniques, testing routines, and training procedures, the coach needs to allow ample time to develop team and individual conditioning goals. Due to the wide range of physiological variation within a sport, individualization, or working with individual athletes, is essential to educate the athletes as to the effects of such training on their body. The most common fear of many women athletes is that strength training will make them look like a man. This can affect the quality of training if women are not completely comfortable with strength training because of this fear. Without anabolic drugs there is little chance of women looking like men through strength training.

Differences in Muscle Fiber

Women have fewer muscle fibers than men. Women's muscle fibers are also smaller than those of men. Such facts about muscle belie the myth of looking like a man through natural strength training. Women do have the same array of muscle fiber types as men, with both type I (slow twitch) and type II (fast twitch) and all of their subtypes. Slow-twitch fibers are primarily used for endurance demands on muscle and fast-twitch fibers are primarily used for speed, strength, and power demands. A gender difference does exist as to the ratio of muscle fiber sizes in untrained individuals. About 75% of untrained women have slow-twitch muscle fibers that are larger than the fast-twitch muscle fibers. It may be that untrained women who have greater potential for strength and power sports may be in the 25% of women that have such a profile of fiber sizes. The cause of such different starting points for untrained women remains unknown. It has been speculated to be due to lesser strength and power demands in a woman's everyday activity profile. Or, it could be a true gender difference.

Nevertheless, these differences in muscle fibers can influence a strength training program in that women may see more dramatic increases from a strength training program after a plateau in which fast-twitch muscle fibers need the extra time to catch up and surpass slow-twitch fiber size. Important to this training phenomenon is the use of heavier resistances to stimulate faster growth of the type II muscle fibers found in the higher threshold motor units. In addition, if slow-twitch muscle fibers predominate, a more rapid detraining phenomenon may result, requiring more frequent maintenance workouts, especially during any maintenance phases of training (e.g., two training sessions per week rather than one). The relationship between men's and women's fiber type over age can be seen in figure 9.4.

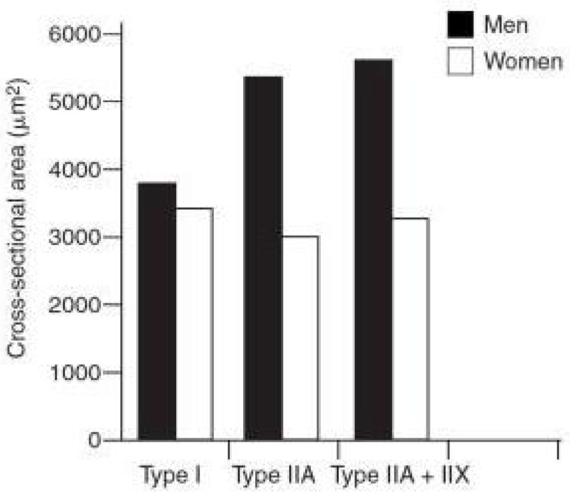


Figure 9.4 The relationship between young (20-25 years) untrained men *(n* = 15) and women *(n* = 15) for cross-sectional area of different fiber types. A significant *(p* < .05) difference exists between all of the muscle fiber types, with men having larger cross-sectional areas. (Unpublished data from Dr. Kraemer's laboratory).

Differences in Strength and Power

The differences in the number of muscle fibers and the cross-sectional area of the fibers between men and women can be seen in the differences in absolute strength. Corrections for body size and mass can at times correct for the differences seen in lower-body strength but not upper-body strength, underscoring the need for upper-body development in women.

The average woman's maximal mean total-body strength is about 60% of the average man's maximal mean total-body strength. Average upper-body strength in women ranges from 25 to 55% of men's average upper-body strength. Lower-body strength has been shown to be a higher percentage at about 70 to 75% (Fleck and Kraemer, 2004). The gender influence is still observed in competitive lifts and totals when looking at power lifters' and weightlifters' records.

It is important to note that these findings are related to broad group comparisons of similar athlete groups or untrained populations with very specific comparison conditions. Obviously, if we made a single comparison with no matching variable (e.g., age, body size), a given woman could demonstrate greater strength capabilities than a man. This was obvious in one study where one woman who had competed in **power lifting** could squat 235 kg and none of the men in the study could even approach that level in their 1RM squat. The construction of the comparison is important in order to gain perspective in any gender-related effect.

The average woman has been reported to have 54 to 73% of the maximal vertical jump and 75% of the maximal standing long jump of the average man (Fleck and Kraemer, 2004). For the standing long jump this translates to the average woman generating approximately 63% of the power generated by the average man. One possibility is differences in the size ratio of muscle fiber type between men and women. About 70 to 75% of women have type I muscle fibers with a cross-sectional size that is larger than that of their type II fast-twitch fibers. Power at faster velocities of movement could be affected if the force–velocity curve of women were different from that of men. However, it appears that the drop-off in force as the velocity of movement increases is similar in both genders and that peak velocity during knee extension is not different between genders. The rate of force development could affect power output. Men also have greater pennation angles (i.e., the angle of the muscle fiber's direction of pull relative to the direction of pull needed to produce movement) in many muscles, and this would also affect the mechanics of muscle actions. It does appear that the skeletal muscle's rate of force development is slower for the average woman than for the average man (Fleck and Kraemer, 2004). Thus, training for explosive strength is vital for female athletes in order to enhance rate of force development capabilities and improve power performances.

Differences in Hormone Concentrations

The most obvious difference underlying the fundamental mechanisms that mediate male versus female adaptations to resistance training is the male hormone, testosterone. While both men and women have resting circulatory concentrations, the resting concentrations in women are 10 to 20 times lower (see figure 9.5) (Kraemer and Ratamess, 2003). This difference is most dramatic when changes occur in adolescent boys and girls, as testosterone mediates the boys' larger muscle size, shoulder girth, and strength. With women producing most of this hormone from the adrenal glands and from the ovaries less so, some women have higher concentrations of adrenal androgens, and this appears to give them an advantage over other women in their trainability of muscle. The values are still 10 to 20 times lower than that of men, but one can see small increases with the exercise stress as well as small increases over the training period. Concerns for testosterone's relationship to other pathologies remain somewhat epidemiological and have not been linked to training-related changes in women.

It appears that women depend more on the pituitary secretion of growth hormone and its variants or aggregates along with growth factors to help mediate the changes in muscle, bone, and connective tissues. It has been seen that bioactive growth hormone (growth hormone measured by bioassay) concentrations in women are higher at rest than in men and changes occur differently with resistance training. Even the normal growth hormone levels in women are higher than in men and potentially provide compensatory mechanisms to help in the mediation of anabolic adaptations in muscle as well as connective tissue (Kraemer and Ratamess, 2003).

Fleck and Kraemer (2004) have postulated that the following factors relate to the anabolic differences in women as they relate to training adaptations. Larger increases than normal in lean body mass and limb circumferences

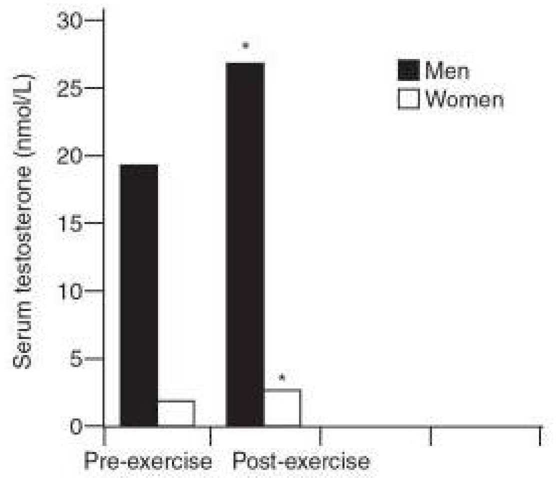


Figure 9.5 The relationship between young (20-25 years) trained men (n = 12) and trained women (n = 12) for serum total testosterone responses before and after a weight training workout. Both genders demonstrated a significant (* = $p < .05$ from pre-exercise values) increase after the workout with the change being greater in men than women. Note the concentrations for women are dramatically lower than men. (Unpublished data from Dr. Kraemer's laboratory).

in some women are probably due to several factors, including

- higher than normal resting testosterone, growth hormone, or other hormones,
- greater hormonal response than normal to resistance training,
- lower than normal estrogen-to-testosterone ratio,
- genetic disposition to develop large muscle mass, and
- ability to perform more intense resistance training.

The responses of muscle fibers are more rapid in women than in men. It has been shown that within two workouts the isoforms of myosin ATPase change to the faster type, where it takes four workouts to stimulate the same changes in men. Thus, women have been found to be very responsive to the resistance training stimulus. The key is to optimally load and vary the program so that a proper exercise stimulus is created that is capable of stimulating the needed physiological responses leading to adaptations.

The development of an effective workout protocol is the first step in creating a training program. Workout protocols for women have been found to be effective if they have varied training demands (periodized training), multiple sets, and a varied loading scheme that includes heavier resistances for strength development. Incorporation of training protocols that address the trainable characteristics of muscle in proportion to importance to the sport is vital to a successful strength training program for women.

STRENGTH TRAINING GUIDELINES FOR WOMEN ATHLETES

A well-designed program for a woman should reflect both her individual needs as well as the demands of the sport she is participating in. The following guidelines might well be suited for women after each program is created in an individualized and sport-specific manner. As outlined by Ebben and Jensen in 1998 and consistent with the position of the National Strength and Conditioning Association (NSCA), the following features might be considered as essential in a strength training program for women:

1. Well-designed strength training programs include exercises with free weights and dumbbells and exercises that use body weight resistance. Both women and men should include these in their training, and women should train at the same intensities as men.
2. The use of strength training machines and abdominal exercises need not be discontinued, but emphasis should be placed on the use of free weight exercises, including foot-based lower-body exercises such as the lunge, diagonal lunge, walking lunge, step-up, lateral step-up, and squat.
3. Women should also include upper-body exercises that employ multiple muscle groups such as the bench press, incline press, latissimus dorsi pull-down, pull-up, and back extension.
4. Women who have developed a strength base should consider using total-body exercises such as the push press, hang clean, power clean, clean and jerk, and snatch.
5. A training program should stress multiplanar, multijoint, functional exercises because they develop intermuscular coordination, proprioception, and balance and result in strength that transfers to sports and daily activities. For example, the step-up is superior to the leg extension machine because it offers functional strength for walking up a flight of stairs while carrying bags of groceries.
6. For athletes who play foot-based sports such as basketball, the squat is superior to using the leg press machine, since the squat is functionally more similar

to the sport and requires greater balance, weight, and body control in all three planes of motion.

INCIDENCE OF INJURY

For years many women "played themselves into shape," which placed them in situations where their body was not ready to take on the demands of the sport. The incidence of injury in a weight room using aggressive training techniques is lower than in almost every competitive sport. It has been estimated that there are about 2.8 injuries or fewer per 1,000 training hours, with most injuries involving overuse of the lower back, knees, and feet. In addition, an increase in injuries typically occurs during times of increased training loads, particularly during the first 2 weeks of sport practice and immediately subsequent to holidays. The temporal relationship between training load and injury suggests a causative link. Care should be taken any time there is an increase in the volume or intensity of a workout, as this is a susceptible time point where exercise technique and toleration of the workout must be carefully monitored by the strength and conditioning coach.

Specific to women and especially basketball players, it has been observed that there are higher incidences of **anterior cruciate ligament (ACL)** injury in women compared to men. While still a topic of intense investigation, it has begged the question as to whether women should train differently than men in order to reduce such a dramatic injury potential. It is known that men have greater ACL thickness than woman and that the trochanteric notch width gets bigger with taller men but not with taller women. This narrower trochanteric notch along with anatomical factors beyond the scope of this chapter can predispose women to greater incidence of ACL injury. In a classic review Pettitt and Bryson (2002) came up with an extensive set of recommendations for strength and conditioning programs to help prevent ACL injuries in women, especially basketball players, and readers are referred to this paper for a more detailed analysis.

MENSTRUAL CYCLE AND STRENGTH TRAINING

Surprisingly few data exist regarding the role of the **menstrual cycle** in strength training. While highly variable, it has been observed that a decrease in normal premenstrual symptoms such as breast enlargement, appetite cravings, bloating, and mood changes occurs in trained individuals. This has led to a general concept that active women have fewer problems with premenstrual symptoms than sedentary women. How much exercise is needed and when such activity becomes detrimental to an athlete's menstrual profile remain a topic of much interest. Menstrual abnormalities include **amenorrhea,** or the absence of menstrual bleeding, with primary amenorrhea being a delay of menarche beyond age 16 and secondary amenorrhea being the cessation of menstruation in a woman who had previously menstruated; **dysmenorrhea,** meaning painful menstrual periods; **hypermenorrhea,** meaning excessive or prolonged uterine bleeding in amount and duration of flow occurring at regular intervals; and **oligomenorrhea,** meaning infrequent or light menstrual cycles. It should be noted that women who reported higher levels of life-event stresses had an increased incidence of dysmenorrhea, hypermenorrhea, and abnormal menstrual cycle lengths.

Exercise Stress and the Menstrual Cycle

It is not just exercise that can cause menstrual cycle abnormalities. Other factors involved with menstrual abnormalities include inadequate caloric intake, which can interact with exercise training and competition and may help to mediate menstrual problems. Many sports in which lower body weight appears to enhance performance (e.g., gymnastics, cross country running) or that have body weight classifications (e.g., weightlifting, women's

Some Advice to Pregnant Female Athletes

It may surprise you to know that the risk of heavy lifting in pregnancy is not injury to the baby but injury to the mother. Pregnancy hormones cause the ligaments to soften, which helps the pelvis widen to make room for childbirth. As a result of softer ligaments, joints may be less stable than usual and injury may be more likely. Therefore, women should not start a new or more aggressive strength training program during pregnancy. Prior long term strength training will dramatically help women more quickly return to their normal strength training routines after delivery.

Carl Petersen (2005), a physical therapist who works with many women during pregnancy, advises, "Continue doing what exercises feel comfortable, but don't strain yourself by attempting new, unfamiliar lifts or by using too much resistance. Exercises that mimic your daily activities, like step-ups, split squats, and minilunges, are best."

Here are some suggestions for specific exercises that can be performed during pregnancy:

Exercise	Cautionary notes
Squats	Range of motion should be decreased (knees should never be flexed beyond 90°). If you want to increase the squat workout, decrease the pace (i.e., lower slowly to a count of three or four).
Leg presses	Leg presses help keep the lower abdominals tight, which protects your back. However, limit this exercise to the first trimester only (exercises performed on the back should be phased out before the second trimester).
Hip abductor machines	Working out on a hip abductor machine will build strength in the hips, which counteracts postural changes. Keep lower abdominals tight to avoid hyperextending the back. If you experience numbness, pain, or tingling down the back of your legs (sciatic symptoms), see a doctor.
Ab work	Concentrate on gaining control of the lower abdominals by performing pelvic floor exercises (Kegels). Traditional sit-ups should be deleted from the exercise routine.

wrestling) may in fact promote problems with menstrual cycle normality. In addition, high volumes of intense training accompanied by low levels of caloric intake may exacerbate such problems.

It is now known that the prevalence of secondary amenorrhea in athletes is higher than in normal women living a less active lifestyle, but the correlation is not evidence of cause and effect. A new paradigm on this problem dictates that all menstrual cycle problems exist on a continuum of severity and are affected by physical, nutritional, and behavioral components that modify severity.

For women it is essential that proper nutritional intake of total calories and diet composition (i.e., protein intake) are met in order to meet the demands for energy expenditure but also for the repair and remodeling of muscle tissue. Many women do not eat enough protein to meet the demand for amino acids needed for protein synthesis after a strength training workout. Such dietary behavior and other nutritional deficiencies (e.g., reduced calcium intake) can help limit optimal adaptation to a workout and training program. In addition, they may well be a major contributing factor to menstrual cycle abnormalities.

Interestingly, 25% of 199 Olympic-style weightlifters, of an average age of 16 years, reported having irregular menses; only three of these athletes aged 13 to 15 had not yet begun to menstruate. In distance runners, greater training distance, intensity, frequency, and duration of training season have all been implicated as factors increasing the risk of menstrual irregularities. However, not all athletes performing high volume, high intensity training will experience menstrual irregularities. Again, the interactions among caloric intake, exercise stress, and psychological factors all can contribute in different ways to menstrual problems and the magnitude of each is highly individual.

Menstrual Cycle and Performance

Dysmenorrhea, or abdominal pain due to menstruation, may increase with an increase in premenstrual symptoms. Dysmenorrhea is reported by 60 to 70% of adult women, and it increases with the age of women. Many women who suffer migraine headaches also see an increase in headaches and migraine attacks at the time of menstruation. It has been estimated that more than 60% of women who experience migraine headaches suffer from menstrual migraines. Similar to premenstrual symptoms, dysmenorrhea occurs less frequently and is less severe in athletes than in the normal population. Premenstrual symptoms or dysmenorrhea could have a detrimental effect on athletic performance, and some investigators recommend use of oral contraceptives or progesterone injections to control the occurrence of menses and to avoid competing while menstruating.

Strength is not different over the normal menstrual cycle, but other investigations indicate that the best physical performance probably occurs between the immediate postmenstrual period and the 15th day of the menstrual cycle. However, Olympic-medal performances have been demonstrated during all portions of the menstrual cycle. Thus, the effect of the menstrual cycle on performance is unclear and is probably highly individualistic. Oligomenorrhea or secondary amenorrhea should have no effect on performance. Participation in conditioning programs and athletic events should not be discouraged during menstruation; to date negative effects are highly individual and no detrimental effects on health have been observed.

THE FEMALE ATHLETE TRIAD

The **female athlete triad** refers to a group of problems related to a host of factors that could affect women athletes. The triad is composed of the following three factors, of which each in their own right can damage a woman's health, fitness, and performance.

1. **Disordered eating.** This involves a spectrum of problems from inappropriate body imaging to bingeing and purging disorders. Anorexia nervosa (self-starvation) and bulimia nervosa (binge eating and purging) are medical problems that need the care and attention of appropriately trained medical doctors. Nutritionists or conditioning professionals should not attempt to deal with these medical problems. Identification of the problem by the sports medicine team is crucial to successful care and treatment.
2. **Amenorrhea.** As discussed, amenorrhea involves not having a menstrual cycle for an extended period of time. Primary amenorrhea is not having a period by the age of 16. Secondary amenorrhea is a phenomenon related to missing three or more consecutive periods once normal periods have begun.
3. **Osteoporosis.** This is the classic disease of abnormally low bone mineral density, which increases the risk of fractures, especially with aging.

Strength training when disordered eating habits exist remains difficult at best due to the inherent problem of meeting the protein and caloric needs to repair and remodel muscle. Typically, anorexic behavior focuses on endurance exercise, as it relates to greater caloric burn or a reducing of body size. Once caloric intake and nutrients are corrected, strength training has been used to help with exercise therapy, but little work has been done in this area and conditioning coaches need to work carefully with physicians in such situations.

Summary Points of the NSCA's Position on Strength Training for Women

In an effort to better understand the important issues for women and strength training, the NSCA put together a study task force, which released its findings in a position stand in 1990. These were the major points from that consensus panel regarding strength training and women.

1. Proper strength and conditioning exercise programs may increase athletic performance, improve physiological function, and reduce the risk of injuries. These effects are as beneficial to female athletes as they are to male athletes.
2. Due to similar physiological responses, it appears that males and females should train for strength in the same basic way, employing similar methodologies, programs, and types of exercises.
3. In the lower body, the relative strength (strength to lean body mass) of untrained women appears to be approximately equal to that of men.
4. Females can hypertrophy their muscles through resistance training relatively the same as men, but not absolutely the same.
5. Female athletes appear to have the same fiber-type distribution as men, although the female fibers appear to be smaller in cross-sectional area.
6. There is little research evidence to suggest that the onset of a normal menstrual period affects athletic performance.
7. Female athletes whose menstrual cycle has ceased have an increased likelihood of developing musculoskeletal injuries. Athletes experiencing amenorrhea or other menstrual problems should consult their gynecologist.
8. Resistance training using multijoint and structural exercises is recommended to induce sufficient stresses on the skeletal system and to enhance calcium storage in the bone.
9. Little data exist regarding weight training and pregnancy. Anecdotal evidence suggests that women may safely weight train during pregnancy; however common sense must be employed when selecting training intensities and exercises.
10. Due to the influx of the hormone relaxin, which softens tendons and ligaments in preparation for delivery, caution is warranted for pregnant women in performing heavy multijoint exercises (squats, deadlifts, snatches, and cleans) after the first trimester. Also, the potential for increased body temperature in pregnant women warrants the use of precautions in dress and environmental conditions during all types of exercise.
11. Resistance training has demonstrated favorable changes in body composition with minimal change in body weight.
12. Because females are, in general, weaker than males in the upper body, adult females should work especially hard on upper-body strength training.

Reprinted, by permission, from National Strength Coaches Association, 2005, "Strength training for female athletes," *NSCA Position Statement* (Colorado Springs, CO: National Strength Coaches Association). Available: www.nsca-lift.org/Publications/posstatements.shtml Accessed: 10/13/05

In addition, men are also susceptible to eating disorders (e.g., bulimia in wrestling), especially with weight class sports and extreme dieting for body image.

Strength training with various types of amenorrhea has not presented the same inherent problems when not associated with caloric deficits or dramatic endurance training volumes. However, due to its intimate linkage to eating behaviors, dietary analysis and counseling of women athletes can help in monitoring this aspect of the female triad.

Strength training has been viewed as an important intervention for osteoporosis, as it assists with bone maintenance. Even more important may be the initiation of resistance training early in a woman's life in order to accrue maximal bone mass and density before adulthood. The extent of the disease will dictate how effective strength training can be, and when exhibited in younger women athletes it is usually related to one or more triad interactions and associated behaviors.

Strength training programs have been conducted in the face of each of these problems.

While it is easy to oversimplify the causes of the different components of the female athlete triad, certain populations of athletes may be more susceptible than others, and the causes may vary. Many sports have very subjective judging that involves body form and image. Sports like figure skating, gymnastics, and diving place a great deal of stress on women, as body form is both revealed and viewed in the scope of the competition. Some coaches actually encourage eating disorders by making ignorant comments and placing demands on the athlete's body mass or body fat. Small but negative influences such as these can have far-reaching and damaging effects for some women. All coaches and people involved in sports should therefore be careful to avoid such statements as they may precipitate negative consequences for a woman's health. Strength coaches should also be aware of these issues within the context of the different sport-specific training programs they are working with.

Athletes are susceptible to the female athlete triad under the following types of conditions:

1. Sports that are judged subjectively (i.e., dance, figure skating, diving, gymnastics, aerobics)
2. Endurance sports (i.e., distance running, cycling, cross-country skiing)
3. Sports in which women wear revealing clothing (i.e., volleyball, swimming, diving, cross-country skiing, track and field, cheerleading)
4. Weight classification sports (i.e., wrestling, weightlifting, rowing, some martial arts)
5. Sports where a prepubescent body is emphasized (i.e., figure skating, gymnastics, diving)

The younger the woman is when such factors come into play, the more dramatic may be the effects. In addition, many women have to deal with dramatic maturation processes in sports where body form and function are related to a more immature body type due to the biomechanical requirements of the sport skills (e.g., diving, figure skating, and gymnastics).

SUMMARY

Developing strength training programs for women athletes requires matching the demands of the sport to the physical attributes of women. Individualization of programs to prepare a woman's body for the sport is vital and involves addressing various aspects of physical development. The trainable features of muscle should be addressed along with injury prevention as related to women specifically (e.g., ACL injury). Power development is vital in most sports today and is supported by optimizing strength. Upper-body development (both muscle strength and size) is a primary target in order to improve most sport performances. While only subtle differences exist between the training of men and women, care should be taken never to assume that responses will be identical to a given workout or over a training cycle. As with men, evaluation of progress and fine-tuning of the exercise prescription are needed to optimize a strength training program for women.

Copyrighted Material

chapter 10

Strength Training for Young Athletes

Strength training for young athletes has become more popular over the past 15 years as parents, coaches, and sports medicine professionals have come to realize its benefits for children as young as 5 and 6 years old. Progress up to that point had been slow due to concerns over efficacy, safety, and appropriateness of training protocols. If a program is appropriately modified for young athletes, they can participate in a wide variety of strength training programs. In addition, the young athlete can gain health benefits in

Resistance training for young athletes can benefit performance as well as provide health benefits to muscle and connective tissues.

addition to the benefits of improved athletic performance and injury prevention.

While professionals have supported the use of strength training programs by children, they have cautioned parents, teachers, and coaches about the need for proper program design, competent supervision, and correct teaching of exercise techniques. These areas are paramount for safe and effective resistance training programs for children. Some of the benefits (e.g., performance enhancement in preadolescence) need further study to explain anecdotal and clinical impressions. However, greater understanding has started to diminish unrealistic fears about children and resistance training.

The primary questions that are asked concerning strength training programs for younger athletes include the following:

1. Is it safe for a young athlete to lift weights?
2. When can a young athlete start to lift weights?
3. Will the young athlete gain any benefits from lifting weights?
4. What type of program should the young athlete use?

SAFETY AND STRENGTH TRAINING FOR YOUNG ATHLETES

Safety in strength training is vital for the young athlete. Injury is primarily caused by mistakes in the exercise technique, spotting (or lack thereof) and/or accident. Prevention

Obesity and Inactivity

In 1999 to 2000, 15% of children and teens aged 6 to 19 were overweight (3 times the 1980 statistics). Over 10% of children aged 2 to 5 are overweight (up from 7% in 1994). Another 15% of children and teens are considered at risk for becoming overweight. The average child in the United States gets <15 min of vigorous activity a day and only 43 min of moderate activity a day. On average, children spend 17 h a week watching TV, in addition to the time they spend playing video and computer games.

With the high incidence of childhood obesity in the Western world, many children cannot do simple push-ups, pull-ups, and sit-ups. It has been shown that even body weight exercises are difficult to perform, and the inability to perform an exercise dramatically affects the child's desire to exercise due to negative feedback and lowered self-esteem. The ability to handle one's body mass is vital to optimal athletic performance, and weight training exercises should be used to reduce the loading and improve the base fitness levels of younger athletes so that they can develop the ability to control their body mass in exercises like push-ups and pull-ups. Progression in various machine and lifting exercises can help develop body mass control and movement, a critical feature of athletic performance.

A strength training program can improve both body composition and increase the child activity profile dramatically.

of injury is an important factor, and reducing if not eliminating the injury potential of a strength training program can be the most prudent approach when training the young athlete. The types of injuries are typically related to the muscle and connective tissue and can be prevented with appropriate precautions.

Primary Factors in Avoiding Injury

The primary causes of injury in strength training programs are mistakes in exercise techniques or accidental injury. Each of these can be exacerbated in young athletes if proper instruction and supervision are not available. Accidental injury comes from a lack of proper weight room rules (e.g., not wearing shoes) and from equipment failures (e.g., inadequate construction of a bench to hold the weight used), each of which can be addressed by a trained strength and conditioning specialist. Other factors that increase the potential for injury relate to overuse injuries from inappropriate program design, such as young adolescent boys doing 20 or 30 sets of arm curls each day to develop their biceps muscles. Young children left to their own devices when it comes to strength training will end up with less than optimal results. Thus, all of the major organizations, including the National Strength and Conditioning Association (NSCA), American College of Sports Medicine (ACSM), American Academy of Pediatrics (AAP), and American Orthopaedic Society for Sports Medicine (AOSSM), stress the importance of adult supervision and programs designed by trained personnel for young athletes. Supervised strength training has been found to be safe and effective even for the preadolescent athlete (Guy and Micheli, 2001). Competent supervision involves having an individual who understands exercise techniques, exercise prescription, and the ways in which children differ from adults in their needs and requirements for strength training. While coaches and parents can help in this process, they should be trained by a certified strength and conditioning specialist to ensure that all of the proper safeguards are in place when working with young athletes.

Proper Lifting Techniques

One of the most important aspects of safety for young athletes in the weight room is an understanding of proper lifting techniques. It is also paramount that coaches know how to teach exercise techniques to children. This training for coaches can become demanding as the complexity of the exercise technique increases. Free weight lifts such as squats, lunges, and bench presses as well as Olympic weightlifting movements such as pulls, cleans, and snatches are incorporated into a strength training program, and many times the inability of the coach to properly teach an exercise increases the potential for both acute injury and chronic overuse injuries. Understanding proper exercise technique and also the spotting requirements of the exercise is mandatory for a safe and effective strength training program.

Teaching proper exercise techniques is essential for both free weight and weight machine exercises. For extensive explanations of exercise techniques, see Kraemer and Fleck (2005), who describe over 120 exercises in detail.

Proper Spotting Techniques

Spotting for both machine and free weight exercises is just as important as exercise technique. Spotting refers to an individual or individuals who assist the lifter as needed. Spotters not only assist the lifter with completion of a repetition, they also assist the lifter by correcting improper exercise technique. Spotters are vital for a safe strength training program. The following is a checklist developed by Kraemer and Fleck (2005) that spotters should use at all times:

1. Know proper exercise technique.
2. Know proper spotting technique.
3. Be sure you are strong enough to assist the lifter with the resistance used.
4. Know how many repetitions the lifter intends to do.
5. Be attentive to the lifter at all times.
6. Stop the exercise if incorrect technique is being used.
7. If incorrect exercise technique is used, correct the technique.
8. Know the plan of action for when a serious injury occurs.

The major goal of spotting is to prevent injury. A lifter should always have a spotter. No trainee should perform resistance training without proper supervision, including a spotter. Both you and the trainee should know correct exercise and spotting techniques for all exercises performed in a training program. If trainees are responsible enough, they may spot each other. If the child or adult cannot spot each other, enlist the help of other trained adults or reduce the number of people training at one time.

Proper Equipment Fit

It is important to understand that with young athletes, equipment fit is vital to safe training. If a child does not fit into a weight machine properly, a host of problems can arise including incomplete ranges of motion for exercises, inappropriate loading stresses leading to acute injury or overuse injuries, and improper muscular development. When using free weights these problems can be eliminated or reduced, but machine fit needs to be evaluated for each child. Most weight machines are made for the "normative male," and a young person's limb size and body size may not match the machine. This is especially true for machines that attempt to change the resistance over the range of motion, called variable resistance, as strength curves (i.e., patterns of force that can be produced over the range of motion) of children will not match those of adults and no one machine can typically fit the array of strength curves seen in a population of young athletes. Just moving a seat up or down or changing a pad may not fix the situation. Along with fit is the problem of the weight machine having too much weight for one repetition to be performed or increments that are too great from one stack plate to the next. If fit or loading are in doubt, come up with an alternative free weight exercise (see Kraemer and Fleck, 2005).

Proper Breathing Technique

Generally the lifter should inhale just before and during the lowering phase and exhale during the lifting phase of each repetition. It is important not to hold your breath when lifting. Holding your breath can lead to increases in blood pressure and also reduce blood flow

Proper Exercise Technique for Sample Exercises

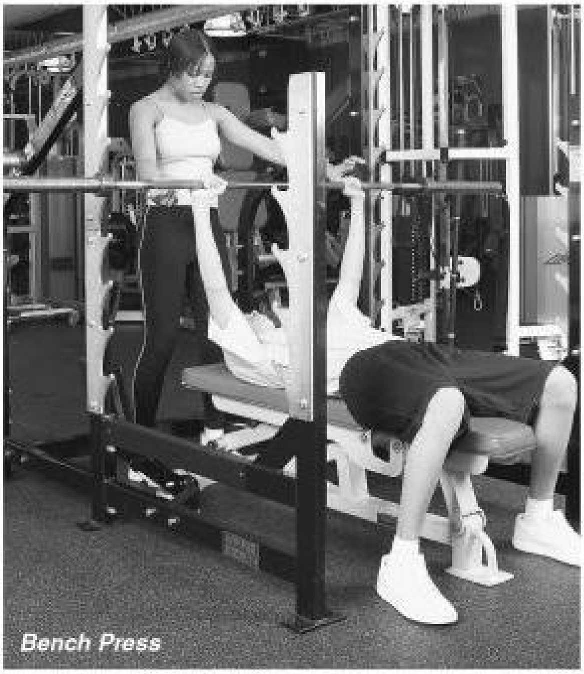
The following are a few examples of exercises used in most weight training programs for young people.

Bench Press

Start position: Lie on your back on a flat bench. Grasp a barbell with an overhand grip, palms facing upward. The hands should be wider than shoulder-width apart. The barbell is held at arm's length above the upper chest. The back of the head, upper back, and buttocks are in contact with the bench. The feet are wider than hip-width apart and flat on the floor. The knees are at a 90° angle.

Movement and end position: Lower the barbell to the midchest in a controlled manner. Allow the barbell to touch the midchest and then extend the arms, returning the bar to the arm's-length position. The upper arms form a 65 to 90° angle to the torso in the chest-touch position. If viewed from the side, the end of the barbell travels in a smooth arc between the arm's-length position and the chest-touch position.

Spotting: When using light weights, one spotter can stand behind the lifter's head and assist if necessary. If heavy weights are used, two spotters should assist, one standing at each end of the bar, facing each other.



Bench Press

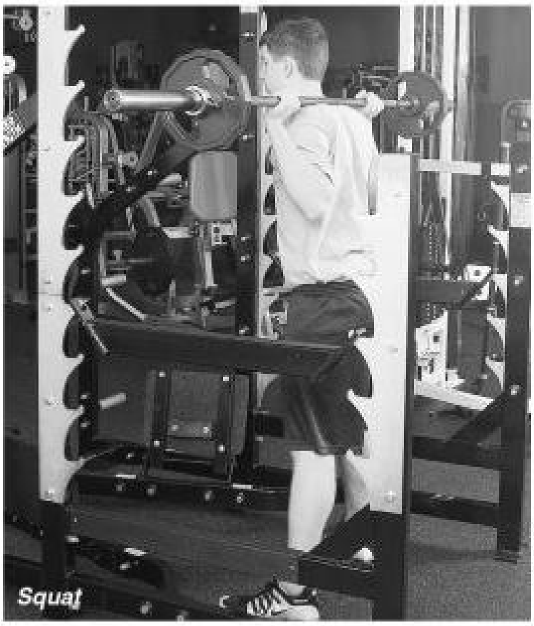
Squat

Start position: Stand erect, with your feet hip-width or slightly wider apart, feet flat on the floor and weight on your midfoot and heel areas, toes pointing straight-forward or slightly to the outside, head upright and eyes looking forward, barbell resting on the spines of your shoulder blades, hands grasping the barbell with an overhand grip and palms facing forward, hands shoulder-width apart or wider. The barbell should be removed from a power rack or squat rack to get into the start position.

Movement and end position: Bend your knees and hips in a controlled manner until the tops of your thighs are parallel to the floor. Your knees should move forward and stay in a line above your toes as your knees bend. Return to the start position in a controlled manner; your torso will lean forward, but should remain as upright as possible at all times, your feet remain flat on the floor, and your weight remains on your midfoot and heel area at all times. The head stays upright, eyes look forward at all times, and shoulders stay back at all times.

Spotting: Squats should be done in a power rack or similar safety device. Two or three spotters are recommended with one on each end and one behind the lifter.

(continued)



Squat

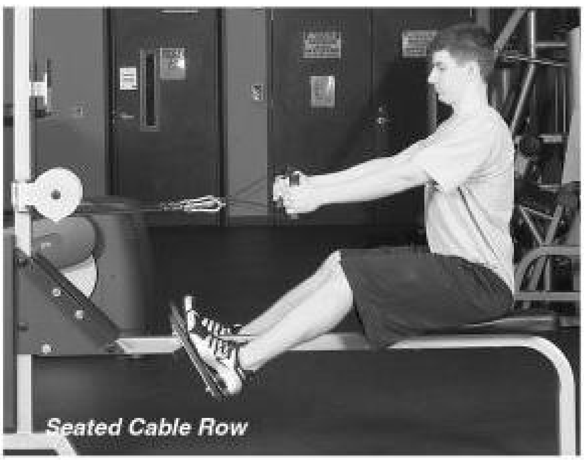
Seated Cable Row

Starting position: Sit on the seat with your torso forming approximately a 90° angle with your thighs, feet hip-width apart and resting flat on the foot plates, and with a slight bend in your knees. Your torso should be upright with the back slightly arched backward, and neck and head in line with the rest of your back. Grasping the handle with an overhand grip, elbows straight with the handles held at arm's-length and your shoulder blades relaxed and separated, adjust the length of the cable or the seat position so that resistance is felt in the start position.

Movement and end position: Pull the handle in a controlled manner until it touches your chest. The pull is started by pulling your shoulder blades together and then by bending your elbows. When the handle touches your chest, your shoulder blades are still together and your elbows are slightly behind your back. Once your shoulder blades are together, they remain so for the entire pulling motion and do not separate until the end of the lowering motion. Briefly hold the chest-touch position and then return the handle in a controlled manner to the start position by first straightening your elbows and then allowing your shoulder blades to separate.

Variations: Several types of handles allowing different hand positions can be used, as can grips of different widths. During the pull, height and distance of the elbows from the body can also be varied.

Spotting: Proper positioning and maintenance of good technique during the exercise are all that is necessary, as no real spotting is required.



Seated Cable Row

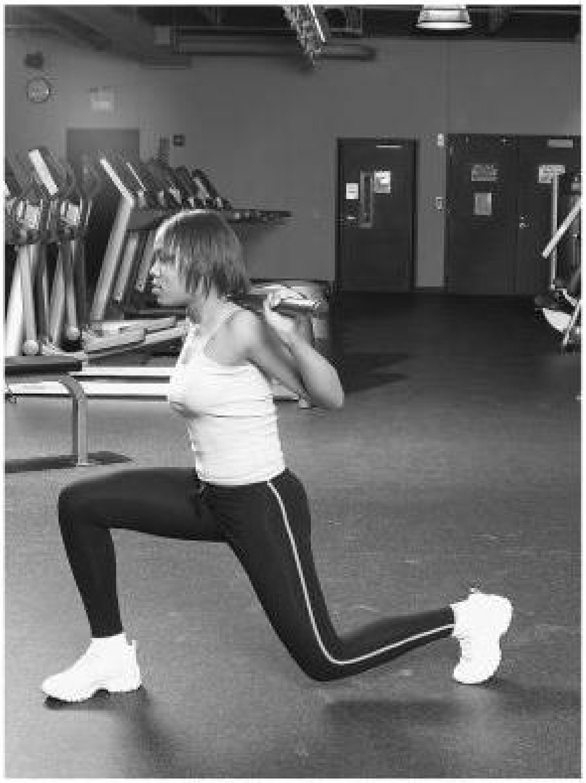
Lunge

Start position: Stand erect, your feet flat on the floor and hip-width or slightly wider apart, torso upright, head upright and eyes looking forward, barbell resting on the spines of your shoulder blades identical to the barbell position during a back squat, hands grasping the barbell wider than shoulder-width apart with an overhand grip and palms facing forward. Remove the barbell from a power rack or squat rack to get into the start position.

Movement and end position: In a controlled manner, step straight forward with one leg so that your feet are still hip-width apart after the step. The step should be long enough so that when in the end position, the knee of the leg that stepped forward is above your midfoot area and not in front of your toes or behind your heel. In a controlled manner, bend the knee of the leg that stepped forward until the knee of your rear leg almost touches the floor. The foot of the leg that stepped forward remains flat on the floor at all times, while your rear foot can rise up onto your toes as the front leg is bent. After bending the front leg, straighten it in a controlled manner but do not lock the knee. Repeat this motion until the desired number of repetitions are completed. After completing the desired number of repetitions, push off the floor with your front leg, and with two short backward steps of your front leg return to the start position. Repeat the exercise motion with the opposite leg for the desired number of repetitions. The torso should remain as upright as possible throughout the exercise motion.

Spotting: Technique is vital. Some common technique flaws include the following: the step forward is too short so that the knee of your stepping leg is in front of the toes when the knee is bent; the step forward is too long so that the knee of your stepping leg is behind your heel when the knee is bent; your feet aren't hip-width apart after completion of the step forward, which causes difficulty in maintaining balance during the exercise motion because of a narrow base of support; and you don't keep your torso as upright as possible, which places undue stress on the lower back. When it comes to spotting and safety for all lunges, a step forward that is not of the correct length places undue stress on the knee of your stepping leg. Two spotters, one at each end of the bar, are recommended (barbell lunge). With a dumbbell lunge, no spotting is normally needed. The dumbbell lunge is easier to perform than the barbell lunge because it is easier to keep your torso upright, thus reducing lower back strain.

Lunge



to the brain, resulting in light-headedness or fainting, which can result in injury. Because lifting maximal or near-maximal resistances is not the goal of weight training programs for children, there is no need for excessive breath holding. Proper breathing should be taught and encouraged at all times.

Types of Musculoskeletal Injuries

Resistance training in children, as with most physical activities, does carry some inherent risk of musculoskeletal injury, yet this risk is no greater than that of many other sports or recreational activities in which children regularly participate. In one prospective study that evaluated the incidence of sports-related injuries in children over a 1-year period, resistance training resulted in 0.7% of 1,576 injuries, whereas football and basketball resulted in 19% and 15%, respectively, of all injuries. When the data were evaluated in terms of 100 participants, football (28.3% of injuries) and wrestling (16.4% of injuries) were at the top of the list, but strength training was not included in this final analysis. However, the possibility of acute and chronic injuries to children's growth cartilage has been a valid concern. Therefore, a strength training program for young athletes should not focus primarily on lifting maximal or near-maximal amounts of resistance. Again, proper technique must always be stressed because most injuries in resistance exercise are related to improper exercise technique (see Kraemer and Fleck, 2005, for exercise techniques). Young athletes need time to adapt to the stress of resistance training, and some children find it difficult to train or don't enjoy training at a particular age. Interest, growth, maturity, and understanding all contribute to a child's view of exercise training.

Growth-Cartilage Injury

In addition to the possibility of injury normally associated with adults, the prepubescent individual is subject to growth-cartilage injury. Growth cartilage is located at three sites: (a) the epiphyseal plate or growth plate, (b) the epiphysis or joint surface, and (c) the tendon insertion or apophyseal insertions. The long bones of the body grow in length from the epiphyseal plates located at each of the long bones. Due to hormonal changes, these epiphyseal plates ossify after **puberty.** After **ossification,** growth of the long bones is no longer possible. Thus, an increase in the height of an individual is also no longer possible. The epiphysis acts as a shock absorber between the bones that form a joint. Damage to this cartilage may lead to a rough articular surface and subsequent pain during movement of the joint. The growth cartilage at apophyseal insertions of major muscle, tendon, and bone units ensures a solid connection between the tendon and bone. Damage to the growth cartilage at this site may cause pain and also increase the chance of separation between the tendon and bone. All three growth-cartilage sites are more susceptible to injury during the adolescent growth spurt due to factors such as increased muscle tightness across joints.

Acute Injury

Acute injury refers to a single trauma causing an injury. Acute injuries to the skeletal system like growth-cartilage damage or bone fractures are very rare during strength training. The most common acute injury risk for prepubescent weight trainers, as in adults, is muscle strains. Strains are many times the result of not warming up properly before a training session. Several sets of an exercise should be performed before performing the true training sets of a workout. The other common cause of muscular strain is attempting to lift too much weight for a particular number of repetitions. Young athletes should be instructed that the number of repetitions per set is a guideline as to the acceptable number of repetitions to perform.

Cases of epiphyseal plate fractures in prepubescent weight trainers have been reported. This area is prone to fracture in children because the epiphyseal plate has not yet ossified and does not have the structural strength of mature adult bone. All of these case reports involved overhead lifts (i.e., overhead press, clean and jerk) with near-maximal resistances. These case reports reveal two precautions for prepubescent programs. First, maximal or near-maximal lifts (1RMs) should not be stressed in prepubescent athletes, especially in unsupervised conditions. Second, because improper form is a contributing factor to any injury, proper form of all exercises (particularly overhead lifts) should be emphasized with young trainees.

Peak fracture incidence in boys occurs between the ages of 12 and 14 years and precedes the age of peak height increase or growth spurt. It appears the increased fracture rate is due to a lag in cortical bone thickness and mineralization compared to linear bone growth. Therefore, controlling the resistance used by boys during weight training between the ages of 12 and 14 years is important. This same line of evidence may also apply to girls between the ages of 10 and 13 years.

Acute trauma can cause low back problems in adults as well as children. In resistance training acute trauma may be caused by lifting maximal or near-maximal resistances and attempting to perform too many repetitions. In many cases, back pain is associated with improper form in the squat or deadlift. While performing these exercises, it is essential to keep the back in an upright position, using the legs as much as possible. This keeps the torque on the lumbar region low, protecting the lower back from excessive stress.

Chronic Injury

Chronic injury, or overuse injury, refers to repeated microtraumas causing injury. Shin splints (injuries to the front lower leg) and stress fractures are common overuse injuries. Improper technique over long periods of time can create overuse injuries (e.g., use of variable resistance machines that do not fit the child).

It is possible to damage all three growth-cartilage sites due to physical stress. As an example, repeated microtrauma to the shoulder due to baseball pitching results in damage to the epiphyseal plate of the humerus. This damage causes pain with shoulder movement and is often called Little League shoulder. The growth cartilage on the articular surface of prepubescent joints is more prone to injury than that of adults. This is especially true for the articular cartilage at the ankle, knee, and elbow. Osteochondritis dissecans is a disorder in which a fragment of cartilage and subchondral bone separates from an articular surface. The knee is most commonly affected, but the elbow and ankle may also be involved. Repeated microtrauma appears to be responsible for many cases of osteochondritis dissecans at the elbows of young baseball pitchers and the ankle joints of young runners. The growth cartilage at the site of a tendon insertion onto a bone may be connected to the pain associated with Osgood-Schlatter disease. Although the cause of Osgood-Schlatter disease is not completely known, there is increasing evidence that it may in part be due to tiny avulsion fractures (i.e., pulling the tendon from the bone). Similar injuries in adolescents could be related to improper resistance exercise technique.

Repeated microtrauma can cause a compression fracture of the vertebrae resulting in pain. During the growth spurt many children have a tendency to develop lordosis of the lumbar spine. Lordosis is an increased curvature of the normally curved lumbar spine. Excessive lordosis may cause an extreme inward curve in the lower back. This condition is also called swayback. Several factors contribute to lordosis, including enhanced growth in the anterior portion of the vertebral bodies and tight hamstrings. Not every lordosis requires medical treatment. However, when the curve is rigid (fixed), medical evaluation is warranted.

Back Injury

Back problems due to resistance training can be minimized by performing exercises that strengthen the abdominal muscles (e.g., sit-ups) and back musculature (e.g., good morning exercises, back hyperextensions). Strengthening these areas will aid in maintaining proper exercise technique, reducing stress on the lower back. When performing exercises to strengthen the lower back, the resistance should be at a light to moderate intensity that allows the performance of at least 10 repetitions.

There is the potential for a catastrophic injury if safety standards for youth resistance training such as adult supervision, safe equipment, and age-specific training guidelines are not followed. In one case study a 9-year-old boy died when a barbell rolled off a bench press support and fell on his chest. This fatality underscores the importance of providing close adult supervision and safe training equipment for all youth resistance training programs, but especially for younger children.

Any exercise or activity recommendations for children have risks as well as benefits. Although resistance training injuries may occur, the risk can be minimized by close adult supervision, proper instruction, appropriate program design, and careful selection of training equipment. There are no justifiable safety reasons that preclude prepubescents or adolescents from participating in such a resistance training program.

WHEN TO START

A prerequisite for the development and administration of safe and effective youth resistance training is an understanding of established training principles and an appreciation for the physical and emotional maturity of children. Although there is no minimum age requirement at which children can begin resistance training, a child must be mentally and emotionally ready to comply with coaching instructions and undergo the stress of a training program. In general, if children are ready for participation in sport activities, then they are ready for some type of resistance training. A medical examination before participation is desirable.

Psychological Maturity

Psychological maturity as well as the desire to participate in such conditioning programs frame the quality of any strength training program. If young athletes do not understand why such programs are important or do not have the maturity to participate in a strength training program, success will be limited, and no young athlete should be forced to lift. Intense training is not for all young athletes, and burnout is a well-established phenomenon in youth sport. Forcing young athletes to undertake training programs that are beyond their physical and emotional capabilities will not result in long-term success. Exercise should become part of a lifestyle and negative associations with it should be eliminated.

Physiological Maturity

If athletes are mature enough to participate in a sport, they should understand the need to condition their body to take on the rigors of the sport. As with any other athlete, the child's body must be prepared to meet the demands of competition. Children may participate in two or three sports at the same time (for example, soccer, karate, and basketball). This puts a tremendous stress on the young athlete's body and finding time to perform resistance training becomes impossible at times. In a society with a great deal of what psychologists call hyperparenting, time schedules may be limited at best and strength training is often the first activity jettisoned from the schedule. A reexamination of a young athlete's schedule is warranted to make time for this aspect of sport participation. Even today many young athletes go into a competitive season with little or no physical preparation to meet the demands of the sport. The incidence of injury in all youth sports has seen dramatic increases over the past 10 years due to greater participation. Thus, a distinct need has emerged, the need to better prepare these young athletes' bodies to tolerate the practice and competitive stresses of sports.

Strength, Physical Growth, and Maturity

During childhood, many physiological changes related to growth and development occur dynamically and rapidly. Muscular strength normally increases from childhood through the early teenage years, at which time there is a striking acceleration of strength in boys and a general plateau of strength in girls.

It should be remembered that the maximal force exerted by a muscle is quite different from the force exerted on the environment.

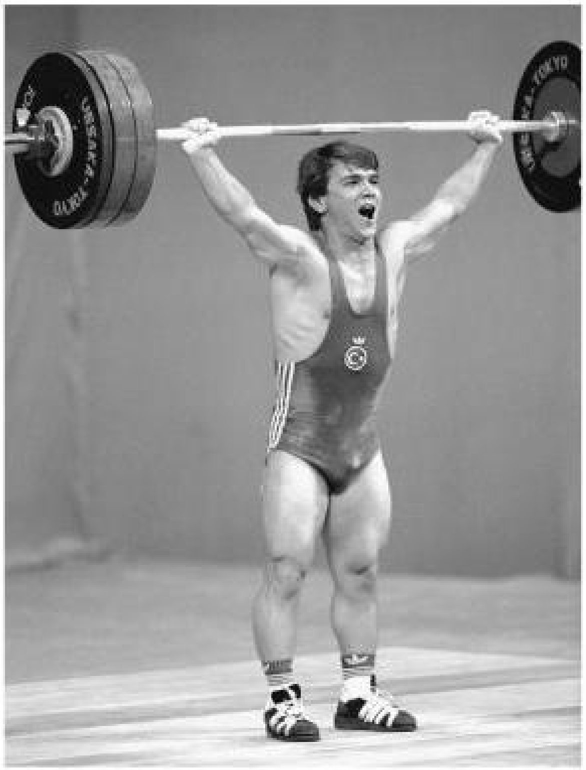
Strength gains that occur from inadequate workout stimuli may be indistinguishable from gains due to normal growth and development. If you want to see improvements beyond normal growth, prolonged periods of time and appropriate intensity and frequency of training must be employed.

Convincing evidence now exists that strength training is effective in youth (Kraemer and Fleck, 2005). Study upon study has shown that properly designed resistance training programs can facilitate the development of strength in prepubescents and adolescents beyond that which is normally due to growth and development. Young children at the age of 6 years have derived benefits from resistance training, and studies have been as long as 9 months in duration. To date, there is no clear evidence of any major difference in strength as measured by selected strength tests between prepubescent boys and girls.

Many aspects are involved in the growth and development of a young athlete. Growth is not based on one single factor such as height. Many factors influence development and fitness gains including genetic potential, nutrition, and sleep. Maturation has been defined as progress toward adulthood. Several areas can be considered when examining the maturation of a child:

- Physical size
- Bone maturity
- Reproductive maturity
- Emotional maturity

Each of these areas can be clinically evaluated. It is common for the family physician to make various assessments as to the development of a child in these areas. Each individual has a chronological age and a physiological age. Physiological age is the most important as it determines functional capabilities and performance, and this should be considered when developing a strength training program. Physiological age is related to the rate of maturation of a child, which can vary among children as maturity progresses differently over a chronological time frame.



Naim Suleymanoglu ("Pocket Hercules"), Olympic champion 1988, 1992, and 1996. Voted the best weightlifter of the 20th century, he was the first athlete to clean and jerk three times his body weight, which he accomplished when he was 16.

Physiological Mechanisms for Strength Development

Neural mechanisms appear to be the primary mechanism that mediates strength improvement in prepubescents. Several training studies have reported significant improvements in strength during prepubescence without corresponding increases in gross limb morphology. Without adequate concentrations of circulating growth factors and androgens to stimulate increases in muscle size, prepubescents appear to experience more difficulty increasing their muscle mass as compared to older individuals. Thus, programs should not emphasize such goals in prepubescent training programs.

Without corresponding increases in fat-free mass, it appears that neural adaptations (i.e., a trend toward increased motor unit activation and changes in motor unit coordination, recruitment, and firing) and possibly other intrinsic muscle adaptations appear to be primarily responsible for training-induced strength gains during prepubescence. Enhancements in motor skill performance and the coordination of the involved muscle groups may also play a significant role because measured increases in training-induced strength are typically greater than changes in neuromuscular activation.

Of dramatic influence is the role of testosterone secretion in boys compared to girls. During puberty testicular testosterone secretion in boys is associated with considerable increases in lean tissue mass as well as other sex-linked changes in shoulder width and facial hair. Training-induced strength gains during and after puberty in boys are reflected by this dramatic increase in circulating testosterone (see figure 10.1). It has been demonstrated that in order for young boys (14-17 years of age) to see a dramatic increase in testosterone after a workout, 2 years of training are needed (Kraemer and Fleck, 2005).

Other hormone and growth factors (e.g., growth hormones, insulin, and insulin-like growth factors) are also involved with anabolic signals in the body and may be especially important for muscular development in women. The growth hormone and insulin-like growth factor-1 (IGF-1) axis is recognized as both complex and polymorphic. This axis is composed of signal hormones coming from the hypothalamus to stimulate the release of growth hormone from the anterior pituitary gland. Released growth hormone then circulates in the blood and can stimulate the

Growth Is Pulsatile

The most rapid phase of growth occurs in utero. This rate ranges from 0.5 to 2.5 cm/week. Subsequently, postnatal growth is divided into three distinct phases: infancy, childhood, and puberty. During the first few years of life, the mean growth rate is 15 cm/year. This so-called infancy growth rate is dependent on fetal growth factors and contributes a mean of 79 cm to final adult male height. The growth rate slows in childhood, generally by 3 years of age, to an average rate of 6 cm/year. The childhood component of growth depends on growth hormone and contributes 85 cm of final height. The pubertal growth rate, which increases to a mean of 10 cm per year, is sex-steroid dependent, both by directly affecting growth as well as by augmenting growth hormone and IGF production.

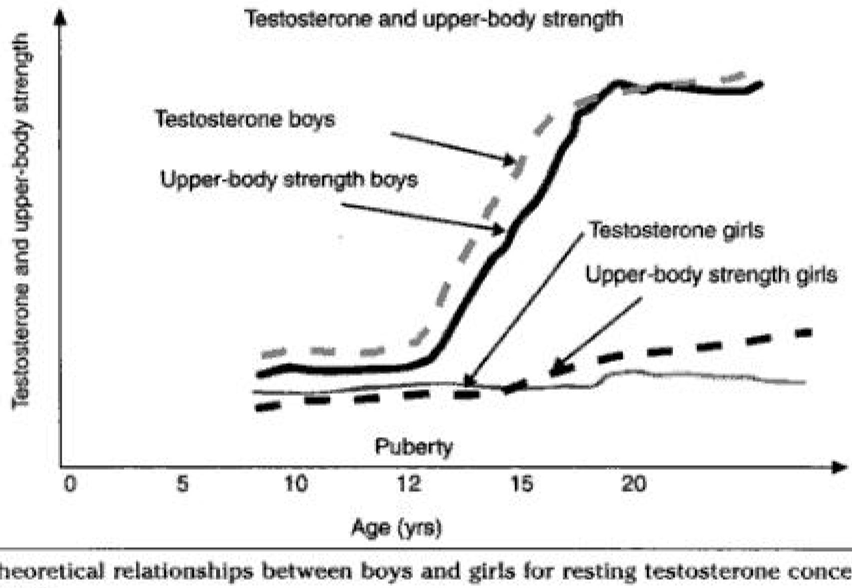


Figure 10.1 Theoretical relationships between boys and girls for resting testosterone concentrations and upper-body strength.

release of IGF-1 from the liver as well as stimulate muscle itself to engage the inherent IGF-1 in the muscle. Thus, growth hormone has many effects on many tissues when released from the pituitary gland. IGF-1 can interact with many tissues as well when released from the liver's hepatic cells, including muscle and bone tissues. Many anabolic hormones as well as growth factors are responsive both to physical growth and development and can be influenced by exercise.

BENEFITS OF STRENGTH TRAINING FOR YOUNG ATHLETES

Tremendous benefits can be gained from an appropriately designed and implemented strength training program for children. Confusion on this issue started with scientific studies in the 1970s on resistance training and children, which demonstrated few or no positive effects on strength. This caused many to think that there were no obvious benefits of strength training for children. However, a number of crucial experimental errors in design and testing allowed such erroneous conclusions to be drawn. All of the subsequent studies in the mid- to late 1980s and beyond have shown improvements in strength and increases in lean tissue mass after **adolescence,** when such changes are possible. The majority of the scientific evidence over the last 10 years, however, also strongly suggests that children can significantly increase their strength—independent from growth and maturation—providing that the resistance training program is long enough and of high enough intensity. The benefits may well reach beyond strength with improvements in other physiological systems such as connective tissue strength and density as well as improved physical performance and injury prevention (Kraemer and Fleck, 2005).

The primary benefits of strength training for children include

- increased muscular strength and local muscular endurance,
- improved sport performance,
- prevention of sport injuries, and
- development of lifelong exercise habits.

Strength Gains

For young athletes with no prior strength training, almost any type of program will yield some improvement in strength if progressed over time. Program variables of intensity, sets, and volume that are vital for younger athletes are not completely understood at this time, especially in younger individuals who have no resistance training experience. Nevertheless, the type of resistance training program used may well affect a specific type of training adaptation after initial adaptations are seen at a given age. This will require longer-term studies in the future. In addition, it appears that training programs will have to be periodized, or varied over time, or boredom could well limit adherence to a program.

Muscle strength gains as great as 74% have been reported following 8 weeks of progressive resistance training. On average, gains of roughly 30 to 50% are typically observed in children after short-term (8 to 20 weeks) resistance training programs. How much of these gains are related to motor **learning effects** in the early phase of training remains to be definitively determined. Relative (percent improvement) strength gains achieved during prepubescence have been reported as equal to if not greater than the relative gains observed during adolescence. Obviously, absolute strength gains (e.g., amount of weight lifted) appear to be greater in adolescents compared to prepubescents, and adults can make even greater absolute gains than young adolescents.

When a young athlete stops training, a detraining phenomenon starts, and if cessation from strength training is long enough, natural growth rates will help untrained peers catch up and the athlete's physical strength advantage will be lost. The rapid growth phases of young athletes appear to bring both the untrained and previously trained young athlete to the same point in physiological development if given enough time, especially during the growth years of prepubescence and adolescence.

In one study, after 20 weeks of strength training, maintenance performed once a week was not enough to maintain the strength gains of prepubescent boys, while a maintenance program of 1 day a week was just as sufficient as 2 days a week in retaining the strength gains made after 12 weeks of resistance training in a group of pubescent male athletes. Clearly, more information is required before specific training recommendations for maintenance can be made.

Nevertheless, it is apparent that for young athletes to maintain a physical advantage over their untrained peers, continued training of more than 1 day a week is needed.

Improved Sport Performance

Improvements in selected performances have been reported in children following resistance training programs. Several studies have reported increases in the long jump or vertical jump and decreases in sprint and agility run times. In contrast, reports of significant increases in strength without concomitant improvements in selected sport skills following a few weeks of strength training have also been reported, indicating a lack of transfer from the strength training program to the sport skills. Since the effects of resistance training are dependent on the duration, frequency, speed, and volume of the training stimulus, program design that is not specific enough may explain the lack of successful transfer.

When considering the influence of a strength training program on a sport skill, one must remember the principle of specificity. It appears that training adaptations in young athletes, like adults, are specific to movement pattern, velocity of movement, contraction type, and contraction force. How well the training programs match the biomechanical movement will determine in part the amount of transfer to the sport skill. Young athletes must also practice sport-specific skills. This begs the question as to when a young athlete should start to use sport-specific training methods. The answer to this question depends on the age of the athlete and how well the athlete has established a solid strength base to work from using core exercises.

While conclusions regarding the effects of strength training on sport performance during prepubescence and adolescence remain equivocal due to experimental design problems and limited training time to differentiate performance effects that have high skill components, physical development is certainly enhanced. Collectively, limited direct and indirect evidence as well as observations from older populations indicate that a commonsense sport-specific resistance training program will result in some degree of improvement in athletic performance. Curtailment of preseason and in-season practice sessions to allow time for sport preparatory resistance training seems reasonable providing that the training program is competently supervised, progressive, and of sufficient duration and intensity. In addition, periodized training programs in research designs are needed to optimize programs, especially long-term training programs.

Reduced Injury Risk

Children cannot "play" themselves into shape, because the loads and demands of sport activity do not stimulate improved muscle and connective tissue growth and strength. Therefore, one of the greatest benefits of youth resistance training may be its ability to better prepare children for participation in sport and recreational activities, thus reducing injury risk.

Parents and coaches may share the desire to reduce injury risk through strength training, but improvement in sport performance also plays an important role in their interest in having young athletes participate in this form of supplemental conditioning. Young athletes primarily view strength training from an improved sport-performance perspective and because many have seen role models in high school and college participate in such training. Professional organizations that seek to decrease the incidence of injury from sport and strength training can play a vital role in ensuring that this benefit is realized (Faigenbaum et al., 1996).

Lifelong Exercise Habits and Other Benefits

In addition to the prevention of injury and improved physical development to enhance sport performance, other benefits of strength training exist. Development of a young athlete's physical potential is the ultimate goal for any strength training program. However, probably the most important benefit is the development of an exercise habit if young athletes truly enjoy their time in the weight room. With rising rates of obesity around the world, increases in activity profiles are important for young children. In order to realize all of the potential physical and psychosocial health benefits of youth resistance training, though, coaches and instructors must appreciate the delicate psychological status and physical uniqueness of children.

Some of the other health and fitness benefits that can be gained from a properly designed and implemented strength training program for young athletes include

- improved blood pressure response to stress,
- improved bone mineral density,
- improved body composition profile, and
- improved psychological well-being.

With strength training, improved toleration to a sport or everyday activity stressor will help lower the cardiovascular response (e.g., blood pressure to a given task). Furthermore, it will help the body adapt and improve toleration to spikes in the blood pressure when maximal efforts are required. With stress, strain, compression, and bending of the bones from resistance training, the overall structure of the bone including bone density will be improved, an important benefit for young girls. Strength training can promote increases in the lean tissue mass (muscles and bones) and help to decrease body fat, giving one a better overall body composition profile. Strength training has been shown to enhance self confidence and body image as well as helping one just feel better psychologically. Such attributes are important for the young athlete and some of the benefits from a consistently performed strength training program.

MYTHS OF STRENGTH TRAINING FOR CHILDREN

Despite the myth that resistance training stunts the structural growth of children, current observations indicate that youth resistance training (up to 20 weeks) will not have an adverse affect on growth patterns. If age-specific physical activity guidelines as well as nutritional recommendations (e.g., adequate calcium) are adhered to, physical activity, including strength training, may favorably influence growth at any stage of development but will not affect the natural maximum height a young athlete can attain. Although health should not be defined as simply the absence of disease, an operational definition of health as it applies to children is difficult to define because the behaviors and exposures required to achieve optimal health remain debatable. Although it is tempting to extrapolate the findings from adult studies to children, caution must be exercised because what is deemed healthy for an adult may not necessarily be so for children. The extent to which current research supports the utility of youth strength training in the acquisition of favorable health-associated characteristics is limited. Nevertheless, this research supports the contention that the overall health of children is likely to improve rather than be adversely affected by strength training.

Young girls may have a different perspective depending on the sport and availability of weight rooms in school and health clubs. Too often girls associate strength training with masculine traits, and the fear of "getting big" or "getting muscles" limits some girls' participation. In such cases appropriate education and clarification of myths in strength training are necessary (e.g., girls cannot develop big muscles due to a lack of testosterone and number of muscle cells). In addition, role should be free to not participate in an exercise or sport program. It is up to the adults to provide a positive environment that protects and serves the children who participate.

Program for Beginners

It should be noted that the use of resistance programs using the child's own body weight and partner resistances can be effective in promoting muscular fitness. Concerns arise if the child is overweight and unable to exercise in the needed ranges of motion, in which case partner exercises can be substituted. For an extensive overview of body weight and partner exercises, see Kraemer and Fleck (2005). A child should have developed a basic fitness level before starting a weight training program.

Starting points and programs are dramatically different depending on age. Kraemer and Fleck (2005) have developed a profile of starting points at different ages, as can be seen in table 10.1. In the beginning of resistance training programs for younger children (5 and 6 years of age), body weight exercises and partner exercises should be used to develop basic strength and prepare them for other resistance exercise programs as they grow older. Again, care must be taken that their body mass does not overload them, resulting in few or no complete repetitions of an exercise. If limits exist, light dumbbells or partner resistance exercises can be used to develop the strength needed to facilitate performance of body weight exercises.

Specifics of Strength Training for Young Athletes

The development of a strength training program for young athletes should follow the same steps as the development of a program for adults. A well-organized and well-supervised basic training program for children need not be any longer than 20 to 60 min per training session, three times per week. The resistance training program should be conducted in an atmosphere conducive to both safety and enjoyment. The training environment should reflect the goals and expectations of a program. As the child gets older more advanced programs can be developed. Again, table 10.1 shows a program progression from 7 to 16 years of age. The child needs to

Table 10.1 Basic Guidelines for Resistance Exercise Progression in Children

Age (years)	Considerations
7 or younger	Introduce child to basic exercises with little or no weight; develop the concept of a training session; teach exercise techniques; progress from body weight calisthenics, partner exercises, and lightly resisted exercises; keep volume low.
8-10	Gradually increase the number of exercises, practice exercise technique for all lifts, start gradual progressive loading of exercises, keep exercises simple, increase volume slowly, carefully monitor toleration to the exercise stress.
11-13	Teach all basic exercise techniques, continue progressive loading of each exercise, emphasize exercise technique, introduce more advanced exercises with little or no resistance.
14-15	Progress to more advanced resistance exercise programs, add sport-specific components, emphasize exercise techniques, increase volume.
16 or older	Enter adult programs after background experience has been gained.

If a child enters an age level with no previous experience, progression must start at previous levels and move to more advanced levels as exercise toleration, skill, and understanding permit.

Adapted, by permission, from W.J. Kraemer and S.J. Fleck, 2005, *Strength training for young athletes*, 2nd ed. (Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics), 13.

NSCA's Position on Strength Training for Young Athletes

The following set of guidelines for development of strength training programs has been established by the NSCA (Faigenbaum et al., 1996).

- Each child should be physiologically and psychologically ready to participate in a resistance training program.
- Children should have realistic expectations. Remind children that it takes time to get in shape and learn a new skill.
- The exercise environment should be safe and free of potential hazards.
- The exercise session should include 5 to 10 min of warm-up and cool-down exercises (e.g., low-intensity aerobic exercise and stretching).
- The exercise equipment should be in good repair and properly sized to fit each child.
- All training sessions must be closely supervised by experienced fitness professionals. Ideally, these fitness professionals will possess certifications from national and recognized organizations (e.g., NSCA).
- Careful and competent instruction regarding exercise technique, training guidelines, and spotting procedures should be presented to all children.
- Weight room etiquette (e.g., returning weights to the proper place and respecting physical differences) should be taught to all children.
- Start with 1 set and 6 to 8 body-part exercises. Begin with relatively light loads (12-15RM) to allow for appropriate adjustments to be made.
- The resistance should be gradually increased as strength improves. A 5 to 10% increase in overall load is appropriate for most children.
- Progression may also be achieved by gradually increasing the number of sets, exercises, and training sessions per week (i.e., training volume). As a general guideline, 1 to 3 sets of 6 to 15 repetitions of 8 to 10 exercises performed 2 to 3 nonconsecutive days per week is recommended. Throughout the program, observe each child's physical and mental ability to tolerate the prescribed workout.
- Each child should feel comfortable with the prescribed program and should look forward to the next workout. If a child has concerns or problems with a training program, the fitness professional is expected to make the appropriate modifications.
- Following 6 to 8 weeks of general resistance training, specific multijoint structural exercises (bench press, squat, leg press) may be introduced into the training program based on individual needs and competencies. When performing any new exercise, start with a relatively light weight (or even a broomstick) to focus on learning the correct technique while minimizing muscle soreness.
- Following several months of resistance training, advanced multijoint structural exercises (e.g., Olympic lifts and modified cleans, pulls, and presses) may be incorporated into the program provided that appropriate loads are used and the focus remains on proper form. The purpose of teaching advanced multijoint lifts to children should be to develop neuromuscular coordination and skill technique. Explosive movements with heavy resistance should be avoided during prepubescence but may be introduced with caution during adolescence.
- If a child seems anxious about trying a new exercise, allow the child to watch a demonstration of the exercise. Teach the child how to perform the exercise and listen to each child's concerns.
- Incorporate the concept of periodization into a child's training program by systematically varying the resistance training program throughout the year.
- Discourage interindividual competition and focus on participation with lots of movement and positive reinforcement.
- Make sure that each child enjoys resistance training and is having fun. Do not force a child to participate in a resistance training program.
- Instructors and parents should be good role models. Showing support and encouragement will help to maintain interest.

- Children should be encouraged to drink plenty of fluids before, during, and after exercise.
- Encourage children to participate in a variety of sports and activities.

Age-specific training guidelines, program variations, and competent supervision will make resistance training programs safe, effective, and fun for young athletes. Instructors must understand the physical and emotional uniqueness of each child, and, in turn, children must appreciate the potential benefits and risks associated with resistance training. Although the needs, goals, and interests of children will continually change, strength training should be considered a fundamental and beneficial component of youth fitness and sport programs.

Reprinted, by permission, from National Strength Coaches Association.

be ready to participate in a strength training program and understand what is necessary in order to gain maximal benefits.

Exercise Classifications

Exercises can be classified in a number of ways.

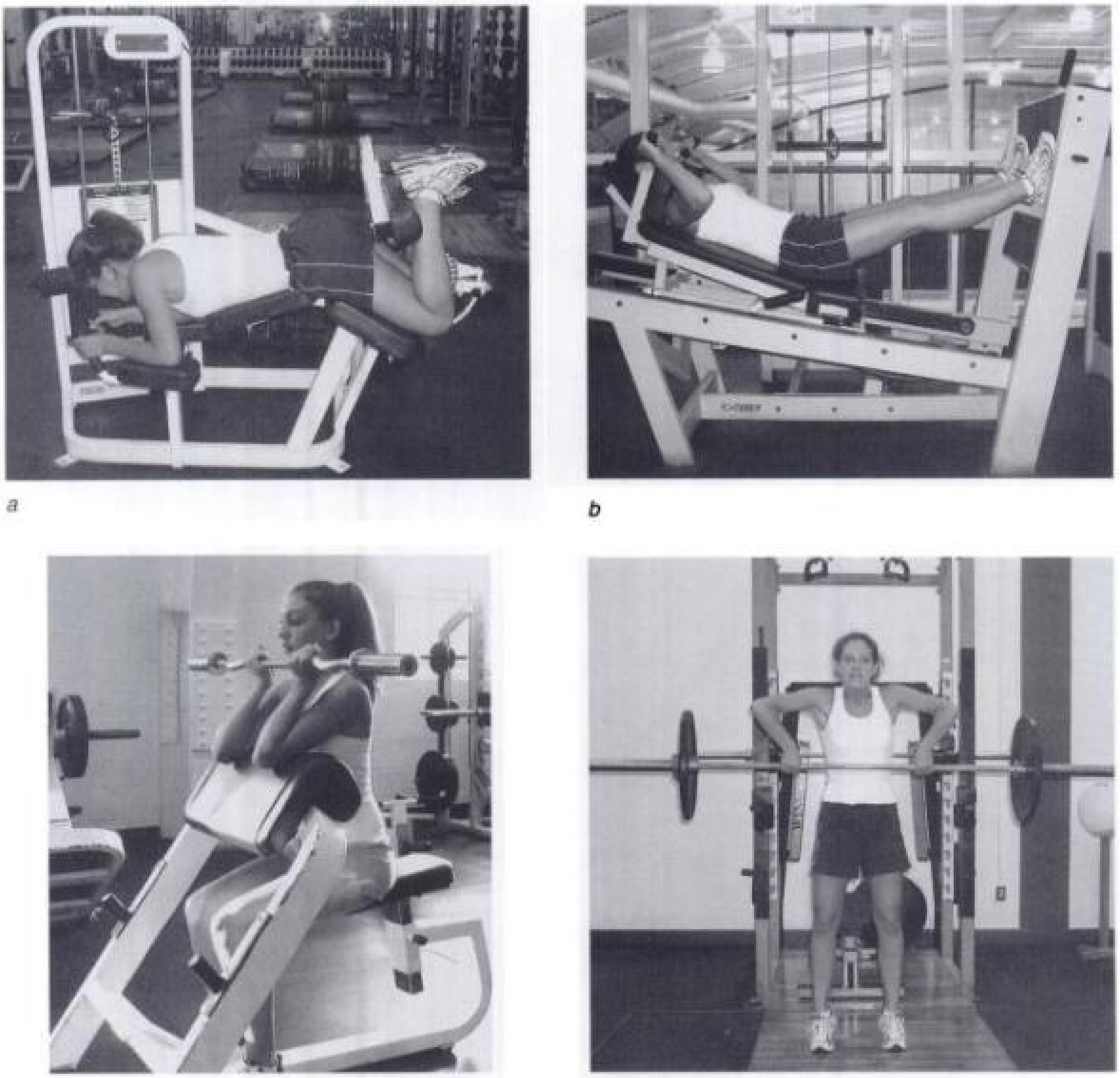
- Single-joint exercises only require the stimulation of muscles around one joint.
- Multijoint exercises use coordinated movements around more than one joint.
- Machine exercises fix the path of movement and the young athlete must fit the equipment used. No balance is needed that limits the use of assistance muscles.
- Free weight exercises do not fix the path of movement and they require balance and coordination to lift the weight and balance the moving mass. This requires the activation of many additional muscles for stabilizing the body position and assistant movers to help with the lift.
- Structural exercises require the whole body to lift the weight and require coordination in a multijoint exercise.

Examples of these different types of exercises can be seen in figure 10.2.

Program Variables

Initially, the resistance used for each exercise should be such that the minimum recommended number of repetitions can be performed. Once it is possible to perform the maximum number of repetitions the resistance is increased so that again the minimum number of repetitions can be performed. Form and spotting techniques should be continually stressed. The exercises should be performed in a controlled manner, which helps prevent injury due to losing control of the weights and also prevents damage to the weight stack of a machine or the free weights. Understanding how to perform an exercise and how to spot it is the first step in a successful strength training program, especially for young athletes.

Since the goals of a resistance training program are specific to the individual needs of each child, programs will differ. Various combinations of the acute program variables (i.e., choice of exercise, order of exercise, resistance used, number of sets, rest period lengths between sets and exercises) have proven to be safe and effective for children, provided that program developers use scientific information, established training principles, and common sense. Young athletes must perform all exercises using the correct technique, and the exercise stress (resistance and rest periods) must be carefully monitored to ensure that each child is tolerating the prescribed training program. The ideal approach is to incorporate resistance training into a periodized conditioning program in which the volume and intensity of training change throughout the year. Instructors must recognize the normal variance in maturation rates of young athletes and be aware of the genetic predispositions for physical development.



a b c d

Figure 10.2 Exercises are classified by the type of equipment used and the number of joints that are involved. *(a)* The leg curl is a single-joint, fixed-form weight machine exercise. *(b)* The leg press is a multijoint, fixed-form weight machine exercise. *(c)* The bilateral biceps curl is a free weight, free-form single-joint exercise. *(d)* The high pull exercise is an example of a free weight, free-form, multijoint structural exercise.

Children must not be treated as small adults, nor should adult exercise guidelines and training philosophies be imposed on children.

Sample Program

The following sample program for football demonstrates some of the principles discussed in this chapter. As with any sample program, use it only as a guideline for different aspects of various sports. For more program profiles, see Kraemer and Fleck (2005).

Playing football requires speed, strength, and power. The requirements for each position are somewhat different; yet improving these three factors with resistance training can enhance sport performance and prevent

Strength Training Program for Football

Off-Season Program

Warm-up: General exercise consisting of jogging or cycling for about 5 min followed by a general stretching routine.

Exercises

The lifter performs exercises in the order listed. Italics indicate exercises that can be periodized for resistance within this phase.

- *Bench press*
- *Squat or leg press*
- *Overhead press*
- *Knee curl*
- Seated row
- Knee extension
- Elbow curl
- Abdominal exercise

Approximate Time

- Three training sessions per week with at least 1 day separating sessions
- 60 to 70 min per session

Additional Injury-Prevention Exercises

- Neck exercise
- Shoulder rotator cuff exercises
- Calf raise

Additional or Replacement Exercises

- *Deadlift*
- Lat pull-down
- Lunge
- *Front squat*
- *Narrow-grip bench press*

Advanced Exercises

- The lifter should perform no more than 5 repetitions per set, using 8- to 10RM resistance for advanced exercises. If an advanced exercise is used, it should be performed at the beginning of the training session.
- Power clean or clean pull from knee or thigh level
- Power snatch or snatch pull from knee or thigh level

Off-Season Program Notes

- Format: Set–repetition
- Number of sets: 2 to 3
- Resistance: 10- to 12RM
- Rest periods between sets and exercises: 2 to 3 min
- Repetitions per set for abdominal exercises: 20 to 30
- Other: Quarterbacks and offensive linemen perform supplemental shoulder girdle exercises.

Preseason Program

Warm-up: General exercise consisting of jogging or cycling for about 5 min followed by general stretching.

Exercises

The lifter performs exercises in the order listed. Italics indicate exercises that can be periodized for resistance within this training phase.

- Incline bench press
- *Back squat*
- Lat pull-down
- Knee curl
- Reverse elbow curl or elbow curl
- Abdominal exercise
- Shoulder internal rotation and shoulder external rotation (especially for quarterbacks)

Approximate Time

- Three training sessions per week with at least 1 day separating sessions
- 30 to 45 min per session

Additional Injury-Prevention Exercises

- Calf raise
- Additional shoulder rotator cuff exercises
- Neck exercise
- Knee extension

(continued)

Additional or Replacement Exercises

- *Narrow-grip bench press*
- Seated row or bent-over rowing
- *Bench press*
- Wrist curl
- Deadlift

Advanced Exercises

- The lifter should perform no more than 5 repetitions per set using 8- to 10RM resistance for advanced exercises. If an advanced exercise is used, it should be performed at the start of the training session.
- Power clean or clean pull from knee or thigh level
- Power snatch or snatch pull from knee or thigh level

Preseason Program Notes

- Format: Set–repetition
- Number of sets: 3
- Resistance: 8- to 10RM
- Rest periods between sets and exercises: 1.5 to 2 min
- Repetitions per set for abdominal exercises: 20 to 30

In-Season Program

Warm-Up: General exercise consisting of jogging or cycling for about 5 min followed by a general stretching routine.

Exercises

The lifter performs exercises in the order listed.

- Overhead press
- Back squat
- Bench press
- Knee curl
- Neck exercise
- Knee extension
- Shoulder internal rotation and shoulder external rotation
- Abdominal exercise

Approximate Time

- One to two training sessions per week with at least 1 day separating sessions
- 25 to 45 min per session

Additional Injury-Prevention Exercises

- None

Additional or Replacement Exercises

- Incline bench press
- Seated row
- Lat pull-down
- Lunge
- Front squat
- Calf raise
- Narrow-grip bench press

Advanced Exercises

- The lifter should perform no more than 5 repetitions per set using an 8- to 10RM resistance for advanced exercises. If an advanced exercise is used, it should be performed at the beginning of the training session.
- Power clean or clean pull from knee or thigh level
- Power snatch or snatch pull from knee or thigh level

In-Season Program Notes

- Format: Set–repetition or circuit
- Number of sets or circuits: 2 to 3
- Resistance: 8- to 10RM
- Rest periods between sets and exercises: 1 to 2 min
- Repetitions per set for abdominal exercises: 20 to 30

A strength training program for young football players should focus on improving speed, strength, and power.

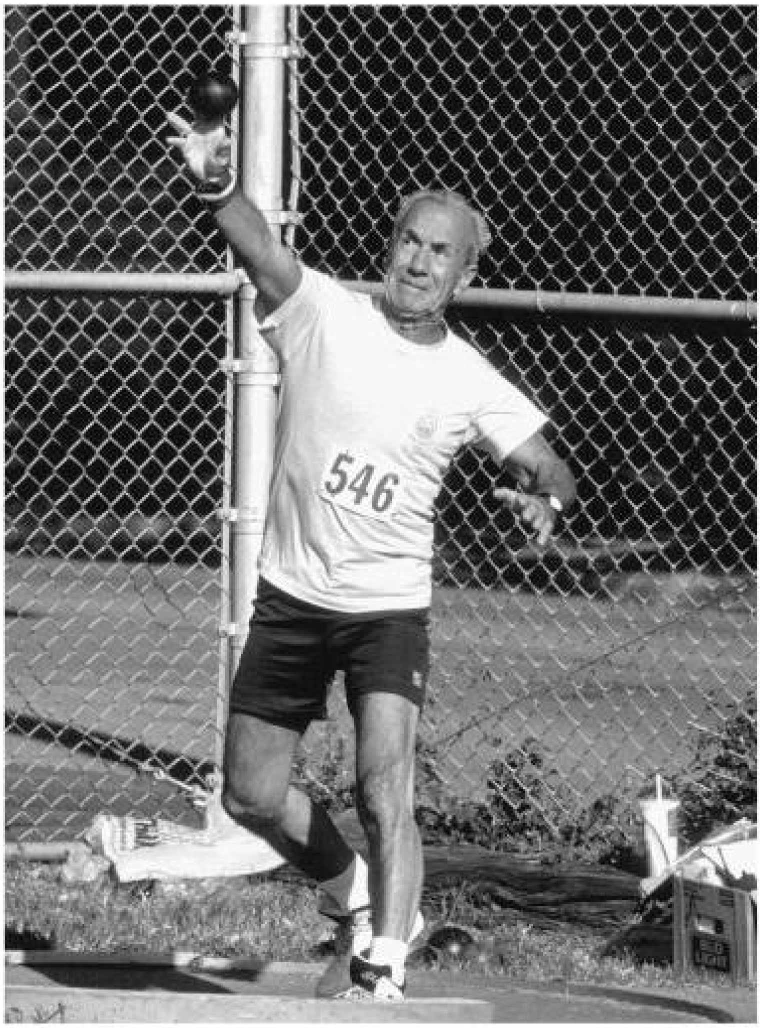
injury. In this sport the young athlete must be physically prepared to play in such a way that prevents injury. Quarterbacks need to focus on exercise for the shoulders. All players need to perform exercises for the neck, shoulders, knees, and ankles, areas where injuries frequently occur.

SUMMARY

Strength training can be an effective and important part of a young athlete's conditioning program. It has been shown to be effective for children of all ages if proper program design principles are followed. Correct exercise techniques and spotting are required for optimal safety, along with competent adult supervision. Core strength and power development is needed along with sport-specific training to facilitate carryover to sport performance. In addition, strength training can provide many health and fitness benefits, from the development of a solid exercise habit to improved bone health. Successful results are a function of optimal program design and implementation.

Copyrighted Material

chapter 11



Strength Training for Senior Athletes

Dramatic changes occur in the sixth decade of life, but physical training, including strength training, can elevate the function and physiological status of individuals well above their expected aging curve. Recent evidence indicates that muscle responses to resistance training are rapid and the plasticity of muscle is maintained into older age. Strength training may be one of the more dramatic conditioning modalities to help fight the aging process, allow greater functionality for everyday activities and sport performance, and improve health profiles of older adults (Häkkinen, 2003). Pro-

Strength training, such as functional isometric training for the low back, can enhance physical function and fight the negative effects of aging, especially after the sixth decade of life.

gressive resistance training principles can be maintained into old age and progression is still possible (Kraemer et al., 2002; Fleck and Kraemer, 2003). Athletes must be ready to take on the rigors of competition, as injuries in the older athlete take longer to heal and can radically and permanently affect physical performance. Thus, physical preparation and attention to detail in sport performance skills are vital. Strength training can provide the needed physical development to tolerate the stresses associated with sport practice and competition.

AGE AND ITS EFFECTS ON STRENGTH AND POWER

Aging is a function of genetics, but it is also influenced by physical activity profiles. The most dramatic problem with aging beyond pathologies is disuse syndromes that can affect many different physiological systems and both form and function in the human body. Improvements in muscle, bone, immune, endocrine, and cardiovascular systems can be realized by following conditioning programs that are properly prescribed and progressive over time (Singh, 2004).

The main challenge facing older adults is to maintain the magnitude of physical function and capability with aging. As one ages, a decline in physical capabilities occurs. With strength training the ability to maintain function is promoted. Figure 11.1 shows the typical aging curve for men with age and how strength training elevates this function above that of non-trained individuals.

Older strength athletes have demonstrated impressive physical capabilities. Power lifting world records for men in the 60+ age category are as follows: 164 kg for the bench press, 203 kg for the squat, and 282.5 kg for the deadlift. The world records for younger men in the open division are as follows: 287.5 kg for the bench press, 423 kg for the squat, and 390 kg for the deadlift. This demonstrates the dramatic range of capabilities across age, and the evidence indicates that muscle is still responsive to resistance training at all ages. Interestingly, Anton et al. (2004), who examined various records from both power lifting and weightlifting, have found that

1. peak anaerobic muscular power, as assessed by peak lifting performance, decreases progressively from even earlier ages than previously thought;
2. the overall magnitude of decline in peak muscular power appears to be greater in tasks requiring more complex and powerful movements;
3. age-related rates of decline are greater in women than in men only in the events that require more complex and explosive power; and
4. upper- and lower-body muscular power demonstrate a similar rate of decline with age.

Older Athletes Benefit From Sport Participation

Athletic participation has many benefits for the older athlete in terms of continued participation in society. Older athletes suffer less tension, fatigue, depression, confusion, and anger and have improved vigor.

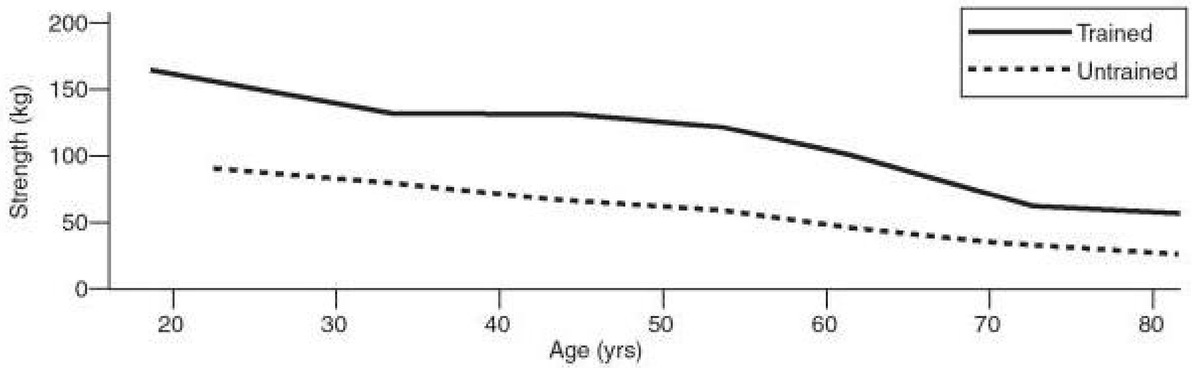


Figure 11.1 Changes with age in 1RM squat strength in men.

Thus, as shown in figure 11.1, aging affects neuromuscular function but the magnitude of loss in a trained individual is far less than that in an untrained individual. It appears that continued strength training may be needed to maintain its benefits into older age.

As with any activity the key is to get involved with that activity early in life, and strength training is no different. Early participation in a strength training program will influence the absolute magnitude of physical strength and power an individual is capable of producing (see chapter 10). In addition, neurological learning and robust physiological capabilities can enhance maturation and growth. Training during younger years, even from preadolescence, affects many developmental factors at crucial times in life (e.g., adolescence). Just as dramatic changes in endocrine function occur at the beginning of maturity for boys and girls, significant changes in endocrine function occur later in life during **andropause** (i.e., reduction in male hormones that usually occurs around the age of 50) in men and **menopause** (i.e., cessation of menstruation, usually between the ages of 45 and 55) in women. These are all important physiological markers of changes in the endocrine system and occur at different chronological ages. These periods have been called trigger points in physical development, as they mediate the robustness of the body's response to physical change and development.

Loss of Physiological Potential

The loss of muscle fibers with age and the destruction of viable motor units can both lead to muscle weakness. The greatest losses appear to take place in the high-threshold, fast motor units, which may be more susceptible to disuse over time. This loss is especially dramatic in women, who start out with a lower number of muscle fibers to begin with. **Sarcopenia** is the loss of muscle fiber size and whole muscle mass that results in diminished strength with age. As noted, it is part of a normal aging process even in master athletes. However, function can be maintained above the norm with the use of a strength and power training program. Inactivity may accelerate programmed cell death (i.e., apoptosis) when cells reach a critical minimal cell size, and significant sarcopenia contributes to a loss of function, to greater risk of illness, and to mortality. The causes of sarcopenia are unclear, but four important factors have been implicated:

1. Loss of alpha motor neurons
2. Decline in muscle cell contractility
3. Changes in hormonal factors, such as androgen and estrogen withdrawal
4. Increase in production of catabolic cytokines

It appears that even in older athletes such changes occur, albeit on a much lower level.

Strength and power training influences the function and integrity of the underlying cells, tissues, and physiological systems that are paramount for maintaining functional abilities needed for performance.

Cell Size Hypothesis

It is possible that each cell in the body has a minimum size that is set by genetic predisposition. When a cell shrinks below this size, cell death may occur. The loss of muscle fibers with aging may be a result of muscle cell death or loss of contact with the nerve, resulting in denervation. Muscle fibers are lost with age, but other fibers undergo a reinnervation process with increased activity. Lost muscle fibers are subsequently replaced with fat or fibrous connective tissue. The loss of muscle fibers compromises the individual motor unit's functional ability to produce force and affects basic metabolic functions of the entire muscle (such as caloric expenditure, which is reduced due to reduced muscle mass).

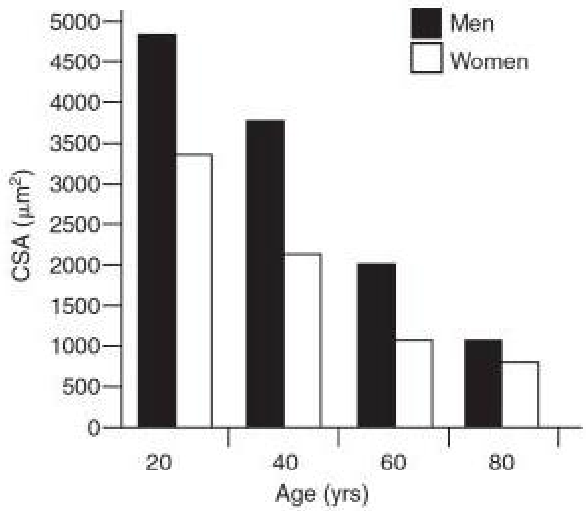


Figure 11.2 Changes in CSA of type II muscle fibers of vastus lateralis in men and women with age (n = 12 in each group). The CSA in men was significantly greater than in women at each age ($p < .05$).
Unpublished data from Dr. Kraemer's laboratory.

Critical Age-Dependent Thresholds for Strength Loss

Under normal conditions strength performance appears to peak between the ages of 20 and 30, after which changes in strength remain relatively stable or slightly decrease over the next 20 years. It is in the sixth decade of life when a more dramatic decrease occurs in both men and women. This decrease may be more dramatic in women, and cross-sectional studies may have seriously underestimated the magnitude of strength loss with age. This magnitude may be due to a lower level of absolute muscle fiber size with age. Figure 11.2 demonstrates the loss in the cross-sectional area (CSA) of type II fibers with age.

It appears that muscle strength loss is most dramatic after the age of 70. Cross-sectional as well as longitudinal data indicate that muscle strength declines by approximately 15% per decade in the sixth and seventh decades and about 30% thereafter. Maintenance of higher physiological and functional abilities appears to be mediated only with maintenance of training. As force is the product of mass and acceleration, in order to optimize force stimuli some accelerative emphasis should be used in training.

Power Production Loss

It has been known for over a decade that the ability to produce power is an important physical capability in the older adult, especially the older athlete. Correlations have been observed in both men and women between various measures of power and functional abilities. As already described in this book, power is specific to task characteristics, with load and percent of maximum strength determining the actual power output needed to complete a task.

Younger men and women have the ability to produce force more rapidly than their older counterparts. Force productions in the 0-200 msec range on the force–time curve are compromised by age. This is most likely due to absolute losses in fast-twitch alpha motor units or a decrease in other size factors. As shown in figure 11.2, the cross-sectional size of type II muscle fibers and thus the contractile proteins decrease with age. Such differences can be seen when comparing a span of ages for men and women. This characteristic may decrease even quicker than 1RM strength due to the inherent reliance upon very high-threshold motor units, which are complemented with type II muscle fibers. It has been estimated that such rapid force production capabilities may be lost at a rate of 3.5 to 4.5% a year from the ages of 65 to 84 years with up to 50 to 70% loss in power capability from 20 to 75 years of age depending upon the starting physiological profile of an individual. Vertical jump power and performance have been lost with age, reflecting the loss of elastic components of connective tissue. In addition, cell dehydration and water loss with age along with sarcopenia may help explain such age-related decrements in power performances.

Underlying Reasons for Strength Loss With Age

Many different studies have indicated that a decrease in muscle mass is the primary reason for the reduction in force production capabilities with age. This can even be observed in individuals who train but do not optimize force production with their loading routines. It appears that this effect on muscle mass is independent of muscle location (upper versus lower extremities) and function (extension versus flexion). The decline in muscle mass is due to the reduction in the size of the individual muscle fibers and the loss of individual muscle fibers. It also appears there is a preferential loss of type II (fast-twitch) muscle fibers with aging. The observed decline is more marked in type II muscle fibers, which fall from an average 60% in sedentary young men to below 30% after the age of 80. From examining elite weightlifters and their performances, we might speculate that the loss of high-threshold motor units containing type II muscle fibers may be reduced above the age-matched controls but is not prevented as decrements occur.

As noted by Anton et al. (2004), the decrease in the muscle's ability to exert force rapidly (power development) appears to also diminish more dramatically with age. The ability of muscles to produce force rapidly is vital and may serve as a protective mechanism when falling. The ability to make rapid direction changes and accelerations will also be affected by the loss of power.

TRAINING FOR STRENGTH GAINS

Research over the past 25 years has demonstrated that strength can be improved with a variety of protocols in older individuals. Improvements in maximal force production have ranged from 18 to 113% from pretraining values in older individuals from 60 to 96 years old (Häkkinen, 2003). Learning effects on maximal testing most likely contribute to some of the higher percentage gains. The highest gains in strength are seen in the musculature of the lower body. Aging will reduce an individual's force production capabilities. However, at the present time no data exist to characterize the expected gains in strength that are possible at different ages. It appears that the relative improvements in muscle strength, especially from an untrained status, can be observed at any age. With 48 weeks of training, strength gains are greater over the first 24 weeks of a program compared to the last 24 weeks, indicating that older individuals achieve much of the gains in strength within the first 6 months for a given exercise movement.

Motor Unit Activation and Muscle Hypertrophy

It appears that large gains in strength are related to the increases in motor unit activation of trained muscles. Hypertrophy contributes to muscle strength as the training time elongates and nutritional intakes are adequate. Large individual variations are observed and are thought to relate to the individual's previous activity profile, health, and recovery abilities.

Muscle hypertrophy is a primary mechanism to help mediate muscle strength increases. Type I and type II muscle fibers have been observed to increase in cross-sectional area. On average type II muscle fibers increase their cross-sectional area to a greater degree than type I muscle fibers if the loading in the training program includes heavy resistance. Heavier loading with higher forces will allow recruitment of the high-threshold MUs and more completely activate available muscle tissue. Muscle hypertrophy across the length and diameter of the muscle will vary based on activation conditions of the strength training protocol. A significant number of MUs must be activated in order for whole-muscle hypertrophy to be observed. This requires large muscle–group exercises (e.g., squats) be used with heavy loading cycles for upper- and lower-body exercise movements.

Hormonal Secretions

With older age comes a dramatic reduction in many of the hormonal secretions in response to a strength training protocol or exercise stimulus. This phenomenon occurs in both men and women and manifests itself in part in such conditions as menopause in women and andropause in men. Such age-related changes in endocrine gland function reduce the ability of the body to respond with the same magnitude of signals for protein synthesis and metabolic support as that seen with younger individuals. This reduced anabolic hormonal response (e.g., testosterone, growth hormone, IGF-1, insulin) explains many of the reduced physiological adaptations to training. Figure 11.3 shows the difference between 30- and 62-year-old men. Even over a short training period older men are more responsive to the training stimulus, which demonstrates the more dynamic response capability of youth.

Male Andropause

With age, a reduction in the endocrine glands' capabilities to synthesize and secrete anabolic hormones (e.g., testosterone, growth hormone, IGF-1) occurs. In consequence, lower concentrations of the hormones are found in the blood. In some cases the concentrations are so low that physicians prescribe anabolic drugs to supplement natural production in order to limit the negative effects of reduced hormone levels on muscle and bone.

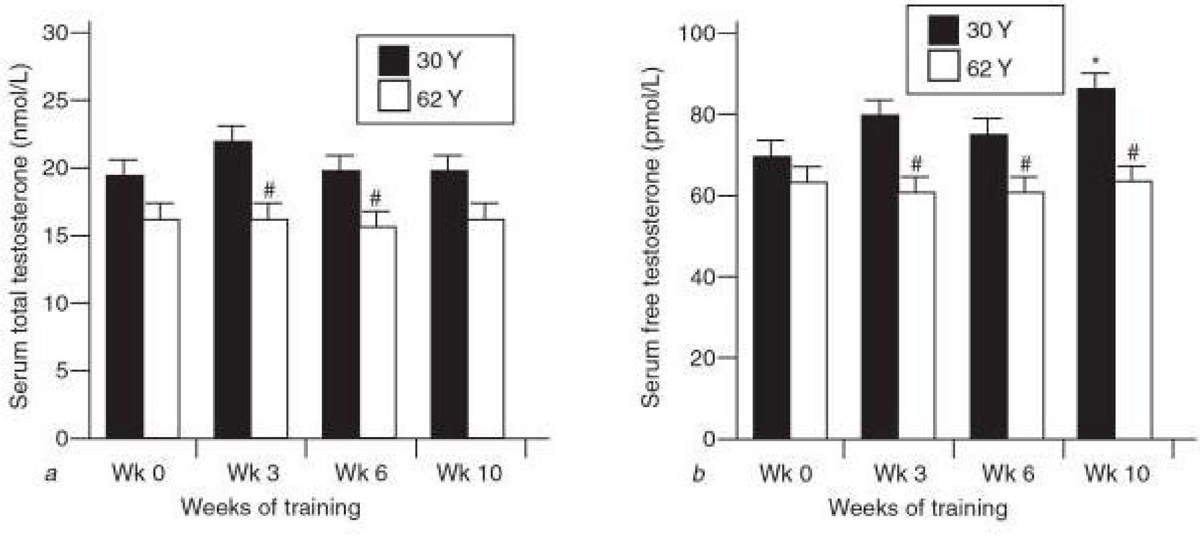


Figure 11.3 Differences in testosterone between 30-year-old and 62-year-old men over 10 weeks of periodized strength training. # = significant difference between both groups and * = significant increase in serum-free testosterone in the 30-year-olds at 10 weeks of training.

Adapted, by permission, from W.J. Kraemer et al., 1999, "Effects of heavy resistance training on hormonal response patterns in younger vs. older men," *Journal of Applied Physiology* 87(3): 982-992.

Such changes underscore the need for longer recovery periods and explain why the absolute magnitude of changes in older athletes will not be similar to the magnitude of changes in younger athletes.

TRAINING FOR MUSCULAR POWER

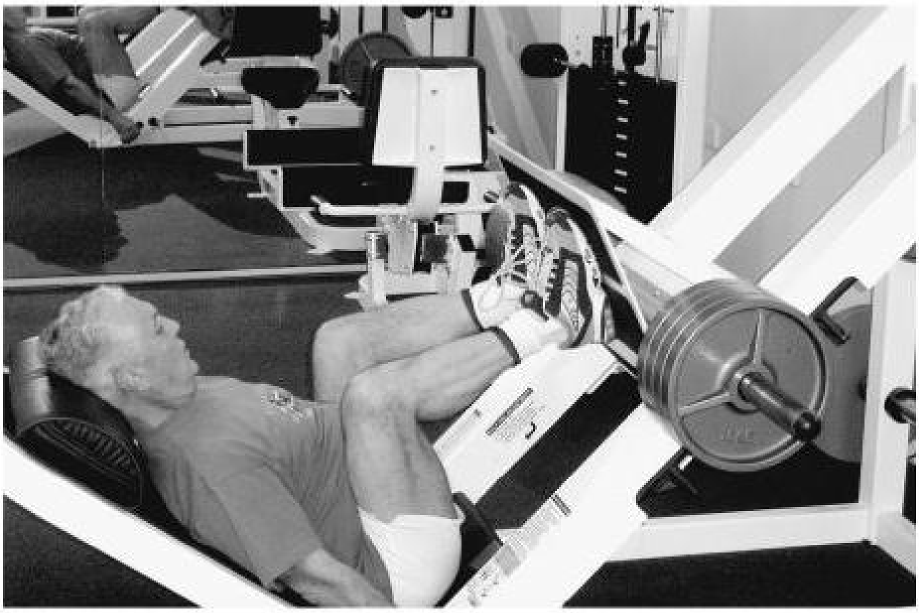
Initial scientific studies directed at improving power capabilities in older individuals over short training cycles met with little success. Reasons for limited improvements appear to be the limited amount of time spent on the training component, the exercise choices, and the natural age losses in the neuromuscular system. Training with the use of power exercises (e.g., hang pulls, hang cleans, weighted jumps) or machines that allow the performance of explosive, high-speed power repetitions (e.g., pneumatics with no deceleration for fixed-form exercises) is needed. Subsequently such changes in program design have demonstrated that power improvements are possible in older adults.

Loss of Neurological Function With Age

There is some evidence that the actual number of fast motor units decreases slightly after age 50, about 10% per decade. If athletes stop training, they appear to have a greater percentage of slow-twitch fibers, which is thought to be primarily due to the selective atrophy or loss of fast fibers.

Power changes have typically been observed at the various percents of 1RM that are used in training. This typically has ranged from 30 to 55% of the 1RM or a percent of body mass (50-70%). Thus, peak mechanical power at higher percentages of the 1RM can be produced by a strength training program but is highly dependent upon the force and power components of the program.

Training for muscular power in the older adult depends on a number of factors. One must train each part of the power equation



Training for muscular strength can be achieved across the life span of an athlete. Even athletes in their 70s have shown impressive physical capabilities. Optimal training is dependent upon a solid strength base with the use of proper exercises in a periodized program.

with strength and power exercises by doing the following:

1. Using proper exercises that eliminate large portions of deceleration through the range of motion for the exercise.
2. Loading 30 to 40% of the 1RM for training maximal mechanical power.
3. Optimizing the acceleration component of the force equation.
4. Using plyometric exercises including vertical jumps and medicine ball exercises for upper-body power development.
5. Using optimal recovery times between high force or high power loading days, which may range from 3 to 7 days.
6. Using weight machines that allow for high-speed movements to occur without a large deceleration of the limb due to the need for protection of joint stability and function. Pneumatic resistances have been developed that are capable of producing this type of modality for training for speed and power. Isokinetic resistances have also been used for this purpose but are limited in exercise choice and availability.

NUTRITION, AGING, AND EXERCISE CHALLENGES

Research on nutrition, longevity, and fitness has proliferated almost exponentially. For the older athlete who continues to exercise and compete, it is even more important to have dietary habits that meet energy demands and provide needed nutrients for tissue repair (Campbell and Geik, 2004). With age there is a loss of cell water, making hydration and proper fluid intake mandatory, especially when strength training. As little as a 3% dehydration level can result in a loss of strength over 24 to 48 h. Water intake over the day is vital for every athlete but especially for older athletes. Not only is it important for thermal and fluid regulation, but one of the first signals for muscular hypertrophy is related to cell swelling, or the uptake of water into the cell to prepare for changing osmotic demands of protein accretion that leads to muscle fiber hypertrophy. According to Campbell and Geik (2004), older athletes need to consider the following points when they examine their dietary habits:

1. Nutrient intake must be monitored to ensure adequacy, especially regarding carbohydrate to promote glucose storage and use as an energy source during exercise.
2. Protein intake must be monitored to promote muscle hypertrophy.
3. Emphasis should also be placed on the dietary intake of certain micronutrients, as well as the potential need for supplementation of certain vitamins and minerals, including the vitamins B_2, B_6, B_{12}, D, E, and folate, and the minerals calcium and iron.
4. Age-associated changes in thermoregulation and an increased susceptibility to dehydration underscore the importance of adequate fluid intake to sustain health and performance.

Nutrition is a tool that the older athlete should use to enhance exercise performance and health. Nutrient timing of intakes around workouts is important. To promote protein synthesis, essential amino acids and carbohydrate should be ingested about 30 min before and after a workout. The insulin response from the carbohydrate along with the availability of amino acids will aid the older athlete's protein synthesis and recovery from the workout.

Improved nutrition and dietary management should enhance the effects of resistance training on muscle mass in older individuals. There is a need for adequate protein in order to support muscle hypertrophy in older athletes. The need for protein may exceed the recommended RDA value of $0.8\ g \cdot kg^{-1} \cdot day^{-1}$ (Campbell and Geik, 2004). Without the necessary protein and other nutrients, increases in lean body mass will be compromised. Adequate intake of vitamins, minerals, micronutrients, and macronutrients is vital for optimal function in the recovery and remodeling process of tissues with resistance exercise and training.

RECOVERY FROM RESISTANCE EXERCISE

Recovery is vital to all athletes, but especially to older athletes. The period after the workout is critical for optimal repair of tissues. Replacement of energy loss as well as proper rest are as important a part of program design as the strength training protocol itself.

Rest Between Workouts

It might be speculated that as people get older, muscles require longer periods of time to recover between exercise sessions. Muscle and connective tissue take longer to repair due to reductions in water content of cells as well as reductions in the body's natural hormonal signal strength. This indicates that the workout needs to be varied in intensity and volume so that recovery can take place, especially after workouts where sufficient muscle damage has occurred with heavy loads, eccentric loads, or high volumes.

Muscle biopsy studies have shown that 7 to 10% of muscle fibers exhibit damage after a typical workout in older individuals, and this might be higher in older athletes using much more dramatic training protocols. It appears that muscle damage is very evident in older individuals and is similar in younger and older men using standard strength training protocols. In another study it was shown that older women exhibited higher percentages of muscle damage for a given muscle than younger women in response to a heavy resistance training workout. This appears to be due to the smaller size of the muscles in older women compared to younger women, producing a greater amount of tension per cross-sectional area of muscle. The lower absolute muscle mass and fewer operational motor units combine to create a much larger percentage of damaged area.

Oxidative Damage

When examining markers of oxidative damage to DNA in younger and older men and women, significant oxidative damage was observed in the older individuals, with more oxidative damage observed in older men. This oxidative damage may be regulated by hormonal factors since a gender difference exists. How exercise affects these markers remains unclear, as exercise can increase oxidative stress due to acute muscle tissue damage and resulting inflammation. We know that strength training does provide a protective effect from eccentric damage, which may result in faster recovery. However, this recovery length will depend on the amount of damage produced by the exercise protocol. In some cases, older lifters may only use a very heavy day once every 2 weeks. Depending upon the specific program goals, heavy and very heavy days need to be carefully placed in an exercise program. Various periodization models will facilitate this need.

Toleration of pH Changes

The toleration of high intensity activity is important in most sports. Changes in the acid–base status and toleration of changes in the pH of the body's tissues, especially muscle and blood, are an important aspect of conditioning. Part of this needed adaptation can be addressed in a strength training program. Toleration of changes in pH decreases as one gets older, most likely due to the lack of training that creates such metabolic conditions.

It has now been established that lactate is not the cause of the pH changes, as it is just a by-product of glycolysis that in fact contributes to the buffering capacity of the body. ATP hydrolysis contributes to the changes observed, and development of both an intracellular and intercellular buffering capacity can improve toleration to such dramatic changes as seen in sport competitions.

Gradual reductions in rest periods between sets and exercises (e.g., 3-4 min to 1-2 min) in a strength training protocol can help an individual adapt and better meet such a physiological challenge by improving buffer capacity of the blood and muscle tissue. It has been observed that it takes about 2 training sessions per week for 8 weeks to improve buffering capacity. However, it may take weeks to progress to the level needed to stimulate

Over-the-Counter Therapeutics

Recent clinical studies recently concluded that a topical cream consisting of a blend of natural oils called cetylated fatty acids significantly increased range of motion and physical performance in older individuals with osteoarthritis of the knee with no reported side effects (Kraemer et al., 2004). Such topical creams can help older individuals improve their trainability by reducing pain and improving balance along with range of motion.

changes in the buffer capacity. It is vital that signs of fatigue be monitored carefully as this may be the most dramatic training for older athletes, comparable to preparing for 400-m and 800-m track events. If signs of nausea, light-headedness, or dizziness occur, the workout should be stopped immediately. The lengths of the rest periods should be increased for the next training session so that no symptoms occur. Such symptoms can indicate serious underlying disease or metabolic demands that are too high.

Joint Stress

One important aspect of recovery is the amount of joint stress experienced after the workout. Heavy loads will produce more extensive compressive forces, and this is augmented by the type of exercise used. A key factor appears to be how many reps are done to failure. While going to failure may be a popular training style, it may also produce greater compression and shear stresses on joints. Since most individuals can tell when they can do another repetition or not, limiting the set within a repetition zone of 3 repetitions (e.g., target a load that allows 3-5 reps but do not try to squeeze out the last rep of every set) limits the joint aches and pains during the recovery period. This type of training has been successfully used by cardiac patients where the fear of a Valsalva maneuver may be realized if they try to push out a final repetition to failure.

STRENGTH TRAINING AND BONE HEALTH

Development of connective tissue (i.e., bones, tendons, ligaments, noncontractile elements in the muscle tissue) with strength and power training is vital for injury prevention as well as health in the older athlete. Older master female athletes have been shown to have stronger bones and be less prone to osteoporosis compared to normal controls as well as master athletes who only participate in endurance training.

In order to withstand the compressive forces, eccentric loadings, and stress demands on the body with sport, connective tissue must be strong enough to contribute a significant elastic element. The bones must be able to take on the rigors of structural integrity during sport competition. This requires a strength training program that uses proper exercise loads and forces needed to develop connective tissue strength. Bone as a structural tissue responds to strain, compression, and strain rates to adapt. Exercise prescriptions must reflect these loading requirements.

STRENGTH TRAINING GUIDELINES FOR SENIOR ATHLETES

The principles of program design are the same no matter what the athlete's age. Because of variations in the functional capacity of many older individuals, the best program is individualized to meet the needs and medical concerns of each person. At present only a limited number of studies have examined periodized strength training programs for older adults. While more research is needed, it appears that periodized strength training may better optimize training programs for older adults. In addition, the inclusion of functional resistance training (i.e., use of exercises in an unstable environment) appears to significantly improve muscle balance, strength, and functional capacity, especially when incorporated into a weight training program.

Injury Potential and Aging

It appears that older athletes are more prone to certain injuries, including rotator cuff and bicipital tendinitis, patellofemoral arthrosis, trochanteric (hip) bursitis, quadriceps tendinitis and rupture, gastrocnemius tear, bone fractures (in postmenopausal women), and discogenic low back pain. For example, injury prevention can be accomplished by including certain exercises in the program (e.g., rotator cuff exercises), varying the loads that are used in the program (e.g., light, moderate and careful use of heavy loads), not going to failure with each set of reps, and listening to your body and not trying to fight through pain and soreness.

As with any athlete, the process of developing a strength training program for senior athletes consists of developing pretesting methods, setting individualized goals, designing a program, and developing evaluation methods. Evaluation of training progress should include testing of strength (if possible, on the equipment used in training), body composition, functional abilities (e.g., lift chair, get out of chair), muscle size changes, nutritional assessments, and medical tracking of preexisting conditions.

Medical Clearances

The American College of Sports Medicine (ACSM) has advised that people who start an exercise program be classified into one of three risk categories:

1. Apparently healthy, less than one coronary risk factor (hypertension, smoking) or cardiopulmonary or metabolic disease
2. At higher risk, more than two coronary risk factors or cardiopulmonary or metabolic disease symptoms
3. Individuals who previously have been diagnosed with diseases such as cardiovascular, pulmonary, or metabolic disease

Consultation with and consent of a physician are recommended in all cases, with additional functional exercise testing for class 3 recommended by the ACSM. It is recommended that older athletes interact carefully with their family physician to optimize their health and minimize risks associated with more dramatic training paradigms.

Rate of Progression

The major concern for older athletes is proper progression without injury or acute overuse. Recovery from a training session takes longer and care is needed not to overestimate the body's physiological ability to repair tissues after a workout. An overview of progression has been presented in an ACSM position stand (Kraemer et al., 2002).

The design of a quality resistance training program for older athletes should attempt to improve their quality of life and competitive success by enhancing several components of muscular fitness including muscle hypertrophy, strength, power, and local muscular endurance. Programs that include variation, gradual progressive overload, specificity, and careful attention to recovery are recommended (Kraemer et al., 2002).

When the older adult's long-term resistance training goal is progression toward higher levels of muscular strength and hypertrophy, evidence supports the use of variation in the resistance training program. It is important that progression be introduced at a gradual pace as the potential for strength adaptation appears high. It should be noted that the rate of adaptation as well as the magnitude of adaptation will be smaller after basic improvements are made over the first year of training.

Program design for the older athlete needs to address the important elements of sport performance using a periodized training program. Strength is at the core of any program, with power exercises and improved toleration of decreased pH needed for improving the dimensional physical capabilities of the older athlete. Along with the improvement in acid–base buffer capacity will come improved local muscular endurance.

SUMMARY

The benefits of strength training for older adults include increased strength, endurance, and muscle capacity; increased flexibility; more energy; and improved self-image and confidence. As in any athlete, the two major components in a strength training program for an older athlete are strength and power. Muscle strengthening enhances everyday physical performance and quality of life. In addition, it enhances cardiovascular endurance by placing less stress on the heart and circulatory system, as endurance activities are performed at a significantly lower percent of the maximal voluntary contraction. The enhancement of muscle and bone mass has important benefits for the health of athletes and their recovery potential. Proper design and progression of a resistance training program for the older athlete are vital to improved sport performance and health.

Suggested Readings

Chapter 1

Baechle T.R., and Earle, R.W. (2000). *Essentials of strength training and conditioning* (2nd ed.). National Strength and Conditioning Association. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.

Bompa, T.O. (1998). *Theory and methodology of training: The key to athletic performance* (3rd ed.). Dubuque, Iowa: Kendall Hunt.

Fitz-Clarke, J.R., Morton, R.H., and Banister, E.W. (1991). Optimizing athletic performance by influence curves. *Journal of Applied Physiology, 71*(3), 1151-1158.

Fleck, S.J., and Kraemer, W.J. (2003). *Designing resistance training programs* (3rd ed.). Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.

Hopkins, W.G. (1991). Quantification of training in competition sports: Methods and applications. *Sports Medicine, 12,* 161-183.

Siff, M.C., and Verkhoshansky, Y.V. (1993). *Supertraining.* Johannesburg, South Africa: University of Witwatersrand.

Smith, D.J. (2003). A framework for understanding the training process leading to elite performance. *Sports Medicine, 33,* 1103-1126.

Chapter 2

Fitts, R.H., and Widrick, J.J. (1996). Muscle mechanics: Adaptations with exercise training. *Exercise and Sport Sciences Reviews, 26,* 427-474.

Komi, P.V., and Nicol, C. (2000). Stretch–shortening cycle of muscle function. In V.M. Zatsiorsky (Ed.), *Biomechanics in sport: Performance enhancement and injury prevention* (87-102). Oxford: IOC Medical Commission/Blackwell Science.

Kulig, A., Andrews, J., and Hay, J.G. (1984). Human strength curves. *Exercise and Sports Science Reviews, 12,* 417-466.

Pandy, M.C. (1999). Moment arm of a muscle force. *Exercise and Sports Science Reviews, 27,* 79-118.

Prilutsky, B.I. (2000). Eccentric muscle action in sport and exercise. In V.M. Zatsiorsky (Ed.), *Biomechanics in sport: Performance enhancement and injury prevention* (56-86). Oxford: IOC Medical Commission/Blackwell Science.

Wilkie, D.R. (1950). The relation between force and velocity in human muscle. *Journal of Physiology, 110,* 249-280.

Zatsiorsky, V.M. (2003). Biomechanics of strength and strength training. In P.V. Komi (Ed.), *Strength and power in sport* (439-487). Oxford: IOC Medical Commission/Blackwell Science.

Chapter 3

Billeter, R., and Hoppeler, H. (2003). Muscular basis of strength. In P.V. Komi (Ed.), *Strength and Power in Sport* (50-72). Oxford: IOC Medical Commission/Blackwell Science.

Fogelholm, M. (1994). Effects of bodyweight reduction on sports performance. *Sports Medicine, 18,* 249-267.

Jaric, S. (2003). Role of body size in the relation between muscle strength and movement performance. *Exercise and Sport Science Reviews, 31,* 8-12.

Kraemer, W.J., Fleck, S.J., and Evans, W.J. (1996). Strength and power training: Physiological mechanisms of adaptation. *Exercise and Sport Science Reviews, 24,* 363-398.

Semmler, J.G., and Enoka, R.M. (2000). Neural contribution to changes in muscle strength. In V.M. Zatsiorsky (Ed.), *Biomechanics in sport: Performance enhancement and injury prevention* (3-20). Oxford: IOC Medical Commission/Blackwell Science.

Chapter 4

Atha, J. (1981). Strengthening muscle. *Exercise and Sport Science Reviews, 9,* 1-73.

Kraemer, W.J., Adams, K., Cafarelli, E., Dudley, G.A., Dooly, C., Feigenbaum, M.S., Fleck, S.J., Franklin, B., Fry, A.C., Hoffman, J.R., Newton, R.U., Potteiger, J., Stone, M.H., Ratamess, N.A., and Triplett-McBride, T. (2002). American College of Sports Medicine position stand: Progression models in resistance training for healthy adults. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise, 34,* 364-380.

Kraemer, W.J., and Ratamess, N.A. (2004). Fundamentals of resistance training: Progression and exercise prescription. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise, 36,* 674-688.

Rhea, M.R., Alvar, B.A., Burkett, L.N., and Ball, S.D. (2003). A meta-analysis to determine the dose response for strength development. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise, 35,* 456-464.

Tan, B. (1999). Manipulating resistance training program variables to optimize maximum strength in men: A review. *Journal of Strength and Conditioning Research, 13*(3), 289-304.

Zatsiorsky, V.M. (1992). Intensity of strength training. *National Strength and Conditioning Association Journal, 14*(5), 46-57.

Chapter 5

Baker, D., Wilson, G., and Carlyon, R. (1994). Periodization: The effect on strength of manipulating volume and intensity. *Journal of Strength and Conditioning Research, 8,* 235-242.

Fleck, S.J. (1999). Periodized strength training: A critical review. *Journal of Strength and Conditioning Research, 13*(1), 82-89.

Fleck, S.J., and Kraemer, W.J. (1996). *Periodization breakthrough!: The ultimate training system.* New York: Advanced Research Press.

Stone, M.H., and O'Bryant, H.S. (1987). *Weight training: A scientific approach.* Minneapolis: Burgess.

Chapter 6

Albert, M. (1995). *Eccentric muscle training in sports and orthopaedics.* New York: Churchill Livingstone.

Bobbert, M.F. (1990). Drop jumping as a training method for jumping ability. *Sports Medicine, 9,* 7-22.

Enoka, R.M. (2002). *Neuromechanics of human movement.* Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.

Hettinger, T. (1983). *Isometrisches muskeltraining.* Stuttgart: Thieme Verlag.

Komi, P.V. (2003). Stretch–shortening cycle. In P.V. Komi (Ed.), *Strength and power in sport* (184-202). Oxford: IOC Medical Commission/Blackwell Science.

Mester, J., Spitzenpfeil, P., and Yue, Z. (2003). Vibration loads potential for strength and power development. In P.V. Komi (Ed.), *Strength and power in sport* (488-501). Oxford: IOC Medical Commission/Blackwell Science.

Sekowitz, D.M. (1990). High frequency electrical stimulation in muscle strengthening: A review and discussion. *American Journal of Sports Medicine, 17,* 101-111.

Chapter 7

Anderson, M.K., and Hall, S.J. (1997). *Fundamentals of sports injury management.* Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins.

Hrysomallis, C., and Goodman, C. (2001). A review of resistance exercise and posture realignment. *Journal of Strength and Conditioning Research, 15*(3), 385-390.

Kellis, E., and Baltzopoulos, V. (1995). Isokinetic eccentric exercise. *Sports Medicine, 19,* 202-222.

Mazur, L.J., Yetman, R.J., and Riser, W.L. (1993). Weight-training injuries and preventative methods. *Sports Medicine, 16,* 57-63.

McGill, S. (2004). *Ultimate back fitness and performance.* Waterloo, Canada: Wabuno.

Miles, M.P., and Clarkson, P.M. (1994). Exercise-induced muscle pain, soreness, and cramps. *Journal of Sports Medicine and Physical Fitness, 34,* 203-216.

Plowman, S.A. (1992). Physical activity, physical fitness, and low back pain. *Exercise and Sport Science Reviews, 20,* 221-242.

Whiting, W.C., and Zernicke, R.F. (1998). *Biomechanics of musculoskeletal injury.* Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.

Chapter 8

Hoff, J., and Helgerud, J. (2004). Endurance and strength training for soccer players: Physiological considerations. *Sports Medicine, 34,* 165-180.

Kraemer, W.J., Mazetti, S.A., Ratamess, N.A., and Fleck, S.J. (2000). Specificity of training modes. In L.E. Brown (Ed.), *Isokinetics in Human Performance* (25-41). Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.

Leveritt, M., Abernethy, P.J., Barry, B.K., and Logan, P.A. (1999). Concurrent strength and endurance training: A review. *Sports Medicine, 28,* 413-427.

Sale, D., and MacDougall, D. (1981). Specificity in strength training: A review for the coach and athlete. *Canadian Journal of Applied Sports Science, 6,* 87-92.

Smidtbleicher, D. (1992). Training for power events. In P.V. Komi (Ed.), *Strength and power in sport* (381-395). Oxford: IOC Medical Commission/ Blackwell Science.

Tanaka, H., and Swensen, T. (1998). Impact of resistance training on endurance performance: A new form of cross-training? *Sports Medicine, 25,* 191-200.

Viru, A. (1995). *Adaptation in sports training*. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press.

Widow, G. (1990). Aspects of strength training in athletics. *New Studies in Athletics, 5*(1), 93-110.

Chapter 9

De Souza, M.J. (2003). Menstrual disturbances in athletes: A focus on luteal phase defects. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise, 35*(9), 1553-1563.

Ebben, W.P., and R.L. Jensen. (1998). Strength training for women: Debunking myths that block opportunity. *Physician and Sportsmedicine, 26*(5).

Fleck, S.J., and Kraemer, W.J. (2004). *Designing resistance training programs* (3rd ed.). Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.

Kraemer, W.J. (2002). Development of the offseason resistance training programs for athletes. In M.B. Mellion, W.M. Walsh, C. Madden, M. Putukian, and G.L. Shelton (Eds.), *The team physician's handbook,* 120-127. Philadelphia: Hanley & Belfus.

Kraemer, W.J., and Newton, R.U. (2000). Training for muscular power. In J. Young (Ed.), *Clinics in sports medicine*, 341-368. Philadelphia: W.B. Saunders.

Kraemer, W.J., and Ratamess, N.A. (2003). Endocrine responses and adaptations to strength and power training. In P.V. Komi (Ed.), *Strength and power in sport* (361-386). Oxford: IOC Medical Commission/Blackwell Science.

Loucks, A.B. (2003). Introduction to menstrual disturbances in athletes. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise, 35*(9), 1551-1552.

National Strength and Conditioning Association (NSCA). (1990). *National Strength and Conditioning Association position paper: Strength training for female athletes.* Colorado Springs: NSCA.

Petersen, C. (2005). Weightlifting during pregnancy. Retrieved November 6, 2005, from http://parenting.ivillage.com/pregnancy/pfitness/0,,dfexc_nc1d,00.html.

Pettitt, R.W., and Bryson, E.R. (2002). Training for women's basketball: A biomechanical emphasis for preventing anterior cruciate ligament injury. *Strength and Conditioning Journal, 24*(5), 20-29.

Williams, N.I. (2003). Lessons from experimental disruptions of the menstrual cycle in humans and monkeys. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise, 35*(9), 1564-1572.

Chapter 10

American College of Sports Medicine (ACSM). (1993). The prevention of sports injuries of children and adolescents. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise, 25*(8), 1-7.

American Orthopaedic Society for Sports Medicine (AOSSM). (1988). Proceedings of the conference on strength training and the prepubescent. Chicago: AOSSM.

Bar-Or, O. (1989). Trainability of the prepubescent child. *Physician and Sportsmedicine, 17*(5), 65-82.

Blimkie, C.J.R. (1993). Resistance training during preadolescence: Issues and controversies. *Sports Medicine, 15*(6), 389-407.

Committee on Sports Medicine and Fitness. (2001). American Academy of Pediatrics: Strength training by children and adolescents. *Pediatrics, 107*(6), 1470-1472.

Faigenbaum, A.D., Kraemer, W.J., Cahill, B., Chandler, J., Dziados, J., Elfrink, L.D., Forman, E., Gaudiose, M., Micheli, L., Nitka, M., and Roberts, S. (1996). Youth resistance training: Position statement paper and literature review. *Strength and Conditioning, 18*(6), 62-76.

Faigenbaum, A., and Westcott, W. (2000). Strength and power training for young athletes. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.

Guy, J.A., and Micheli, L.J. (2001). Strength training for children and adolescents. *Journal of the American Academy of Orthopaedic Surgeons, 9*(1), 29-36.

Kraemer, W.J., Faigenbaum, A.D., Bush, J.A., and Nindl, B.C. (1999). Resistance training and youth: Enhancing muscle fitness. In J.M. Rippe (Ed.), *Lifestyle medicine*, 626-637. Cambridge, MA: Blackwell Science.

Kraemer, W.J., and Fleck, S.J. (2005). Strength training for young athletes (2nd ed.). Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.

Kraemer, W.J., Fry, A.C., Frykman, P.N., Conroy, B., and Hoffman, J. (1989). Resistance training and youth. *Pediatric Exercise Science, 1,* 336-350.

Kraemer, W.J., Ratamess, N.A., and Rubin, M.R. (2000). Basic principles of resistance training. In *Nutrition and the strength athlete,* 1-29. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press.

Malina, R.M., and Bouchard, C. (1991). Growth, maturation, and physical activity. Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.

Payne, V.G., Morrow, J.R., Johnson, L., and Dalton, S.N. (1997). Resistance training in children and youth: A meta-analysis. *Research Quarterly for Exercise and Sport, 68*(1), 80-88.

Chapter 11

Anton, M.M., Spirduso, W.W., and Tanaka, H. (2004). Age-related declines in anaerobic muscular performance: Weightlifting and powerlifting. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise, 36*(1), 143-147.

Campbell, W.W, and Geik, R.A. (2004). Nutritional considerations for the older athlete. *Nutrition, 20*(7-8), 603-608.

Fleck, S.J., and Kraemer, W.J. (2003). *Designing resistance training programs* (3rd ed.). Champaign, IL: Human Kinetics.

Häkkinen, K. (2003). Aging and neuromuscular adaptation to strength training. In P.V. Komi (Ed.), *Strength and power in sport* (409-425). Oxford: IOC Medical Commission/Blackwell Science.

Kraemer, W.J., Adams, K., Cafarelli, E., Dudley, G.A., Dooly, C., Feigenbaum, M.S., Fleck, S.J., Franklin, B., Fry, A.C., Hoffman, J.R., Newton, R.U., Potteiger, J., Stone, M.H., Ratamess, N.A., and Triplett-McBride, T. (2002). American College of Sports Medicine (ACSM) position stand: Progression models in resistance training for healthy adults. *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise, 34*(2), 364-380.

Kraemer, W.J., Ratamess, N.A., Anderson, J.M., Maresh, C.M., Tiberio, D.P., Joyce, M.E., Messinger, B.N., French, D.N., Rubin, M.R., Gomez, A.L., Volek, J.S., and Hesslink, R., Jr. (2004). Effect of a cetylated fatty acid topical cream on functional mobility and quality of life of patients with osteoarthritis. *Journal of Rheumatology, 31*(4), 767-774.

Kraemer, W.J., Fleck, S.J., and Evans, W.J. (1996). Strength and power training: Physiological mechanisms of adaptation. *Exercise and Sport Sciences Review, 24,* 363-397.

Roubenoff, R. (2000). Sarcopenia and its implications for the elderly. *European Journal of Clinical Nutrition, 54*(Suppl. 3), S40-S47.

Singh, M.A. (2004). Exercise and aging. *Clinical Geriatric Medicine, 20*(2), 201-221.

Trappe, S. (2001). Master athletes. *International Journal of Sport Nutrition and Exercise Metabolism, 11*(Suppl.), S196-S207.

Index

About the Authors

Vladimir Zatsiorsky, PhD, is a professor of kinesiology at Penn State University in State College, Pennsylvania. A strength and conditioning consultant for Olympic teams from the former Soviet Union for 26 years, Zatsiorsky has trained hundreds of world-class athletes. He has also authored or coauthored 15 books and more than 350 scientific papers. His books have been published in several languages, including English, Russian, German, Spanish, Chinese, Japanese, Portuguese, Italian, Polish, Czech, Rumanian, Serbo-Croatian, Hungarian, and Bulgarian. He has received honorary doctoral degrees from universities in Poland and Russia and is an honorary member of the International Association of Sport Kinetics. In his spare time, he enjoys reading, listening to classical music, and exercising.

William Kraemer, PhD, is a professor in the department of kinesiology at the University of Connecticut at Storrs, where he works in the Human Performance Laboratory. He also holds joint appointment as professor in the department of physiology and neurobiology and a professor of medicine at the University of Connecticut Health Center.

Kraemer held multiple appointments at Pennsylvania State University, where he was professor of applied physiology, director of research in the Center for Sports Medicine, associate director of the Center for Cell Research, and faculty member in the kinesiology department and the Noll Physiological Research Center.

Kraemer has served on the Sports Medicine Committee for the United States Weightlifting Federation and on the Sport Science and Technology Committee for the United States Olympic Committee. He received the Provost's Research Excellence Award from the University of Connecticut in 2005 and National Strength and Conditioning Association Lifetime Achievement Award for bringing science into the development of strength and conditioning programs.

He is editor in chief of the *Journal of Strength and Conditioning Research,* an associate editor of *Medicine and Science in Sports and Exercise,* and an editorial board member of the *Journal of Applied Physiology.* A former junior high and college coach, Kraemer has coauthored many books and articles on strength training for athletes.

Science and Practice of Strength Training

This second edition of *Science and Practice of Strength Training* comes with many additions and changes. A new coauthor, Dr. William Kraemer, joins Dr. Vladimir Zatsiorsky in expanding on the principles and concepts needed for training athletes. Together, the authors have trained more than 1,000 elite athletes, including Olympic, world, continental, and national champions and record holders. The concepts they divulge are influenced by both Eastern European and North American perspectives. The authors integrate those concepts in solid principles, practical insights, coaching experiences, and directions based on scientific findings. This edition is much more practical than its predecessor; to this end, the book provides the practitioner the understanding to craft strength training programs based on individuals' needs.

Science and Practice of Strength Training, Second Edition, shows that there is no one program that works for any one athlete at all times or for all conditions. This book addresses the complexity of strength training programs while providing straightforward approaches to take under specific circumstances. Those approaches are applied to new physiological concepts and training practices, which provide readers with the most current information in the science and practice of strength training. These practices are also applied to the three new chapters, which will help readers design safe and effective strength training programs for women, young athletes, and seniors. In addition, the authors provide examples of strength training programs to demonstrate the principles and concepts they explain in the book.

This expanded and updated coverage of strength training concepts will ground readers in the understanding they need in order to develop appropriate strength training programs for each person that they work with.

ISBN-13: 978-0-7360-5628-1
ISBN-10: 0-7360-5628-9
90000
9 780736 056281

Human Kinetics